烟狂英语 RAZY ENGLISH

国内的学生、老师以及家长都对英美国家的课本 充满了好奇,希望能了解这些材料,借助它们来学好 英语。本书就为你揭开国外课本的神秘面纱,让你在 国内也能与国外的学生同步学习。

选材地道、广泛

所有材料均选自美国现行中高等学校课本,包括公民、科学、文学、 经济、社会和历史等学科领域, 使你全方位了解国外中高等学校的 各个学科。

为中国学生量身定做

每篇文章后都附有阅读所需的词汇和短语,并侧重于大学英语四 六级词汇的讲解:文章后附带的课后练习也进一步加强了对词汇和 短语的巩固,同时考查读者的理解程度;参考译文更是为国内读者 全面了解所学文章提供了方便。

躺着也能学英语

本书配送的MP3光盘中不仅有美籍专家朗读全文,还有词汇的中英 文对照录音。即使不带书,也能随时随地学英语。



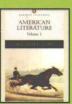
本书配套MP3光盘容量 =5盘60分钟磁带/CD

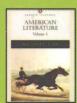
张 琬 主编

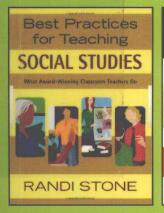


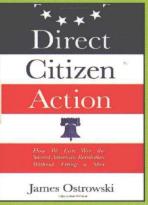


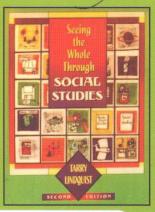


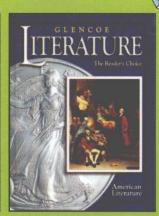




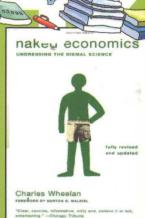












中山大学之战社

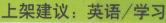




精选的教材、详细的注解、巧妙的练习、精确的译文、丰富的文化,让你在了解国外课本的同时还能加深对国外文化的了解,同时提升你的英语水平。你还在等什么呢?现在就随我们一起开启不出国门的"留学之旅"吧!









定价: 32.80元 (含MP3光盘) 本书配套MP3光盘容量=5盘60分钟磁带/CD

PRAZY ENGLISH

TR 184 SANS TREE SANS BURNING THE PARTY OF THE PARTY _____

COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE OWNER.

_



















跟美国学生一起学英语

高级版

主 编 张 琬副主编 张 琰编 者 曹梦雪

编委会成员

 朱红梅
 刘晶
 徐娟
 朱丽君
 郝静

 孙辉
 姜雪丽
 吴芬
 伍辉
 杨擘

 丁汀
 范洪静
 张娜
 郝铉
 淡晓库

 姚昆
 蒋丽
 李莉
 吴桂梅
 李扬

中山大学之战社

版权所有 翻印必究

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

疯狂英语:跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版/张琬主编.一广州:中山大学出版社,2011.1

ISBN 978-7-306-03752-7

I. 疯··· II. 张··· III. 英语─美国─自学参考资料 IV. H310. 1

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2010)第179663号

出版人: 祁军

责任编辑:黎恋恋

封面设计: 淡晓库

版式设计: 孙 辉

责任校对: 刘 晶

责任技编: 何雅涛

出版发行: 中山大学出版社

电 话:编辑部 020 - 84111997, 84113349

发行部 020 - 84111998, 84111981, 84111160

地 址:广州市新港西路 135 号

邮 编: 510275 传 真: 020 - 84036565

网 址: http://www.zsup.com.cn E-mail:zdcbs@mail.sysu.edu.cn

印刷者:北京彩眸彩色印刷有限公司

规 格: 787mm×1092mm 1/16 20.25印张 449千字

版次印次: 2011 年 1 月第 1 版 2011 年 1 月第 1 次印刷

印 数: 1~10000 册 定 价: 32.80元

PREFACE 前言

目前,英语学习在中国仍然热度不减。然而读者们可以选择的英语学习读物大多拘泥于英语语言本身的学习,往往忽略语言背后所蕴涵的文化元素。与此同时,大多数的英语读物都趋于选择经典的文学作品,而忽略了其他文体中语言的特色。《疯狂英语:跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版》正是致力于填补这几方面的空白。

本书涉及内容广泛,所有材料均选自美国现行中高等学校课本,包括公民、科学、文学、经济、社会和历史等多学科领域。就阅读材料本身而言,文学方面文章的选择比较偏重于语言本身,在阅读中,读者可以尽情地领略和体味英语语言的魅力。历史方面的文章则侧重于历史人物和事件,使读者在阅读的同时,更多地了解文章所传达的内容。科学和经济类的文章都非常有专业性,不仅为读者提供了大量的相关知识,更值得学习的是它们所涵盖的大量的专业阅读词汇。公民学科的文章与上述所有学科的文章都大不相同,除了作为阅读材料呈现之外,主要是侧重于对美国社会一些基本常识的介绍。社会学科则是在了解基本常识的基础上较为深入地挖掘了美国一些社会现象所产生的根源和发展趋势,为读者进一步详细了解美国社会提供了重要参考。

本书的每篇文章后都附有阅读所需的词汇和短语,并侧重于大学英语四、六级词汇的讲解。值得一提的是,在"词句荟萃"部分,所有短语的例句都经过精挑细选,通过学习,读者可以熟练地掌握相关短语的用法。此外,每篇文章后附带的课后练习也进一步加强了对文章中词汇和短语的巩固,同时还考查了读者对文章内容的理解程度。文章所对应的参考译文更是为读者全面了解文章内容提供了方便,同时对于有翻译兴趣的读者来说,参考译文也可以作为检验自己翻译质量的范本。

本书的另一亮点就是与每篇文章内容相关的扩展板块,包括"美"事一桩、"美"文背景、名人链接和科学生活等。这一板块致力于配合文章本身,扩充读者对相关话题的了解,尤其侧重于与现实生活的联系,期望读者在阅读之后能够更多地体会美国及西方社会的历史背景和人文文化,同时也帮助读者更为深刻地理解前面所阅读的文章。

由于本书涉及学科跨度很大,因此适合有不同兴趣的英语学习者选读,这也打破了普通英语读物 多限于文科材料的束缚。学科的侧重点不同,文章的阅读难度对于不同的读者来说感受也不同。因此,本书适合各类读者选择。

祝大家阅读快乐!

CONTENTS 目录

Part 1 American Civics 美国公民教育	
1. Becoming an American Citizen 如何成为美国公民······	2
2. Making American Democracy Work 美国民主的运作 ······	8
3. Public Policy 政府政策 ·······	17
4. Kinds of Law 法律的种类 ····································	23
5. Responsibilities of Citizens 公民的责任和义务 ······	30
6. Women and Public Service 妇女和公共服务组织 ······	38
Part 2 American Economy 美国经济	
7. Bartering 以物易物······	44
8. History of Money 钱币发展史 ······	50
9. Factors of Production 生产要素 ······	56
10. Supply and Demand 供给与需求 ······	62
11. Economic Systems 经济体系 ······	69
12. Gross Domestic Product 国内生产总值······	75
13. Income Taxes 所得税 ······	81
14. Banking 银行业 ······	88
15. Credit Cards 信用卡 ······	94
16. Stock Market 股市 ······	100
Part 3 American History 美国历史	
17. Benjamin Franklin 本杰明 · 富兰克林 ·····	107
18. Charles William Eliot 查尔斯·威廉·爱略特 ······	114
19. Developments in Agriculture 农业发展 ······	122

CONTENTS 目录

20. Slums and Sweatshops 贫民窟和血汗工厂 ·······	128
21. The Age of Steam 蒸汽时代 ······	135
22. The Ups and Downs of the 1930s and 1940s 20 世纪三四十年代沉浮记········	141
Part 4 American Literature 美国文学	
23. Journal of the First Voyage to America 第一次美洲航海日志 ······	150
24. The Autobiography 富兰克林自传 ······	158
25. Nature 大自然 ·····	166
26. Second Inaugural Address 第二次就职演说 ·······	172
27. The Mortgaged Heart 做了抵押的心 ······	179
28. Crossing the Great Divide 穿越大裂谷 ······	188
29. The Earth on Turtle's Back 龟背上的土地······	197
Part 5 American Science 美国自然科学	
30. Collect and Interpret Data 收集和解释数据 ······	208
31. Points, Lines, and Planes 点、直线、平面 ······	215
32. Tendency and Range 趋向和极差 ······	222
33. Unit 单位 ······	229
34. Visualize and Represent Solids 形象化并描绘立体图形 ······	238
35. Concentrated Light 能量集中的光束 ······	247
36. Franklin's Folly 富兰克林的荒唐事 ······	252
37. Effects of Global Warming on the Arctic 全球变暖对北极的影响	

Part 6 American Society 美国社会

38. Is the American Dream Dying? 美国梦熄灭了吗? ······	267
39. Basic Values in the United States 美国人的基本价值观 ······	274
40. Choosing to Be Alcohol Free 远离酒精 ······	281
41. Sports and Social Mobility 体育与社会流动 ······	288
42. Building Healthy Relationships 建立良好的人际关系 ······	295
43. Cultural Diversity 文化多样性······	302
附录一、 美国教育制度概况	309
附录二、 关于美国的课程设置	313

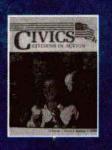
Part 1 American Civics 美国公民教育

美国是一个非常重视公民教育的国家,无论是在理论研究还是实践探索上都一直走在世界的前列。早在18世纪末美利坚合众国成立之初,其教育就被赋予了培育公民的使命。1790年,出版了最早的关于美国历史、政府和公民教育的教科书,并在中小学开设了"公民科",从此公民教育在美国正式诞生。此后,美国的公民教育随着社会的变迁不断发展。进入20世纪,美国的公民教育发生了重大转折。1916年,全美教育协会(NEA)就公民教育的内容、方式、课程设置等向全国学校提出了建立"社会科"的建议报告,标志着美国现代公民教育的开始。从此,美国的公民教育即由注重政治教育转变为注重公民能力的培养和公民整体素质的提升。进入20世纪90年代以后,由于政府的高度重视,美国的公民教育进入快速发展的时期。良好的公民教育成为美国在新世纪追求的主要教育目标之一。

"公民教育,应该是一项基本的事务。没有什么比培养一个有知识的、有能力的、负责任的公民更重要。美国人应该认识到公民教育是支撑我们民主政治的根本。思维习惯、坚持民主的倾向不是与生俱来的。民主政治不是靠自身来运转的机器,它需要一代接一代的人们用意识来维护和完善。"这是美国公民教育的基本主张。美国的公民教育深深扎根于美国的宪政思想,为"宪政式民主国家培养有能力并负责任的社会、政治参与者"始终是其坚持的目标。为了实现这一目标,美国的公民教育把对民主政治制度的研习作为基本且最为重要的内容。众所周知,美国民主政治制度的核心价值是自由、民主,受其影响的美国公民教育表现出浓厚的自由主义倾向,充分肯定个人的平等性、自主性、自由权利的优先性,承认价值多元。

这一章节将美国公民教育中的一些基本问题呈现给大家。

Becoming an American Citizen 如何成为美国公民



每个国家都有关于公民身份的法律和习俗。这样的法律描述了什么样的人是该国公民和其他人如何成为该国公民。美国公民身份在美国宪法的第十四条修正案中得到定义。 所有在美国出生或后来加入美国国籍并且受美国司法管辖的人,都是美国公民,同时也是他们所居住州的公民。

Every nation has its own laws and customs concerning citizenship. Such laws describe who the country's citizens are and how others can become citizens. In the United States, American citizenship is defined in the Fourteenth Amendment¹ to the Constitution.

All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction² thereof³, are citizens of the United States, and of the state wherein they reside.

As the amendment indicates, there are two ways that a person can become a citizen of the United States—by birth or by naturalization⁴.

Citizens by Birth

Over 90 percent of today's American citizens became citizens at birth. They gained United States citizenship because of where they were born or to whom they were born.

The Law of the Soil

The most common way people become American citizens at birth is known as the law of the soil, or jus soli. Any person born on American soil, either in the United States or in one of its territories, automatically becomes an American citizen. This is true even if the child's parents are not American citizens. Suppose, for example, that a child is born in Michigan to parents who are Canadian citizens. The child is an American citizen at birth because he or she was born on American soil.

The law of the soil also applies to children born in areas under American jurisdiction. This

includes government workers and military personnel stationed⁵ in other countries. Also included are American ships in foreign waters.

An exception to the law of the soil affects a small group of children born in the United States. These are children of foreign diplomats⁶ working in the United States. While here, the diplomats are representatives of other countries. For this reason, they are under the jurisdiction of their home governments. Although their children may be born on American soil, they are not American citizens at birth.

The Law of Blood

A second way a person can become a United States citizen at birth is by the law of blood, or jus sanguinis. Any person born outside the United States to parents who are American citizens automatically becomes an American citizen at birth. The only requirement is that one of the parents once lived in the United States. A child born in Paris to American parents who have moved to France, for example, is an American citizen at birth.

If only one of the child's parents is an American citizen, the law of blood still applies. But the rules are slightly different. In most cases, though, the child becomes an American citizen at birth as long as the American parent lived in the United States for a certain length of time.

Citizens by Naturalization

Not all Americans, of course, become United States citizens at birth. Many come to the United States as citizens of other countries. Those who wish to stay here permanently⁷ are known as immigrants. Many of the immigrants become American citizens. The process by which this happens is called naturalization.



To become a naturalized citizen, immigrants must meet certain qualifications. They must be at least 18 years old. They must have entered the United States legally. They must have lived here for at least five years, including six months in the state in which they are to be naturalized. They must show that they can read, write, and speak simple English. They must show an understanding of the principles of American government. And, they must be of "good moral character".



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. amendment [əˈmendmənt] n. 改正, 修正; 改善; 修正草案, 修正建议
- 2. jurisdiction [ˌdʒuərɪsˈdɪk∫ən] n. 司法权; 裁判权; 管辖权
- 3. thereof [ðɛərˈɒv, -ˈɒf] adv. 在其中, 关于
- 4. naturalize ['næt[ərəlaɪz] v. 使加入国籍, 移植
- 5. station ['steɪ∫ən] vt. 驻扎,安置
- **6. diplomat** ['dɪpləmæt] n. 外交官,有外交手腕的人,有权谋的人
- 7. permanently ['p3:məntlɪ] adv. 永存地, 不变地



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 二 1. subject to 受……支配; 服从于
 - e.g. All nuclear installations are subject to international safeguards.
 - 一切核设施均须执行国际防护措施。

All the holidays on offer are subject to availability.

现行所有的节假日只有在情况允许时才可放假。

- 2. apply to 有关; 涉及; 使用; 应用
 - e.g. What I am saying applies only to some of you.

我所说的只涉及你们中的一些人。

The new technology was applied to farming.

这项新技术已应用于农业。

- 3. as/so long as 只要; 由于; 既然; 就……来说
 - e.g. We'll go as long as the weather is good.

只要天气好我们就去。

So long as there is a demand for these drugs, the financial incentive for drug dealers will be there.

只要毒品有需求,贩毒者的经济诱因就存在。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct lette	r in the blank.	
1. Every nation has its own law	vs and customs	citizenship.
A. concerning	B. relating	C. concerned
2. Any person born on America	an soil	becomes an American citizen.
A. immediately	B. automatically	C. spontaneously
3. This includes government w	orkers and military personn	nel in other countries.
A. stated	B. stationed	C. stayed
4. Those who wish to stay here	are k	known as immigrants.
A. permanently	B. persistently	C. perceivably
5. If only one of the child's par	ents is an American citizen,	, the law of blood still
A. avails	B. affects	C. applies
States. These are children here, the diplomats are of t	he soil2 a small gr of foreign3 wo 4 of other countries. their home governments	roup of children born in the United orking in the United States. While For this reason, they are under the6 their children may be izens8
III. Write true (T) or fal	se (F).	
1 Over 80 percent of to	day's American citizens bee	came citizens at birth.
2 To become a naturalis	zed citizen, immigrants mus	st meet certain qualifications.
3 Not all Americans be	come United States citizens	s at birth.
4 A child born in Par	is to American parents wh	no have moved to France is not an
American citizen at birth.		
5 Immigrants must sho	w an understanding of the p	principles of American government.

参考译文

如何成为美国公民

每个国家都有关于公民身份的法律和习俗。 这样的法律描述了什么样的人是该国公民和其他 人如何成为该国公民。美国公民身份在美国宪法 的第十四条修正案中得到定义。

所有在美国出生或后来加入美国国籍并且受 美国司法管辖的人,都是美国公民,同时也是他 们所居住州的公民。

正如修正案里定义的那样,成为美国公民有两种方式——出生与血统和后来加入美国国籍。

出生和血统

90% 以上的美国公民都是因为出生在美国而成为美国公民的。他们因为出生地或他们父母的公民身份而获得美国公民身份。

出生地国籍法

成为美国公民最常用的方式就是适应出生地 国籍法。所有出生在美国国土的人,无论是美国 国内或它的海外领土之一,都自动成为美国公民。 即使孩子的父母不是美国公民,这一规定也适用。 比如,假设孩子在密歇根出生,而其父母是加拿 大公民。这个孩子由于其出生而成为美国公民, 因为他/她出生在美国国土上。

出生地国籍法还适用于出生在美国司法管辖 区域内的孩子们。这包括常驻其他国家的政府官 员和军事人员,也包括在外国海域的美国船只。

出生地国籍法不适用于在美国出生的一小部 分孩子。他们是在美国工作的外国外交官的孩子。 在这里,外交官是其他国家的代表。正是由于这 个原因,他们受他们自己国家的司法管辖。虽然

每个国家都有关于公民身份的法律和习俗。 他们的孩子可能生在美国国土,但他们不能由于的法律描述了什么样的人是该国公民和其他 出生而成为美国公民。

血统国籍法

成为美国公民的第二种方法是适应血统国籍法。所有的孩子,如果是在美国之外的国家出生,但父母都是美国公民,其自动成为美国公民。唯一的要求是其父母中任意一个曾经在美国居住过。例如,一对美国夫妇移居法国,他们的孩子出生在巴黎,这个孩子仍然是美国公民。

如果孩子的父母有一方是美国公民,血统国籍法仍然适用。但具体的规定稍有区别。然而在大多数情形下,只要父母中是美国公民的那一方在美国居住过一定的时间,孩子出生就成为美国公民。

加入美国国籍

当然,并不是所有的美国人都是一出生就成为美国公民的。很多人都是以其他国家公民的身份来到美国。那些希望长期留下的人就是移民。 很多移民成为美国公民。这个过程叫做加入美国 国籍。

要想加入美国国籍,移民必须符合一定的条件。年龄必须在 18 岁及以上;必须是合法进入美国;必须已经在美国居住至少 5 年,其中包括在他们将要加入的州居住 6 个月;必须证明自己能阅读、书写、说简单的英语;必须证明自己了解美国政府的法则。而且,他们必须具有"良好的品质"。

"美"事一桩

0

美国移民

美利坚民族是一个移民和多样性的民族。美国接受的移民比其他任何国家都多,总共有 5000 多万人,而且现在每年仍接纳近 70 万人。

土著美洲人

两万多年以前就有了最初的美洲移民,他们都是些跨越大陆、四处漫游的人:跨过今天白令海峡所在的陆桥,从亚洲跟踪兽群来到美洲的猎人及其家人。当克里斯托弗·哥伦布在 1492 年发现新大陆时,误以为他登陆的地方——巴哈马群岛中的圣萨尔瓦多岛——是印度,便将土著美洲人称为"印第安人"。

欧洲移民

在美国的早期移民中,英国人是居主导地位的种族群体,虽然也有移民来自欧洲其他国家,包括西班牙、葡萄牙、法国、荷兰、德国和瑞典。但在 1780 年,每四个美国人中就有三个是英国或爱尔兰血统。

在 1840 至 1860 年间,美国迎来了它的第一个大的移民浪潮。在整个欧洲,由于饥饿、欠收、人口增长和政治动乱,每年约有 500 万人离开家园。在爱尔兰,一场枯萎病使马铃薯颗粒无收,75 万人饿死街头。许多幸存者移居国外。仅在 1847 年这一年,从爱尔兰移民到美国的人数就达 11,812。今天,美籍爱尔兰人约有 3,900 万。

1848至1849年德意志邦联革命的失败,使许多德国人移居国外。美国南北战争(1861—1865)期间, 联邦政府为招兵买马而鼓励从欧洲,尤其是从德国各州移民。今天,有22%的美国人其祖先是德国人。

犹太人大约是在 1880 年开始大量来到美国的,在这 10 年中,他们在东欧遭到残酷迫害。在其后的 45 年中有 200 万犹太人移居美国,美籍犹太人现有人口 500 多万。

非自愿的移民

在汹涌来到北美的移民中,有一个群体是不情愿的。那就是非洲人,他们当中,有 50 万人是在 1619 至 1808 年间被作为奴隶贩运来的。当时,向美国输入奴隶已属非法。然而,拥有奴隶及其后代的做法仍在继续,尤其是在以农业为主的南方,那里需要大量的劳动力耕田种地。今天,美籍非洲人占美国总人口的 12.7%。

非法移民

美国移民规划局估计,现在约有500万没有得到许可的人生活在美国,而且该数字正以每年约27.5万人的速度增长。土生土长的美国人和合法移民对非法移民问题感到担忧。

Answer

- I. 1.A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5.C
- II. 1. exception 2. affects 3. diplomats 4. representatives5. jurisdiction 6. Although 7. soil 8. at birth
- III. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5.T



Making American Democracy Work 美国民主的运作



美国人是民主的公民。这是由历史和现实形成的。但是,要想使美国民主一天天地运作起来,不光要知道谁是美国公民,还需要公民有意愿参与到政府工作中来。

Americans are citizens of a democracy¹. They have been shaped by their past and by the modern age in which they live. But, something more than knowing who American citizens are is needed to make American democracy work from day to day. It takes citizens' willing to become involved in government. But, being involved in government is not always easy. American citizens need knowledge and skills to do their jobs effectively².

Acquiring³ and Using Information

Today's citizens need to know how to answer important questions. They need to know how to find facts in books, magazines, and reference⁴ works, from radio and television reports, and from other sources. They need to know how to learn information from telephone inquiries⁵, interviews, and by letter.

One of the first skills needed for effective citizenship⁶, then, is the ability to gather and use information. Being informed is the first step toward making a sensible⁷ decision. Only after making a decision based on the facts can citizens take actions to meet their goals.

Consider this example. Imagine that you live on a very busy street. You have heard that the city government is considering installing a new traffic light on the street. Your neighbors seem divided on the issue. Several favor the idea, believing it will bring added safety. Others are against it. Some fear it would raise taxes. Others think it might slow traffic.

Before you can make a decision about the new traffic light, you need to gather information. You need to ask questions like: where would the traffic light be placed? Have any accidents occurred there in the last year?

To answer the first question, you might contact a member of city government. This contact could be made by telephone, by letter, or in person. To answer the second question, you could look in the newspapers at the library and see how many accidents have been reported. You also could contact the local police department or city traffic division.

After you have gathered information, you need to use it, or to present it in a way that is easily understood. Perhaps you could write a report of your findings. Or, you might draw a graph⁸ comparing traffic on your street with traffic on another busy street in town.

Assessing⁹ Involvement

Many issues affect citizens in today's world—so many, in fact, that every person cannot become involved in them all. Instead, Americans must decide which issues to become involved in and which issues to pass by. To do this, citizens need to assess their involvement in each issue, or decide how important an issue is to them.

To decide how involved you should be in an issue, you need to know two things. First, in what ways could the situation affect you and others? Second, how could your own actions affect the outcome of the situation?

Think again about the traffic light example. How are you involved? Do you regularly cross the street? If not, is it important to other people that the traffic light be installed? Knowing your own needs and being aware of the needs of others are important to the mastery of this skill.

Making Decisions

A third vital citizenship skill is making thoughtful decisions about government matters. Citizens need to recognize that there can be more than one solution to any problem. They need to be able to identify alternatives¹⁰ and decide which will be the most effective for themselves and others. To do this, citizens need to know what goals or values are involved in each alternative, and what the consequences of a certain choice will be.

In the debate about the traffic light, you need to make some important decisions. Before deciding for or against a new light, you need to think about other alternatives. You might consider whether a flashing yellow light would serve the same purpose. Perhaps a crosswalk would be enough. What are the consequences of choosing one of these alternatives? Are they better choices than installing a traffic light? When you have given all the alternatives careful consideration, you

will be better able to make a good decision.

Making Judgments

A fourth skill for effective citizenship is the ability to make sound judgments. To judge someone or something is to determine its worth in terms of a certain standard.

In the case of the traffic light, a standard you might use to judge the situation could be safety. Are people really in danger when they cross the street? Another standard you might use to determine your judgment might be practicality¹¹. How much will a new traffic light cost? The standards you use will shape the judgment you make about the project.

Communicating

A fifth skill necessary for effective citizenship is the ability to communicate. There are many ways to get ideas and viewpoints across to others. An effective citizen needs to have skills in both speaking and writing. Such a citizen should feel comfortable addressing the public as well as talking with a friend.

When you have made your decision for or against a new traffic light, for example, it is time to tell other people how you feel. You could go to a government meeting and speak to the leaders there. Or, you might write them a letter listing the reasons for your decision.

Cooperating

A sixth skill is the ability to cooperate. To achieve goals, citizens need to work together. Cooperation includes being able to be a leader or a follower, depending on the situation. It means coping with conflict in a group and working with people who are different from yourself.

Before a decision about the traffic light has been made, it probably would be a good idea to find out what your neighbors think of the problem. You might decide to have a meeting. In the meeting, each person would be allowed to speak. Cooperation means listening to other people, even if their views disagree with your own views. Cooperation also means accepting the final decision of the majority of the group.

Promoting Interests

A seventh citizenship skill is the ability to recognize and promote your own interests. What is

most important to you in a given situation? How can you work to carry out your goals?

Think again about the traffic light question. In this case, one thing important to you, and to many others, is safety. To promote your interests—safety—you may decide to join together to work in favor of the light.



, Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. democracy [di'mokrəsi] n. 民主政治, 民主主义
- 2. effective [r'fektɪv] adj. 有效的,给人深刻印象的,有力的
- 3. acquire [əˈkwaɪə] vt. 获得, 学到
- **4. reference** ['refrəns] *n.* 提及, 涉及, 参考, 参考书目, 证明书(人), 介绍信(人)
- 5. inquiry [ɪnˈkwaɪərɪ] n. 质询,调查
- **6.** citizenship ['sɪtɪzən∫ɪp] n. 公民的身份, 公民的职责和权利
- 7. sensible ['sensəbl] adj. 有感觉的, 明智的, 有判断力的
- 8. graph [gra:f] n. 图表, 曲线图
- 9. assess [ə'ses] vt. 估定, 评定
- **10.** alternative [oːl'tɜːnətɪv] n. 二中择一,可供选择的办法、事物等 adj. 选择性的, 二中择一的
- 11. practicality [,præktɪˈkælɪtɪ] n. 实用性



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. base sth. on/upon sth. 以……为基础(根据)
 - e.g. What are you basing this theory on?

你这种理论的根据是什么?

The movie is based on a real-life incident.

这部电影以现实生活中的一件事为基础。

- 2. take action 采取行动,提出诉讼
 - e.g. Firefighters took action immediately to stop the blaze spreading.

消防队员立即采取了行动制止大火蔓延。

He is considering taking legal action against the hospital.

他正考虑起诉这家医院。

3. compare...with 比较, 对比

e.g. We carefully compared the first report with the second.

我们仔细比较了第一份报告和第二份报告。

My own problems seem insignificant compared with other people's.

与别人的问题相比,我自己的问题算不得什么。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the cor	rect letter in the bla	ink.	
1. Today's citizens	need to know how to find	facts in books, magazines, and	works.
A. reference	B. preference	C. transference	
2. Citizens need to	know how to learn inform	nation from telephone, inter	rviews, and
by letter.			
A. enquiries	B. inquiries	C. acquisitions	(
3. Being informed i	s the first step toward ma	king a decision.	
A. sensible	B. sensitive	C. sentimental	
4. One of the first	skills needed for	citizenship is the ability to gath	er and use
information.			
A. positive	B. efficient	C. effective	
5. Only after making	ng a decision	on the facts can citizens take actions to	meet their
goals.			
A. based	B. biased	C. bashed	
6. You could look	in the newspapers at the	e library and see how many	have been
reported.			
A. incidents	B. accidents	C. improvements	4 3 -

7. You may decide to	join together to work		the light.
A. in terms of	B. in favor of	C. in case of	
8. Another standard y	ou might use to determine y	our judgment mig	ght be
A. punctuality	B. practicability	C. practicality	
9. Americans must de	ecide which issues to becom	e in	and which issues to pass by
A. involved	B. interested	C. indicated	
10	means listening to other	r people, even if t	heir views disagree with you
own views.			
A. Coordination	B. Corporation	C. Cooperation	
II. Complete thes	se sentences.		
1. You might draw a	graph traf	fic on your street	traffic on anothe
busy street in town		-	
2. Your neighbors see	em on the issue	e. Several	the idea, believing it wil
bring added safety.			THE STATE OF THE S
3. Being	is the first step toward i	naking a sensible	decision.
			to mee
their goals.			Salt War have
5. After you have ga	thered information, you no	eed to	it in a way that is easily
understood.			er in the base test
III. Write true (T) or false (F).		
1 Citizens nee	d to recognize that there car	be more than one	e solution to any problem.
			become involved in them all
			, it probably would not be a
	ut what your neighbors think		
HI WALL			

参考译文

美国民主的运作

美国人是民主的公民。这是由历史和现实形成的。但是,要想使美国民主一天天地运作起来,不光要知道谁是美国公民,还需要公民有意愿参与到政府工作中来。但是,参与到政府的工作中并不是一件易事。美国公民需要知识和技能才能有效地做这个工作。

获取和使用信息

当今的公民需要知道如何对重要的问题做出 回答。他们需要学会在书本、杂志和文献作品中 获取知识,从广播、电视报道或其他渠道了解现 实。他们还需要学会通过电话调查、采访和信件 等形式获取信息。

因此,有效行使公民身份的第一项技能就是 收集和使用信息的能力。了解信息是做出明智决 定的第一步。只有在基于事实的基础上做出决定, 公民才能付出行动来实现他们的目标。

看一下这个例子。假设你住在一条非常繁忙的街道,你听说市政府正考虑在这条街上安装一个新的交通信号灯。你的邻居们似乎意见不一。一些人支持这个观点,相信它会更安全;另一些人反对,担心会使纳税额提升;有的则认为它会减慢交通。

在你对这个新的交通信号灯做出决定前,你首先需要收集信息。你要问一些诸如此类的问题:

美国人是民主的公民。这是由历史和现实形 这个红绿灯要放在哪里?去年那里是否发生过交。但是,要想使美国民主一天天地运作起来, 通事故?

要回答第一个问题,你可能要联系政府部门的相关人员。联系可以通过打电话、写信或面对面的方式进行。要回答第二个问题,你可以到图书馆翻阅报纸,看看有多少起已报道的交通事故。你也可以联系当地的警察部门或城市交通管理部门。

在你收集信息后,你需要使用它,或者用一种 易懂的方式把它呈现出来。也许你可以写一篇调查 报告。或者,你可以作一张图来对比你居住地街道 的交通状况和城里另一条繁忙街道的交通状况。

参与度评定

在当今的世界,影响公民的因素有很多。正 因为有太多的事情,所以不可能面面俱到。因此, 美国人需要决定参与到什么样的事情中同时放弃 什么样的事情。公民需要对自己的参与度做出评 定,也就是说,要认清每件事对自己的重要程度。

决定自己的参与度, 你要明确两件事。第一, 这件事对你和他人的影响如何?第二, 你的行为 会对事情的结果产生什么样的影响?

再想想交通信号灯的那个例子。你是怎样参与的?你经常过马路吗?如果不是,安装信号灯对其他人重要吗?知道自己和他人的需求是掌握这一技能的关键。

做出决定

第三个重要的公民技能是对政府行为做出考虑周全的决定。公民们应该认识到每个问题都有不止一种解决方式。他们需要有能力甄别各种可能性,并且决定哪一个是对自己和他人最有效的。公民们需要知道每种可能性的目的和价值,还有每个选择所带来的后果是什么。

在关于交通信号灯的辩论中,你需要做些重要的决定。在决定支持还是反对之前,你需要知道其他的可能性。你可能会考虑安装一个闪烁的黄色信号灯是否会达到同样的效果。也许一个过街天桥就足够了。那么选择其他可能性的后果是什么呢?它们比安装新的信号灯更好吗?当你对每个可能性都给予充分考虑后,你将更加有可能做出正确的决定。

做出判断

第四个有效的公民技能是做出正确判断的能力。判断人或事意味着根据一定的标准决定它的价值。

对于信号灯这件事,你能用来作为判断的标准可以是安全。人们在过马路时真的危险吗?另一个评价标准可以是实用性。一个新的信号灯要花多少钱?你采用的标准将会帮你形成你的判断。

交流

第五个有效的公民技能是交流能力。有很多 方法可以把自己的想法和观点传递给他人。一位 有效参与的公民需要同时具有说和写的能力。这 样的公民在讲话的时候应该感觉很自然,无论是 给公众作演说的时候还是与朋友谈心的时候。 例如,当你已经决定支持或反对新信号灯以后,是时候把你的感觉告诉其他人了。你可以 去参加政府听证会,把你的想法告诉领导者。或 者,你可以写信给他们,把你想到的原因都列举 给他们。

合作

第六个技能就是合作。为了达成目标,公民 们需要合作。合作包括根据不同情况,有能力成 为领导者或成为跟随者。这意味着在一个群体中 化解争端,并与和你不同的人一起工作。

在关于新信号灯的决定做出之前,可能更需要了解你的邻居们对这个问题的看法。你可以决定召开一个会议。在会上,每个人都可以发言。合作意味着倾听别人的看法,即使是不同看法。合作也意味着最终接受大多数人的决定。

扩大自身利益

第七个技能就是认可和扩大你自身的利益。 在给定的情形下,对你来说最重要的是什么?你 怎么样能实现你自己的目标?

再想想交通信号灯的问题。在这种情况下,对于你和其他很多人来说有一件事很重要,那就是安全。为了扩大你们的共同利益——安全,你们可能决定联合起来支持安装那个信号灯。

Answer

I. 1.A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

II. 1. comparing...with 2. divided; favor 3. informed 4. take actions 5. present

III. 1. T 2. F 3. F



"美"事一桩

美国市民社会

美国的市民社会可以说是联谊会、俱乐部、教会、商务联合会和其他自愿组织的舞台。市民社会作为"自然关爱和社会交往的领域",主要是解决私人与公共、个人与社会、公共伦理与个人利益、个人激情与公共关注、个人主义和利他主义、个人存在和社会存在之间的问题与矛盾。这些社会关系,在介于国家与个人之间的领域起着缓冲与调解的作用,给公民以实践民主的可能——如自由集会和非强制性的对话。在这个意义上说,市民社会起到调和个人利益与公共利益的作用。

美国的市民社会有着这样的特点:

- 1. 拥有众多广泛的、自愿的结社组织;
- 2. 教会与国家分离;
- 3. 奉行联邦主义(而不是欧洲的国家主义);
- 4. 将个人自由视为一种价值, 执著地加以保护;
- 5. 文明德行资源丰富。

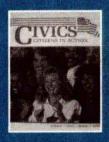
美国市民遵循着这样的意识形态原则:

- 1. 接受美国价值和信念的原则,但不接受将个人包括在政体里的原始评判标准的存在;
- 2. 强调个人自主是社会团结原则的核心:
- 3. 个人高度积极地参与社会和政治秩序,也就是说,作为国家的社团,所有成员都参与公共生活。

美国市民社会的形成是美国民主的前提,同时,它的发展又是巩固美国民主和民主治理的必要条件。法国著名政治学家托克维尔在 19 世纪就注意到美国民主与市民社会的关系,认为美国社会独特的市民性是其社会现代化的主要内容之一。托克维尔注意到,美国社会中存在市民自愿结社组织,他认为美国人的这种能力是民主在美国实行的关键。他说: "各种年龄、社会地位和脾性的美国人总是在建立各种结社组织。这些组织不仅仅是商业和工业性的,人们都参加这样的组织,还有其他数千种组织,宗教的、道德的、严肃的、无关紧要的、非常一般性的和非常局限性的、非常庞大的和非常小型的组织……我认为,在美国,没有任何东西比这些知识性的和道德的结社组织更值得我注意。"托克维尔特别赞赏美国的小镇政府和教会。他认为这些组织将美国人纯粹关心个人私有的利益引导到公共事业中,在公共事业中他们培养了心灵的习性,而心灵的习性有利于民主妥协和对公共利益的关注。

Public Policy

政府政策



由于他们所提供的服务,地方政府的单位——郡、城市、镇和特殊区域——影响着美国人每天的生活。要想了解地方政府的日常工作,就需要了解他们的政策制定。

Because of the services they provide, local units of government—counties, cities, towns, and special districts—affects the lives of Americans every day. To understand the daily workings of local governments, it is important to understand local policymaking. Most local decisions are based on public policies. And, public policies affect many people as well as many areas of life. Among the most important policy areas for local governments are policies for public assistance, safety, education, the environment, and growth.

Policies for Public Assistance

In your local area, as in local areas around the world, there are people who need help. These people may be out of work, homeless, or unable to afford medical care for themselves or their families. In the United States, many of these people receive some form of public assistance, or help, as a matter of public policy.

Although many such programs are run by the national government and the states, local governments also take part in helping the people of their communities.

Policies for Safety

Local governments have many public policies to protect the safety of their citizens. The establishment of a police force is an example of a public policy to support the goal of safety. So is a fire department or a local ambulance service. Local building inspections¹, fire codes, and speed limits are other examples. Many local governments add fluoride² to local water supplies. Fluoride has been found to help prevent tooth decay³. This, too, is the result of a policy meant to protect the public.

Policies for Education

Public policies dealing with education

often start at the state of national level of government. In these cases, the local level is responsible only for carrying out such policies. Some education policies, however, are started at the local level. A policy set by the Dade County, Florida, school system is one example of this.

Policies for the Environment

Your environment is the area around you. Local governments have many public policies to deal with problems that affect the environment. Many of these local policies deal with pollution.

An example of a local environmental policy is zoning⁴. Zoning is a way of dividing a city into areas, or zones. By passing zoning laws, a local government is deciding how the land and buildings in each zone can be used. Once an area is divided into zones, the buildings in each zone must meet certain standards. In a residential zone, for example, zoning laws

might restrict the height of houses and the size of yards. A zoning law could prevent a factory or a skyscraper from being built in the middle of a residential⁵ neighborhood. All of this helps local governments protect their environment.

Policies for Growth

Many local governments today welcome new businesses, new housing developments, or construction improvements. Such growth usually means more jobs for the people of the area. It also means that more money will be spent around town in stores, restaurants, and other businesses.

To promote growth, many local governments set policies meant to attract new businesses. Some cities, for example, offer large tax cuts to businesses that locate there. Others help businesses find office sites. Many areas even help workers moving from out of town to find new homes and get settled.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. inspection [ɪnˈspek∫ən] n. 检查, 视察
- 2. fluoride ['flu(:)əraɪd] n. 氟化物
- 3. decay [dɪˈkeɪ] vi./n. 腐朽, 腐烂, 衰减, 衰退
- 4. zoning [ˈzəunɪŋ] n. 分区制
- 5. residential [ˌrezɪˈdenʃəl] adj. 住宅的, 与居住有关的



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. a matter of sth./of doing sth. 关于……的问题

e.g. Planning a project is just a matter of working out the right order to do things in .

规划一个项目就是要设计出正确的工作顺序。

Learning to drive is all a matter of coordination.

学开车主要是靠协调。

2. prevent from 阻止; 阻碍; 阻挠

e.g. He is prevented by law from holding a licence.

法律不允许他持有执照。

Nothing would prevent him from speaking out against injustice.

什么都不能阻止他鸣不平。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corr	ect letter in the blank	* B prong the large for the
1. Most local decisio	ns are on pub	lic policies.
A. bounded	B. stationed	C. based
2. These people may	be	, homeless, or unable to afford medical
care for themselve	s or their families.	
A. out of work	B. out of problem	C. out of question
3. Fluoride has been	found to help prevent tooth	·
A. decay	B. delay	C. deploy
4. In a	zone, for example, z	coning laws might restrict the height of houses
and the size of yar	ds.	
A. presidential	B. residential	C. incidental
*		

5. Some cities, for example, offer large tax to business	es that locate there.
A. cuts B. cults C. nuts	
II. Write true (T) or false (F).	
1 The establishment of a police force is an example of a goal of safety.	public policy to support the
Public policies dealing with education often start as government.	t the state of local level of
3 Zoning is a way of dividing a city into areas, or zones.	03/04/01 TX 1/4
4 Many local governments today welcome new businesses or construction improvements.	, new housing developments,
5 To promote growth, many local governments set pobusinesses.	licies meant to attract new
III. Complete these sentences.	
1. To understand the daily workings of local governments, it is in	mportant to understand local
2. Among the most important policy areas for local government	ents are policies for public
, safety, education, the environment, and gro	
3. Many local governments add to local water	supplies.
4. By passing laws, a local government is deciding in each zone can be used.	g how the land and buildings
5. Many areas even help workers moving fromhomes and get settled.	to find new

Answers

I. 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

III. 1. policymaking 2. assistance 3. fluoride 4. zoning

5. out of town



参考译文

政府政策

由于他们所提供的服务,地方政府的单位——郡、城市、镇和特殊区域——影响着美国人每天的生活。要想了解地方政府的日常工作,就需要了解他们的政策制定。大多数的地方决策都是基于公共政策的。公共政策不仅影响着很多人,而且也影响着他们生活的方方面面。地方政府最重要的政策领域包括官方援助、公共安全、公共教育、公共环境和公共发展。

官方援助政策

在你的周围,就像世界上任何一个地方一样,有需要帮助的人们。这些人可能没有工作,无家可归,或者无法承担自己或家人的医疗费用。在美国,根据政府政策,很多这样的人能收到来自官方的某种形式的援助或帮助。虽然这样的项目通常是由国家或州政府运行的,但地方政府也参与帮助他们社区里需要帮助的人们。

公共安全政策

地方政府有很多保护公民安全的公共政策。 警察部队的建立就是支持安全目标的公共政策的 一个例子。消防部门和地方急救服务部门的建立 也一样。其他的例子还包括地方建筑物检查、消 防规范和行车限速。很多地方政府都在当地自来 水中加入氟化物。氟被证明可以防止蛀牙。这也 是保护公众政策的体现。

公共教育政策

有关教育的公共政策通常是基于国家级的相 关政策。在这样的情况下,地方一级的政府只是 负责执行上述的政策。然而,也有一部分教育政 策是始于地方一级的。佛罗里达州戴德郡制定的 学校系统的政策就是其中一个例子。

公共环境政策

你的环境是你周围的区域。地方政府有很多 公共政策来应对影响环境的问题。很多地方政策 都是治理污染的。

地方环境政策的一个例子就是分区制。分区制是一种把城市分为区域或地域的方法。根据通过的分区法,地方政府可以决定每个区域内的土地和建筑物的用途。一旦一个地方被分成区,每个区的建筑都要符合一定的标准。例如,在居民区内,分区法限制了房屋的高度和院子的面积。分区法也可以限制将工厂或摩天大楼建在居民区的中间。所有的一切都帮助地方政府保护他们的环境。

公共发展政策

当今很多地方政府都欢迎新的企业、新的房屋 开发项目或建筑改善项目。这样的发展通常会意味 着区域内就业机会的增加。同时也意味着人们会在 周边的商店、饭店和其他店铺中花更多的钱。 为了促进发展,很多地方政府制定政策来吸引新的商机。例如,一些城市提供大额的减税政策来吸引企业落户。有的帮助企业寻找合适的办公地点。很多地方甚至帮助员工从外地迁入安家落户。

"美"事一桩

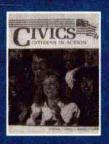


公共政策过程

- 一般认为,公共政策过程主要包括政策制定、政策执行、政策评估、政策终结、政策监督五个方面。
- 1. 政策制定。政策制定又称为政策形成或政策规划,是公共政策过程的第一阶段。一般认为,政策过程包括政策问题界定、构建政策议程、政策方案规划、政策合法化等阶段。①政策问题的界定,主要包括思考问题、勾勒问题边界、寻求事实依据、列举目的和目标、明确政策范围、显示潜在损益、重新审视问题表述等七个方面;②构建政策议程,主要途径有:政治领导人、公共组织(包括立法机构、司法机构、行政机构和其他履行公共管理职能的组织)、利益集团、大众传媒、公众突发事件、技术创新和变革、政治运动、原有的政策、专家学者、社会公众等十个途径;③政策方案规划,主要指决策者为处理政策问题制定相应的解决方法、对策和措施的过程,具体涉及确定目标、拟定方案、预测方案后果、抉择方案的目的;④政策合法化,主要包括法制工作机构的审查、领导决策会议的讨论决定、行政首长签署发布政策,其过程主要包括提出政策议案、审议政策议案、表决和通过政策议案、公布政策。
- 2. 政策执行。政策执行是指在政策制定完之后,将政策由理论变为现实的过程。其形成过程主要包括以下六点: ①设置政策执行机构; ②政策执行资源配置; ③政策宣传; ④政策分解; ⑤政策试验; ⑥政策实施。影响政策执行的因素主要包括政策问题的特性、政策本身的因素、政策之外因素三方面。政策执行手段包括政治手段、法律手段、经济手段等,使用时应多样化、交叉化、结合实际情况运用相应手段。
- 3. 政策评估。政策评估是公共政策运行的重要阶段,加强公共政策评估,对于检验公共政策效果、决定公共政策的存废具有十分重要的意义。一般认为,政策评估是指依据一定的标准、程序和方法,对公共政策的效率、效益和价值进行测量、评价的过程,其主旨在于获取公共政策实行的相关信息,以作为决定政策维持、调整、终结、创新的依据。
- 4. 政策终结。政策终结是指公共决策者通过慎重的政策评估之后,采取必要措施,终止那些过时、多余、无效或失败的公共政策的过程。
- 5. 政策监督。政策监督是公共政策过程的重要组成部分,它是提高公共政策运行质量和效益的有力保证,是指监督主体依照法定的权限和程序对公共政策运行过程进行监察和督促,以衡量并纠正公共政策偏差,实现公共政策目标。其具备主体广泛性、客体特定性、法制性三个特点。

Kinds of Law

法律的种类



虽然每个人都认同美国有很多法律,但是大多数人都没有注意到法律的不同种类。研究这些法律的一个途径是把它们归纳为两大类别——公法和私法。两大类别同时又都可以细分为不同特殊种类的法律。

Although everyone agrees that the United States has many laws, most people are not aware of its different kinds of laws. There are laws against driving too fast, against making noise near a hospital, against setting fire to a building, and against robbing a store. There are laws that assure the quality of food, laws that promote highway safety, and laws that require records to be kept of births and deaths.

One way to study our many laws is to group them into two categories¹—public law and private law. Both groupings are broken down into specific² kinds of laws. As you read about the specific groups, keep in mind that they sometimes overlap³. Also, be careful not to confuse these two groups of laws with the way the courts will handle a dispute over a certain law should such a conflict arise.

Public Law

The first broad classification of law is public law. Public law is the set of laws that directly affects the government. Conflicts addressed by public law can be between the government and a person accused of a crime, for example. Such conflicts also can be between two levels of government, or between our government and the government of another country.

Constitutional Law. Constitutional Law is the set of laws found in a constitution⁵. The laws in the Constitution of the United States are the highest laws in the land. Laws in state constitutions also are a part of constitutional law. Constitutions are intended to give stability to government so

that rules and forms of government may not be changed quickly during brief political, social, or economic upheavals⁶.

Criminal⁷ Law. Criminal Law is, perhaps, the most familiar kind of law. Criminal Law is the set of laws that describes what we should and should not do. It also includes the punishments set for people who break the law.

Administrative⁸ **Law.** As you know, it is the duty of the executive branch to administer, or earry out, laws. In practice, many of the day-to-day functions of government are carried out by the government bureaucracy⁹. The many agencies and bureaus that are a part of the bureaucracy set rules and regulations to govern their own areas. These rules make up the body of law known as *Administrative Law*.

International Law. International Law is the body of law that deals with our country and other countries. Any law that affects another government is considered a part of International Law. Among these are laws concerning imports and exports, international fishing rights, and so on.

Private Law

The other general category of law is private law. Private law is the body of law that governs how people act toward one another, either as individuals or as groups. Such laws usually do not directly involve the government. Private law also is called civil laws.

Tort Law. A tort¹⁰ is a wrong or an injury someone suffers at the hands of another person. Therefore, *Tort Law* is a set of laws concerned about the rights and duties of people involved in a dispute.

Contract Law. A contract is an agreement between two parties. The two parties can be people or businesses. The terms of the agreement in a contract must be enforceable¹¹ by law. Such laws are a part of the body of law known as *Contract Law*.

Corporate¹² Law. Corporate Law is the set of laws dealing with how corporations can be formed and how they can be operated. As you can guess, Corporate Law and Contract Law are closely linked. This is because corporations use so many contracts.

Family Law. Family Law is that body of law that deals with family units. Included in this broad category are laws about marriage, divorce, abandonment, and adoption.

Property Law. Property Law is the set of laws that have to do with property. Some property is considered to be real property. This includes land and anything that is built or growing on that land. This includes such things as elevators and central air-conditioning. Personal property includes

most of the things people own, such as clothing and cars. *Property Law* deals with both kinds of property.

Inheritance¹³ Law. This body of law is closely associated with property law. *Inheritance Law* deals with the transfer of property after death. People can make out wills that tell to whom property should be given. *Inheritance Law* includes laws about making wills. If no will is left, however, *Inheritance Law* dictates¹⁴ who will get what.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. category ['kætɪgərɪ] n. 种类, 类别, [逻]范畴
- 2. specific[spi'sɪfɪk] adj. 详细而精确的,明确的,特殊的
- 3. overlap [,əʊvəˈlæp] v. (与……)重叠
- 4. accuse [əˈkjuːz] vt. 控告, 谴责, 非难
- 5. constitution [,kɒnstɪˈtju:∫ən] n. 宪法, 国体, 章程
- 6. upheaval [ʌpˈhiːvəl] n. 剧变
- 7. criminal [ˈkrɪmɪnl] n. 罪犯, 犯罪者 adj. 犯罪的, 犯法的, 罪恶的
- 8. administrative [ədˈmɪnɪstrətɪv] adj. 管理的, 行政的
- 9. bureaucracy [bjʊəˈrɒkrəsɪ] n. 官僚, 官僚作风, 官僚机构
- 10. tort [to:t] n. [律]民事侵权行为
- 11. enforceable [ɪn`fɔ: səbl] adj. 可强行的,可强迫的,可实施的
- 12.corporate ['kɔ:pərɪt] adj. 社团的, 法人的, 共同的, 全体的
- 13. inheritance [ɪnˈherɪtəns] n. 遗传,遗产
- 14. dictate [dɪk'teɪt] v. 口述, 口授, 使听写, 指令, 指示, 命令, 规定



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. accuse of 控告; 控诉; 谴责
 - e.g. She accused him of lying.

她指责他说谎。

The government was accused of incompetence.

政府被指责无能。

2. carry out 履行; 实施; 执行; 落实; 完成(任务)

e.g. He finally carried out his promise.

他最终把他的承诺付诸行动。

Extensive tests have been carried out on the patient.

已对患者进行了全面检查。

3. involve in (使)参加,加入;把某人牵涉(牵扯)到某事里

e.g. We want to involve as many people as possible in the celebrations.

我们希望参加庆典的人越多越好。

You have involved me in a great deal of extra work.

你害得我添了一大堆额外的工作。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct	ct letter in the bl	ank.	
1. There are laws that _	the c	quality	of food.
A. assure	B. insure		C. ensure
2. The first broad	of la	aw is p	ublic law.
A. qualification	B. classification		C. investigation
3. Constitutions are into	ended to give		to government.
A. spirituality	B. capability		C. stability
4. If no will is left, Inho	eritance Law		who will get what.
A. indicates	B. complicates		C. dictates
5. It is the duty of the _		brancl	n to administer, or carry out, laws.
A. executive	B. perspective		C. perfective

II. Complete the paragraph with the exact words.			*
One way to study our many laws is to group them into two	_1	2_	law
and3 law. Both groupings are broken down into _	4	_ kinds of	law. As
you read about the specific groups, keep in mind that they some	etimes _	5	Also,
be careful not to6 these two groups of laws with the	way the	courts will	handle a
7 over a certain law should such a8 arise			
III. Write true (T) or false (F).			
1Public Law is the set of laws that directly affects the gov	ernment.		
2 Criminal Law is the set of laws dealing with how corp	orations	can be for	med and
how they can be operated.			
3Corporate Law is the set of laws that describes what we s	should an	d should no	ot do.
4 Inheritance Law deals with the transfer of property after	death.		
5International Law is the body of law that deals with our contents.	country ar	nd other co	untries.
	~		

参考译文

法律的种类

虽然每个人都认同美国有很多法律,但是大 多数人都没有注意到法律的不同种类。有些法律 是规定不准开快车的,有些是规定不准在医院附 近喧哗的,有些是禁止在楼宇中点火的,还有针 对抢劫店铺的。有保证食品质量的法律,有提高 公路安全的法律,还有法律要求保存出生和死亡 记录。

研究这些法律的一个途径是把它们归纳为两 大类别——公法和私法。两大类别同时又都可以 细分为不同特殊种类的法律。当你读到这些特殊 的法律时,记着它们有的时候会有重合。同时, 请不要将公法和私法的分类与法庭援引某一特殊法律解决争端的做法相混淆。

公法

第一个宽泛的法律分类是公法。公法是直接 影响政府的一系列法律。比如,公法解决的是政 府与一个被控有罪的人之间的争端。这样的争端 也可以发生在两级政府之间,或者我国与他国政 府之间。

宪法《宪法》是指宪法体系中的一系列法律。 美国宪法是美国的最高法律。州宪法中的法律也

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

是宪法的一部分。《宪法》是用来保障政府的稳定, 使政府的规则和形式不至于在短暂的政治、社会 或经济巨变中迅速改变。

刑法《刑法》也许是最被人熟知的法律。《刑法》是一系列描述我们该做和不该做的事情的法律。它同时还包括对违反法律的人的刑罚条例。

行政法 正如你所知,管理和执行法律是执行机关的职责。实际上,政府的很多日常职能都是通过这些机构实施的。那些代办机构和办公署是政府机构的一部分,负责制定管理它们各自区域的规定和规则。而正是这些规则构成了《行政法》的主体。

国际法《国际法》是处理我国和他国关系的 法律体。所有影响他国政府的法律都被视为《国 际法》的一部分。其中包括有关进出口、国际渔 权等等的法律。

私法

另外一个总的法律范畴是私法。私法是规范 人与人之间行为的法律体,包括个人与个人之间 或群体与群体之间。这样的法律通常不直接涉及 政府。私法也叫民法。

侵权法 民事侵权行为是指某人承受的由他

人实施的不当或伤害。因此,《侵权法》是一系 列关于争端中人们的权利和义务的法律。

合同法 合同是两方的合约。两方可以是人或公司。合同中的条款必须是受法律强制制约的。 这样的法律就是我们所知的《合同法》的一部分。

企业法《企业法》是一系列关于企业如何成立和运作的法律。就像你能猜到的一样,《企业法》和《合同法》是紧密联系的。这是因为企业的运作要用到很多合同。

家庭法《家庭法》是处理家庭事宜的法律体。 在这一宽泛的范畴之内包括有婚姻、离婚、遗弃 和收养。

财产法《财产法》是一系列关于财产的法律。 一些财产被称为不动产,包括土地和建造或生长 在这块土地的一切,例如电梯和中央空调等一些 物品。私人财产包括人们所拥有的大部分物品, 例如衣物和车。《财产法》是关于上述两部分财 产的法律。

遗产法 这个法律体与财产法紧密相关。《遗产法》是关于人死后财产转移的法律。人们可以通过立遗嘱的方式告知财产的归属。《遗产法》包括如何立遗嘱的法律。然而,如果没有遗嘱留下,《遗产法》还规定了什么人将继承遗产。

Answer

- I. 1.A 2. B 3. C 4.C. 5. A
- II. 1. categories 2. public 3. private 4. specific 5. overlap6. confuse 7. dispute 8. conflict
- III. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T



"美"事一桩

美国陪审团制度

在美国,刑事案件的审理和部分民事案件(主要是民事侵权案件)都有可能使用陪审团。而在 英国及英联邦国家,民事案件基本不再使用陪审团。众所周知,陪审团的基本作用是认定案件事实。 在有陪审团的诉讼中,法官不认定事实,法官的基本作用是控制诉讼程序,根据陪审团认定的事实 选择适用的法律条款。

对于需要陪审团审理的案件,第一步就是挑选陪审员,组成陪审团。陪审员的产生往往十分复杂,陪审员的挑选是一项技术性很强的工作。陪审员的挑选是在审理法官的主持下进行的。法官的助手从当地的选民登记手册中随机抽出候选人名单。法官根据案件的情况确定最初陪审员候选人数,有时候选人数可多达二三百人。陪审员的挑选是公开进行的。

在正式开庭审理之前,法官将注意事项详细地以书面形式告知陪审员。在某些重大的刑事案件和民事案件的审理中,法官可以根据情况将陪审团与外界隔离开来,以避免陪审员受到外界的干扰。 在开庭审理中,法官会不断地给陪审团发出各种指示。为了使陪审团能公正地做出裁决,任何贿赂 陪审员的行为都是违法行为,陪审员也必须遵守相应的法律规定,严重者将受到刑事制裁。

美国的法庭审理实行交叉询问制,即法官和陪审团都不能直接询问案件的证人,只能由双方当事人的律师询问。律师对自己一方证人的询问叫做主询问,对对方证人的询问称为反询问。陪审团是通过双方律师对证人的询问来了解案件事实的,法官则控制着双方律师的交叉询问。法官与律师讨论案件中的程序事项时,陪审员不能参与,因为陪审团不能裁决程序事项。

当双方的证人都出庭作证后,法官就可以要求陪审团对案件进行讨论并做出裁决。陪审员根据原告的请求初步形成一项裁决意见,然后交陪审团投票表决。一般的民事和刑事案件要求裁决的投票结果达到9票以上。指控谋杀成立的案件则要求一致通过,全票同意。投票时,要求12名陪审员都要投票。当然历史上也曾有过诉讼中1名陪审员缺席,11名陪审员投票仍然有效的情形。一般的案件如果不能就原告的请求是否成立达到9票以上时,就需要陪审团重新审议,直至形成多数裁决意见。陪审团如何认定事实以及如何形成裁决的过程都是绝对保密的,即使在案件判决生效后,陪审员将案件的讨论过程透露出去也将受到法律的制裁。在民事赔偿案件的审理中,陪审团同样只能在原告所要求的数额范围内做出裁决,不能超出原告请求的数额。这一点与我国法系中的辩论原则的精神相同。在开庭前,法官将告知当事人及双方律师和陪审团将在下次开庭时宣布裁决结果。开庭时,法官将询问陪审团团长是否形成裁决意见。如果形成裁决意见,团长将宣布裁决及投票结果。在陪审团团长宣读裁决结果后,法官还将一一询问各位陪审员的意见,是同意,还是反对。如果这时有陪审员反对,反对票超过4票时,裁决将无效,陪审团就要重新审议。

5

Responsibilities of Citizens

公民的责任和义务



作为公民,美国人有两种责任。第一种是法律框架下的责任,或者说是所有美国人都要根据国家法律履行的责任。第二种是美国人自愿或者自由履行的责任,目的是为了使美国的民主制度继续发展。

As citizens, Americans have two kinds of responsibilities. The first is duties under the law, or duties all Americans must perform according to the laws of the nation. The second kind of responsibilities is duties that Americans perform voluntarily, or freely, in order to keep democracy alive.

Duties under the Law

Some countries require a great deal from their citizens. Many, in fact, ask much more of their citizens than the United States asks of Americans. In Israel, for example, citizens must spend months or years in national service. This is addition to required military service. Some nations also require people to vote. In other words, deciding not to vote is breaking the law.

Remember, however, that the United States is founded on the idea of individual freedom. This belief is so strong that it has kept the requirements of American citizens quite limited.

Attending School The responsibilities of American citizens start early in life. One of the first duties of Americans is to attend school. Every state requires that students attend school until they reach a certain age. In most states, this age is 16. The requirement to attend school is vital in a democracy. After all, it is through education that American citizens learn the skills necessary to be informed, effective citizens of their country.

Obeying the Laws One of the most important responsibilities required of American citizens is to know and obey the laws of the land. This, too, starts at a very early age.

Many of the nation's laws are well-known. Everyone knows that certain laws forbid crimes such as murder, arson¹, assault², or robbery. But, not everyone knows about laws that guarantee³ pure water, regulate⁴ the

disposal⁵ of hazardous⁶ waste materials, or provide help for new businesses.

It is important for all citizens to know as much as they can about the laws that affect their lives. In this way, they can avoid problems and take advantage of new opportunities. And, should a law seem unfair or unnecessary, citizens can work through government to change it.

Paying Taxes By law, all Americans must pay a variety of taxes. These range from income taxes to sales taxes.

Many citizens today are concerned about this duty. They feel the amount of taxes they are required to pay is too high. It is important to remember, however, that tax money pays for many necessities to which we rely every day. Among these are police and fire protection, education, highways and road repair, national defense, and the support of the government itself. But, tax money can be wasted. To help prevent this, it is important for all citizens to keep themselves informed and aware of how their tax money is budgeted and spent.

Defending the Nation American citizens have a responsibility to help defend the nation. In times of peace, the military usually is made up of volunteers. Even in peacetime, however, men 18 years of age are required to register for the draft⁷. Draft registration means giving your name, age, and address to the government so that you can be contacted for military service in

case the country suddenly needs to increase its armed forces.

Serving in Court At some point in their lives, many Americans are asked to serve in court. They may be asked to serve on a jury or called to serve as witnesses.

It is possible to be excused from these duties if special problems at home or at work arise. Remember, however, that the court system depends on the work of citizens. Only by citizens taking part can a fair trial⁸ be guaranteed to all.

Voluntary Duties

Some citizen responsibilities are voluntary. That is, they are carried out by choice. Such activities are enforced only by each American's willingness to perform them. Even so, these duties are as important to the American way of life as are those duties required under the law.

Rights. In many ways, the American people are the keepers of their own rights. One way they can protect their rights is by taking the trouble to find out about them. Clarence Gideon found out about his rights. He then used his knowledge to help himself and many others accused of crimes. Martin Luther King, Jr. and other civil rights leaders helped people learn about their rights and how these rights were being violated¹⁰. The results changed many

people's lives.

Tolerating¹¹ Others' Views In a country as large as the United States, people seldom agree completely on any one issue. Part of the key to getting things done is being able to tolerate differences in viewpoints. All citizens should promote their own interests. But, it also is necessary to listen carefully to others and to try to understand their points of view. Only this can make compromise, and progress, possible.

Casting Your Vote Voting is one of the greatest responsibilities of the American people. In many countries of the world, citizens do not have the right to vote. In such countries, the government makes all of the decisions for the people living there.

In the United States, however, citizens are called upon to vote on everything from school taxes to the President of the United States. Only by voting—by choosing the government's leaders and steering the course of the nation—can the people really rule. Certainly, the responsibility to vote is one that should never be taken lightly.

Taking Part in Democracy Voting is only one way in which citizens can take part in democracy. Because of the freedom Americans enjoy, there are many different ways to take part in. In fact, everyone can find a way to become an active citizen.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. arson ['a:sn] n. 纵火, 纵火罪
- 2. assault [ə'sɔ:lt] n. 攻击, 袭击 v. 袭击
- 3. guarantee [ˌgærən'ti:] n. 保证, 保证书, 担保, 抵押品 vt. 保证, 担保
- 4. regulate ['regjuleɪt] vt. 管制, 控制, 调节, 校准
- 5. disposal [dɪsˈpəuzəl] n. 处理,处置,支配
- 6. hazardous [ˈhæzədəs] adj. 危险的, 冒险的, 碰运气的
- 7. draft [dra:ft] n. 征兵
- 8. trial ['traɪəl] n. 试验, 考验, 审讯, 审判
- 9. enforce [ɪn'fɔ:s] vt. 强迫, 执行, 坚持, 加强
- 10.violate ['vaɪəleɪt] vt. 违犯, 违反, 妨碍
- 11. tolerate ['tuləreɪt] vt. 忍受, 容忍



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. keep... alive 使活着, 使继续着
 - e.g. Doctors kept the baby alive for six weeks.

医生们使婴儿活了六周。

The news of victory kept us alive in excitement.

胜利的消息使我们兴奋不已。

- 2. take advantage of 利用; 利用(机会); 欺骗; 占……的便宜
 - e.g. We took full advantage of the hotel facilities.

我们充分利用了旅馆设施。

He took advantage of my generosity by taking more than I had intended to give.

他利用了我的慷慨占了便宜, 拿走的比我想要给的还多。

- 3. in case 以防; 以防万一
 - e.g. You probably won't need to call—but take my number, just in case.

你很可能无需打电话,不过还是记下我的电话号码吧,以防万一。

In case you are wondering why Jo's here—let me explain...

我来解释一下吧,免得你奇怪乔为什么在这儿。



Exercise 牛刀小试

1. Write the correct l	etter in the blank.		
1. The first is duties under	the law, or duties all Ameri	cans must perform	the
laws of the nation.			Ta duit.
A. according to	B. regarding to	C. considering to	
2 He then used his knowle	day to halm himself and my	Arr ath and	4.016.15

2. He then used his knowledge to help himself and many others

A. excused of

B. accused of

C. accented of

3. Martin Luther King Jr., and other civil ri	ghts leaders helped people lea	arn about their rights
and how these rights were being	DESCRIPTION OF THE	
A. violated B. vibrated	C. vetoed	
4. Part of the key to getting things done	is being able to	differences in
viewpoints.		
A. trouble B. terrify	C. tolerate	
5. The responsibility to vote is one that should	d never be taken	10,000,00
A. slightly B. lightly	C. brightly	
6. Such activities are only b	y each American's willingness	to perform them.
A. enforced B. reinforced	C. forced	
		TO STATE OF
II. Write true (T) or false (F).		
1 Draft registration means giving you	ir name, age, and address to th	ne government so that
you can be contacted for military service	in case the country suddenly	needs to increase its
armed forces.		
2 In a country as large as the United	States, people always agree co	ompletely on any one
issue.		
3 In the United States, however, cit	izens are called upon to vote	e on everything from
school taxes to the President of the United	States.	
4 The United States is founded on the	e idea of individual freedom.	
5 Voting is the only way in which citi	zens can take part in democrac	cy.
	and the second second	
III. Complete these sentences.		112 24 24
Many of the nation's laws are1		
crimes such as murder, arson, assault, or re	obbery. But, not everyone kn	nows about laws that
3 pure water,4_	the disposal of	5 waste
materials, or provide help for new businesses	i.	
It is important for all citizens to know as n	nuch as they can about the law	vs that6
their lives. In this way, they can avoid probl	ems and take7	of new opportunities.
And,8 a law seem unfai	r or unnecessary, citizens can	work9
government to change it.		
\sim		

参考译文

公民的责任和义务

作为公民,美国人有两种责任。第一种是法 律框架下的责任,或者说是所有美国人都要根据 国家法律履行的责任。第二种是美国人自愿或者 自由履行的责任,目的是为了使美国的民主制度 继续发展。

法律框架下的责任

一些国家对公民有很多要求。实际上,很多 国家都比美国对公民的要求多。比如,在以色列, 公民必须为国家服务数月甚至数年。这是在兵役 之外的附加要求。一些国家还要求公民必须投票 选举。换句话说,选择弃权是违反法律的。

然而,请记住,美国是基于个人自由这样的 理念而建立的。这样的理念非常强烈以至于使得 对美国公民的要求非常有限。

上学 美国公民的责任开始得很早。其中第一个责任就是上学。每个州都要求学生们上学,直到达到一定的年龄为止。在大多数州,这个年龄通常是 16 岁。上学这个要求在民主体制中非常重要。毕竟,美国公民都是通过接受教育来学会一些技能,以成为知情和有效的国家公民。

遵守法律 美国公民最重要的责任之一就是 了解和遵守法律。这也要求他们从很小的时候开 始。

很多国家法律都是众所周知的。每个人都知 道有法律是禁止类似犯罪的,例如谋杀、纵火、 袭击和抢劫。但是,并不是人人都知道有法律来 保证水源纯净,规范处置危险废物,或者为新的 企业提供帮助。

非常重要的是,所有的公民都应该尽可能多 地了解那些影响他们生活的法律。只有这样,他 们才能避免问题并且利用新的机遇。同时,如果 一个法律显失公平或者根本没有存在的必要,公 民们可以通过政府的运作来改变它。

缴税 根据法律,所有的美国人都必须缴纳各种各样的税款。范围可以从收入税到营业税。

很多公民现在都比较关注这一责任。他们感 觉他们被要求缴纳的税款额度太高。然而,有重 要的一点必须记住,我们交的税款是用来支付我 们每天生活所依赖的很多必需品的。例如,警察 和消防、教育、高速公路和道路养护、国防,还 有政府自身的运营支持。但是,税款也有可能被 浪费。为了防止这种事情发生,所有的公民都有 权了解他们缴纳的税款是如何预算并被实际花费 的,这点非常重要。

保卫国家 美国公民有保卫国家的责任。在和平年代,军队通常是由志愿者组成的。然而,即使是和平年代,年满 18 岁的男士也都被要求进行征兵登记。征兵登记就是提供给政府你的姓名、年龄和地址,以便在国家突然需要增加武装部队时可以联系到你服兵役。

配合上庭 很多美国人都在生活中的某一时刻被要求上庭。他们可能被选为陪审团中的一员或作为目击证人而出庭。

如果家中或工作中有特殊问题出现,这样的 义务是可以被免除的。然而,要记住,法庭系统 要依靠公民才能工作。只有通过公民的参与才可 以保证公平的审判。

自愿义务

一部分的公民责任是自愿的。也就是说,他们可以通过选择来执行。这样的行为要通过美国人的意愿来增强参与度。尽管如此,这些义务也像那些法律框架下必须履行的义务一样对美国式的生活非常重要。

了解和尊重公民权利 美国人在很多方面都是他们自己权利的保卫者。其中一种保护自己权利的方法就是不怕麻烦地去了解他们的权利。克拉伦斯·基甸找出了他的权利。他于是用自己的知识帮助了他自己和很多其他被判有罪的人们。马丁·路德·金和其他公民权利倡导者帮助人们了解了他们的权利以及他们的权利是如何被侵犯的。这样的结果改变了很多人的生活。

宽容他人的想法 在美国这么大的国家里, 人们很少能对同一事件达成完全一致。使事情顺 利进行的关键是要宽容他人的不同观点。所有的公民都应发展他们各自的兴趣。但是,同时也很必要的是认真听取别人的意见并试图理解他人的观点。只有这样,才可以达成妥协,使进步成为可能。

投下你的选票 选举是美国人最伟大的责任 之一。世界上的很多国家,公民都没有选举权。 在那样的国家里,政府替生活在那里的人们做所 有的决定。

然而,在美国、公民们被号召就所有的事情投票,从学校缴税到美国总统人选。只有通过选举一通过选举政府的领导从而掌控国家的运作——人民才能真正治理国家。当然,选举的责任是永远不能被当成儿戏的。

参与民主 选举只是公民参与民主的途径之一。由于美国人所享有的自由,还有很多方式参与民主。事实上,每个人都能够找到成为一个积极公民的途径。

Answer

- I. 1.A 2.B 3. A 4.C. 5. B 6.A
- II. 1.T 2.F 3.T 4.T 5.F
- III. 1. well-known 2. forbid 3. guarantee 4. regulate
 - 5. hazardous 6. affect 7. advantage 8. should 9. through



"美"事一桩

0

美国总统选举

美国实行总统制、总统选举每四年举行一次。

美国总统选举制度复杂,过程漫长。其主要程序包括预选、各党召开全国代表大会确定总统候选人、总统候选人竞选、全国选民投票、选举人团投票表决和当选总统就职。

预选是美国总统选举的第一阶段,通常从选举年的年初开始,到年中结束。其间,各党派竞选 人将争夺本党总统候选人提名。预选结束后,民主、共和两大政党将分别在第三季度召开全国代表 大会。会议的主要任务是最终确定本党总统、副总统候选人,并讨论通过总统竞选纲领。

两党全国代表大会之后,总统竞选活动便正式拉开帷幕。两党总统候选人耗费巨资,在全国各地开展竞选旅行、进行广告大战、发表竞选演说、会见选民、召开记者招待会以及进行公开辩论等。 此外,候选人还将通过多种形式阐述对国内外事务的政策主张,以赢得选民信任,争取选票。

全国选民投票在选举年 11 月份第一个周二举行,这一天被称为大选日。为避免大选日投票过于拥挤,目前美国大多数州允许选民在大选日前 45 天内提前投票。

美国总统选举实行选举人团制度,因此选民投票时,不仅要在总统候选人当中选择,而且要选出代表 50 个州和首都华盛顿哥伦比亚特区的 538 名选举人,以组成选举人团。在大选中,美国绝大多数州和首都实行"胜者全得"制度,即在一州或首都获得选民票最多者获得该州或首都所有选举人票。赢得 270 张或以上选举人票的总统候选人即获得选举胜利。因此,根据各州选举人票归属情况,通常大选日当晚就能决出选举获胜者。

选举人团投票表决在选举年 12 月第二个星期三之后的第一个星期一举行,选举人在其所在州的首府投票表决。一般情况下,选举人团投票表决只是例行公事。

此外,如果两大党总统候选人各获得 269 张选举人票或因有第三党候选人"入围"而导致无人获得 270 张或以上选举人票,则总统人选由国会众议院决定。这种情况在美国历史上也曾发生过。

总统就职典礼是美国总统选举的最后一道程序。直至当选总统于次年1月20日在总统就职典礼上宣誓就职,总统选举过程才宣告最终结束。

2009 年美国总统选举是自 1952 年以来, 总统候选人中首次没有在职总统或副总统的总统选举。

06

Women and Public Service 妇女和公共服务组织



"女士免谈"是一篇杂志文章的题目、内容是关于美国青年商会会员的。这个组织拥有25万名会员,只接受男性为正式会员。

"NO WOMEN WANTED." This was the title of a magazine article about the United States Junior Chamber of Commerce, or Jaycees¹. This organization, which has about 250,000 members, only accepted men as full members.

In the 1970s, a few local Jaycee chapters, including two in Minnesota, felt it was time to change their policy. It was decided that women should be admitted as full members. The national Jaycees argued that accepting women violated the bylaws² of the organization. In 1978, the Minnesota chapters were notified³ that they were going to be expelled⁴ from the Jaycees.

Instead of dropping their women members, the local chapters field⁵ charges of discrimination with the state of Minnesota.

Minnesota has a law preventing discrimination in "a place of public accommodation". The state courts decided that the Jaycees was such a place and found it guilty of discrimination

against women. The national Jaycees appealed to the Supreme Court.

In 1984, the Supreme Court handed down its decision. It said that the Junior Chamber of Commerce chiefly sold itself to members as a means of improving business skills and contacts. Therefore, it was offering a public service and was considered by the Court to be a public accommodation.

This ruling was reinforced⁶ in 1987 when the Supreme Court decided a similar case involving the Duarte, California, chapter of Rotary International. Here, too, the Court ruled that such an organization—dedicated⁷ to improving local businesses—could not legally exclude women.

The Supreme Court ruled in both cases that even though these groups were private organizations, they offered a public service. As such, they could not deny women full membership.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. Jaycee** ['dʒeɪ'si:] *n*. 美国青年商会会员(年龄在21至39岁之间,为美国和其他国家的当地社区提供援助)
- 2. bylaw ['barlo:] n. 社团制定的规章制度
- 3. notify ['nəutɪfaɪ] v. 通报
- 4. expel [ɪks'pel] v. 驱逐, 开除, 排出, 发射
- 5. field [fi:ld] v. 使行动起来
- 6. reinforce [.ri:ɪn'fo:s] vt. 加强,补充
- 7. dedicate ['dedɪkeɪt] vt. 献(身), 致力



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. expel (from) 把……开除 (或除名); 驱逐出境
- e.g. He was one of the Olympic athletes expelled for drug-taking.

他是因服禁药被取消比赛资格的奥运会运动员。

Foreign journalists are being expelled.

外国记者被驱逐出境。

- 2. appeal to 上诉; 申诉; 有吸引力; 呼吁
- e.g. He said he would appeal after being found guilty on four counts of murder.

法庭判决他犯有四项谋杀罪, 他表示要上诉。

The design has to appeal to all ages and social groups.

设计要雅俗共赏, 老幼皆宜。

Organizers appealed to the crowd not to panic.

组织者呼吁人群不要惊慌。

- 3. hand down 把某事物传下去; 传给(后代); 正式宣布; 公布
- e.g. These skills used to be handed down from father to son.

这些技术以往都是父子相传。

The judge has handed down his verdict.

法官已经宣布了裁决结果。

4. dedicate to 把……奉献给

e.g. He dedicated his life to helping the poor.

他毕生致力于帮助穷人。

A memorial stone was dedicated to those who were killed in the war.

为阵亡将士纪念碑举行了落成典礼。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corre	ect letter in the bla	ink.		
1. This ruling was	in 198	7 when the Supreme Court decided a similar case.		
A. strengthened	B. forced	C. reinforced		
2. The Court ruled th	at such an organization	n—dedicated to improving local businesses—could		
not legally	women.			
A. elude	B. exclude	C. allude		
3. In 1978, the Minne	esota chapters were _	that they were going to be expelled		
from the Jaycees.				
A. noticed	B. notified	C. natured		
4. In 1984, the Suprer	ne Court	its decision.		
A. handed down	B. handed over	C. handed in		
5. Instead of dropping	ng their women mem	bers, the local chapters charges of		
discrimination with	the state of Minnesota			
A. field	B. motivate	C. stimulate		
II. Write true (T) or false (F).				
1The state courts found the Jaycees guilty of discrimination against women.				

)	2Minnesota has a law preventing discrimination in "a place of public accommodation."
,	3Jaycee was not considered by the Court to be a public accommodation.
)	
	III. Complete these sentences.
	1. The national Jaycees argued that accepting women the bylaws of the
	organization.
	2. The Minnesota chapters were going to be from the Jaycees.
١	3. The national Jaycees the Supreme Court.
)	4. The Junior Chamber of Commerce chiefly sold itself to members as a of
	improving business skills and contacts.

参考译文

妇女和公共服务组织

"女士免谈"是一篇杂志文章的题目,文章 内容是关于美国青年商会会员的。这个组织拥有 25 万名会员,只接受男性为正式会员。

在 20 世纪 70 年代,几个地方的青年商会组织,包括两个在明尼苏达州的,感觉是时候改变他们的政策了。他们决定女性应该被接纳为正式会员。国家青年商会提出异议,认为接受女性会员违反了组织的相关法规。在 1978 年,明尼苏达州的两个地方青年商会组织被通报,他们将被驱逐出国家商会组织。

那两个青年商会组织不但没有放弃他们的女性会员,还行动起来以歧视为由控告明尼苏达州。明尼苏达州有一则法律禁止发生在"公共场所"的歧视。州法庭认定青年商会属于公共场所,因此它构成了歧视妇女罪。国家青年商会上诉到最

高法院。

1984年,最高法院宣布了它的裁决。法院 认为美国青年商会提供给会员们的是提高商业技 能和联系的途径,因此,它是在提供一种公共服 务,而且在法院看来它属于公共场所。

这一规定在 1987 年最高法院在审理类似案件的时候得到进一步的巩固, 那个案子涉及杜阿特、加利福尼亚州、轮滑国际社分部。当时,法院也认定这样的组织——致力于促进地方商业——不能合法拒绝接纳女性。

最高法院在两个案子中都裁定,即使这些组织是私人组织,他们提供的也是公共服务。因此,他们不能拒绝女性的正式会员身份。

"美"事一桩

奥普拉·温弗瑞 (Oprah Winfrey)

她是美国最受欢迎电视人,哈泼娱乐集团公司董事长,全美 50 名女强人之一,20 世纪最有影响力的100 位名人之一,《福布斯》杂志排行榜上的亿万富翁。《福布斯》杂志 2009 年度"全球最有权力人物"排行榜第45 位。

奥普拉是美国的脱口秀主持人。从采访记者到政客等诸多人士无不在争相效仿她的风格,但却没人能够企及她的声望与收入。她所主持的《奥普拉·温弗瑞脱口秀》及其专题节目"Oprah Winfrey Prime Time"在全世界 132 个国家播出。才华与商业头脑兼备使她很快成为美国第一位黑人亿万富翁。她的节目曾获得过 30 多项艾美奖,以及无数的其他成就奖项。她还是一位出色的演员和制片人,她是美国最有影响力的人物之一。

奥普拉·温弗瑞于 1954 年 1 月 29 日出生在美国最贫穷的地区之——密西西比州的科西阿斯科。她的父母是一对未婚青少年,她小时候生活在外婆家的农场里,少年时曾经不幸受到一些亲戚、邻居的性虐待。贫穷和不幸遭遇并没有毁灭她对知识的渴望和对生活的信心。后来她利用参加选美赢来的奖金进入大学学习,并且凭借自己的天赋和不懈努力进入了广播媒体领域。1986 年,她创办了《奥普拉·温弗瑞脱口秀》节目,很快受到观众的欢迎,成为美国脱口秀的领军节目。她的节目内容主要关注个人问题,寻找办法激励、帮助人们拯救自我,她的目标是让电视改变人们的生活,给每一个人、每一个家庭带去快乐和成就感。

她是一个成功的人,如今她已经成为全世界千千万万人的偶像。她那从贫穷、被虐待到富有、知名乃至成功的征途,不断给她的广大观众以希望和帮助。她知道自己是谁,应该怎样生活。正像她自己解释的:"我是一个追求真实的人,这也是我每天在节目中所做的——展现真实。"

奥普拉·温弗瑞格言: You must be responsible for yourself. 你要对你自己的一生负责。

Answer

I. 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

II. 1.T 2. T 3. F

III. 1. violated 2. expelled 3. appealed to 4. means



Part 2 American Economy 美国经济

美国经济经历了几百年的历史,其发展过程中有许多值得其他国家学习和吸取的经验。

本章对美国经济中的一些专业术语和基本概念进行了解释和介绍说明。这些概念使读者能够对美国经济不同时期的特点以及美国经济的发展有一定的了解。通过这些文章,读者对美国经济系统的运作方式会有深刻的理解和认识。

对经济术语概念的学习不仅是学习美国经济的必要条件,还有助于读者对英语语言的学习,同时更有助于加强大家对学习英文科技文写作方法的认识。

7

Bartering 以物易物



几千年前,古代人并不使用金钱。他们以狩猎和采集食物为生。随着人们学会如何种 植植物和驯化动物、盈余的或过多的食物便产生了。这种盈余允许人们以物易物。

Early Forms of Bartering¹

Thousands of years ago, ancient people did not use money. They lived by hunting and gathering food. As people learned how to domesticate² plants and animals, a surplus³, or overabundance⁴, of food was created. This surplus allowed people to barter. Bartering is the trading of items people have for the items they need or want.

Bartering in the New World

Early explorers of the New World found Native Americans willing to trade furs for blankets, metal tools, and trinkets. The trapping⁵ and trading of furs became a profitable⁶, or moneymaking business. The Hudson Bay Company set up trading posts in Canada and later expanded into U.S. territory⁷. As the demand for furs increased, European trappers competed with Native Americans in the hunt for furbearing animals.

Settlement of the New World led to many interesting exchanges between settlers and Native Americans. As settlements grew, the demand for land increased. The settlers often traded with the Native Americans to acquire more land. One famous act of bartering occurred in the early 1600s. Dutch settlers were able to swap 24 dollars worth

of trading goods with the Native Americans for the island that is now Manhattan.

Bartering in Colonial and Revolutionary America

Bartering played a major role in the economy of colonial America. The colonists found bartering with items they had access to, such as tobacco and corn, an acceptable way to pay debts and buy goods within the colonies.

During the American Revolution, colonists were once again forced to rely on bartering. Even George Washington found it necessary to barter to obtain supplies for the Continental Army.



The nation grew after winning its independence. As settlers pushed further and further west, bartering helped explorers and settlers build friendly relationships with the Native Americans. The journals of the Lewis and Clark Expedition contain many accounts⁸ of bartering with Native Americans.

Modern-Day Bartering

Bartering is still an important economic tool. Many people, communities, and nations find bartering useful in acquiring the things they need and want. In order to save money, companies and individuals have discovered the convenience of online bartering.

Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1.barter** ['bɑ:tə] *n*. 物品交换, 实物交易 *v*. 物品交换, 交换
- 2.domesticate [dəˈmestɪkeɪt] vt. 驯养, 使安于土地, 教化
- 3.surplus ['səːpləs] n. 剩余, 过剩, 盈余
- 4.overabundance [ˈəʊvərəˈbʌndəns] n. 过剩;过多
- **5.trap** [træp] v. 使 (某物) 留在某处; 用捕捉器捕捉动物
- 6.profitable ['profitabl] adj. 有利可图的
- 7.territory ['terɪtərɪ] n. 领土, 版图, 地域
- 8.account [əˈkaʊnt] n. 计算, 账目



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. allow sb. to do 允许, 让某人做某事

e.g. He does not allow his son to go abroad.

他不让他的儿子出国。

My mother doesn't allow me to play computer.

我妈妈不允许我玩电脑。

2. be able to 能够

e.g. Although Bob is only 3 years old, he is able to draw some simple pictures.

虽然鲍勃只有三岁大,他已经能画一些简单的画了。

Sam found the glasses very useful in protecting the eyes.

山姆发现这副眼镜对保护眼睛十分有益。

3. find sth. useful in doing 发现某物(在某方面)有用

e.g. Lily found the book very useful in cooking.

丽莉发现这本书十分有助于烹饪。

You are better able to do it than I am.

你比我更有能力做这件事。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the co	orrect letter in	the blank.		
1.They lived	hunting	and gathering food.		a carps
A. at	B. in	C. by		-1,-
2. This surplus all	owed people	barter.		
A. for	B. in	C. to		
3. Early explorers	s of the New Worl	d found Native Americans	S	to trade furs for

blankets, metal tools, a	and trinkets.	materials and the	
A. is willing	B. willin	c. willingness	
4. As the demand	_ furs increased,	European trappers comp	eted with Native Americans
in the hunt for fur-bear	ring animals.		
A. for	3. in	C. at	
5. Settlement of the New	w World led	many interesting exc	hanges between settlers and
Native Americans.			
A. in	3. into	C. to	
6. Bartering played a maj	jor roletl	ne economy colonial Ame	rica.
A. at	3. in	C. on	
7. The colonists found ba	artering with iten	ns they had access	, such as tobacco and corn,
an acceptable way to p	ay debts and buy	y goods within the colonie	es.
A. to	3. at	C. in	
8. During the American I	Revolution, color	nists were once again force	ed to rely bartering.
A. at	3.in	C. on	
II. Write true (T) or	r false (F).		
1 The colonists	found bartering	with items they had acc	ess to, such as tobacco and
corn, an unacceptable wa	y to pay debts ar	nd buy goods within the c	olonies.
2 George Washin	ngton found it ne	cessary to barter to obtain	supplies for the Continental
Army.			
3 As settlers pus	shed further and	further west, bartering h	elped explorers and settlers
build friendly relationship	ps with the Nativ	ve Americans.	
4 In order to save	e time, companie	es and individuals have di	scovered the convenience of
online bartering			
III. Complete these	sentences.		
1. The nation grew after_	(win) its	s independence.	
2. European trappers com	npeted	Native Americans in the h	unt for fur-bearing animals.
3order to save mo	ney, companies	and individuals have dis	covered the convenience of
online bartering.			

4.	They	lived	by h	nunting and		(gather)food.
ᇽ.	They	nvcu	Uy I	fullting and	·	(gamer)100a

5. The settlers often traded _____ the Native Americans to acquire more land.

参考译文

以物易物

以物易物的早期形式

几千年前,古代人并不使用金钱。他们以 狩猎和采集食物为生。随着人们学会种植植物和 驯化动物,盈余的或过多的食物便产生了。这种 盈余允许人们以物易物。以物易物是指人们用所 拥有的物品换取所需要的或想要的物品的贸易 活动。

新大陆的以物易物

新大陆的早期探险者发现,美洲土著人愿意 用毛皮换取毛毯、五金工具和小饰物。毛皮的获 取和贸易成为一种有利可图的、赚钱的生意。哈 德逊湾公司在加拿大设立了贸易站,后来又扩展 到美国境内。随着人们对毛皮需求的增加,欧洲 捕猎者与印第安人争相捕猎毛皮兽。

新大陆的移民和当地的土著居民之间进行了很多有趣的贸易往来。随着定居的移民不断增加,土地的需求量不断增大,移民经常与土著交易以获得更多的土地。在17世纪初就发生了一个有名的交易。荷兰移民用仅值24美元的货物从美国土著那里获取了如今的曼哈顿。

殖民时期及美国革命时期的以物易物

以物易物对美国殖民地的经济发挥了重要作用。殖民者发现用他们可获取的物品以物易物,如烟草和玉米,用以支付债务和在殖民地内购买商品,是一种可接受的方式。美国独立战争期间,殖民者被迫再次依靠以物易物。即使是乔治·华盛顿也认为有必要通过以物易物为大陆军获取军需品。

国家赢得独立后逐渐发展。拓荒者向越来越远的西部地区推进,物物交易帮助探险家和拓荒者与印第安人建立了友好的关系。路易斯和克拉克远征的日志中载有多个与印第安人进行物物交易的账项。

现代以物易物

以物易物仍然是一种重要的经济手段。许多 个人、社区和国家在获取所需要或想要的东西时, 会发现以物易物是一种很有用的方式。为了节省 资金,公司和个人已经认识到网络以物易物的便 利性。

"美"事一桩



现代易货交易

现代社会网络发达,交易双方网络平台的存在使避开金融系统直接交换大宗物品成为可能,网络第三方信用体系建设和完善是易货交易发展的前提。

现代物物交换始于 20 世纪 50 年代的美国。从 20 世纪 80 年代起,现代易货交易公司在美国、加拿大、澳大利亚等国蓬勃发展,成为这些国家减少现金用量、增加销售、减少库存、开发新客户、开辟新市场、促进经济发展的重要方式。进入 20 世纪 90 年代,网络技术的成熟发展和应用为现代易货交易提供了更加完善的技术基础和应用条件,电子商务与易货交易的结合成为以高新技术改造传统企业的典范。

如果用一句话来解释现代物物交换,那就是基于网络这个交易平台,利用易货额度(而不是现金) 及特殊的易货交易软件,打破时间和空间的限制,实现企业与企业、企业与消费者之间商品或服务的

A Humor 休闲时刻



换大米

在农村,有拉着马车换大米的小贩,这天串村串到了阿蛋村里面,从村子西头一路吆喝着走了过去。阿蛋家在村子的西头,听见吆喝也没出去,不紧不慢拿了个碗,舀了半碗玉米,然后走出大门,喊了一嗓子: "换大米的!" 换大米的已经走到了村东头,又拐回来,走跟前一看,不乐意了: "你把我大老远喊过来,就换一碗玉米的大米啊?" 阿蛋也不乐意了: "谁说的,我换半碗。"

Answer

I. 1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. C

II. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F

III 1. winning 2. with 3. In 4. gathering 5. with



8

History of Money 钱币发展史



From Bartering to Currency

As civilizations grew, bartering became an increasingly more difficult economic system to use. People began using items such as shells, salt, and cattle as the unit of exchange, or the first money. Gradually, a money economy replaced the barter system for most of the world.

When trade and travel expanded beyond the local community¹, people sought a commodity², or common item, that everyone would accept for payment. Lumps³ of precious metal became a standard unit of exchange. Gold and silver were the most commonly used metals because they were durable⁴ and could be divided into smaller pieces.



Coins made from precious metals were first used in Turkey, Egypt, Greece, and Rome. However, carrying around bags of coins eventually became too burdensome⁵, so a more convenient form of money evolved. The Chinese was the first civilization to use paper money; later, European countries adopted the custom.

Currency in the New World

The first settlers to the New World brought little money with them. England prohibited⁶ the colonies from producing currency. This was a way to force the colonies to trade exclusively⁷ with



England. At first, the settlers used corn, tobacco, and other goods as money. Massachusetts was the first colony to make its own currency. Later, other colonial governments issued their own currency. However, paper money is only good if there is enough gold or silver to exchange for it. Soon, the colonies had

more money in circulation than they had fold or silver. This made the colonial money worthless.

Continentals8 and Greenbacks9

Enthusiasm for printing paper money continued to cause problems for Americans. During the American Revolution, the Continental Congress issued continentals, or paper money of the national government, to finance the war. The United States government also issued paper money, nicknamed greenbacks, during the Civil War to pay debts. Both times, the paper money became worthless because there wasn't enough gold or silver to back the new money. During these times, banks were also allowed to issue paper money.



To establish better control over the supply of money in circulation, Congress passed the *Federal Reserve Act* in 1913. The United States Treasury bought up all the paper money in circulation. Federal Reserve Banks, established under the new law, were the only banks authorized¹⁰ to issue paper money. The Federal Reserve Banks were also given the job of managing the nation's money supply. Today, Federal Reserve notes, our current paper money,

are printed by the Bureau of Engraving and Printing. These notes are legal tender, or the official money used for payment, for all debts in the United States.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. community [kəˈmjuːnɪtɪ] n. 公社, 团体, 社会, (政治)共同体
- 2. commodity [kə'mɒdɪtɪ] n. 日用品
- 3. lump [lʌmp] n. 块 (尤指小块), 肿块, 笨人
- 4. durable ['djuərəbl] adj. 持久的, 耐用的
- 5. burdensome ['ba:dnsəm] adj. 繁重的, 烦累的, 难以承担的
- 6. prohibit [prəˈhɪbɪt] vt. 禁止, 阻止
- 7. exclusive [ɪksˈkluːsɪv] adj. 排外的, 孤傲的, 唯我独尊的, 独占的, 唯一的
- 8. continental [,kontɪ'nentl] adj. 大陆的, 大陆性的 n. 欧洲人
- 9. greenback [gri:nbæk] n. 美钞, 背部为绿色的动物
- 10. authorize ['ɔ:θəraɪz] v. 批准



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. be divided into 被分成……
 - e.g. His house was divided into 4 parts after his death.

在他死后, 他的房子被分成了四份。

The novel was divided into chapters.

那部小说被分成了若干童节。

- 2. bring up 培养, 教育, 提出
 - e.g. She is account for bringing up two children.

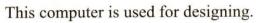
她一个人负起抚养两个孩子的全部责任。

You can bring up these matters in the committee.

你可在委员会中提出这些问题。

- 3. be used for 被用来做……
 - e.g. This dictionary is used for checking fresh words.

这本字典是用来查生词的。



这台电脑是用来做设计的。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corr	ect letter in the	e blank.
1. As civilizations gro	ew, bartering becar	me anmore difficult economic system to use.
A. increasingly	B. increasing	C. increased
2. Gradually, a mone	y economy	the barter system for most of the world.
A. placed	B. replaced	C. replacing
3. Gold and silver w	ere the most comr	nonly used metals because they were durable and could
be divideds	maller pieces.	
A. to	B. into	C. as
4. Enthusiasm	printing paper n	noney continued to cause problems for Americans.
A. to	B. for	C. on
5 around bag	gs of coins eventua	ally became too burdensome.
A. Carrying	B. Carry	C. Carried
6. Paper money is on	ly if there	is enough gold or silver to exchange for it.
A. one	B. well	C. good
7. Coins from	precious metals w	ere first used in Turkey, Egypt, Greece, and Rome.
A. made	B. making	C. make
8. The Chinese were the custom.		ation to use paper money; later, European countries
A. adopted	B. made	C. had
II. Write true (T		etals were first used in India, Egypt, Greece, and Rome.

2 The Chinese was the first civilization to use paper money; later, European countries
adopted the custom.
3 To establish better control over the supply of money in circulation, Congress passed
the Federal Reserve Act in 1923.
4At first, the settlers to the New World used corn, tobacco, and other goods as money.
5 The United States government issued paper money, nicknamed greenbacks, during/
the Civil War to pay debts.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. However, carrying around bags of coins eventually became too(burden).
2. When trade and travel expanded beyond the local community, people(seek) a
commodity, or common item, that everyone would accept for payment.
3. The United States Treasury boughtall the paper money in circulation.
4. Both times, the paper money became(worth)because there wasn't enough gold or
silver to back the new money.
5. Federal Reserve Banks, established under the new law, were the only banks(authority)to
issue paper money.

参考译文

钱币发展史

从以物易物到货币

随着人类文明的发展,以物易物成为越来越难被使用的经济系统。人们开始使用贝壳、盐和牛等物品或早期的货币作为交换单位。渐渐地,货币经济在世界大多数地区取代了以物易物的交换系统。

当贸易和旅游的范围超出本土后, 人们开始

寻求一种能被大家普遍接受的、用来支付的商品 或通用品。块状贵重金属成为交换的标准单位。 黄金和白银是最常用的金属,因为它们耐用且可 分成更小的块状。由贵重金属制成的硬币最早在 土耳其、埃及、希腊和罗马使用。然而,随身携 带成包的硬币毕竟是很重的负担,因此一种更方 便的货币形式演变出现。中国是第一个使用纸币 的文明国度,后来,欧洲国家也采取这种方式。

新大陆的货币

到新大陆的第一批定居者并没有带多少钱。 英格兰人禁止殖民地的移民制造货币。这种方式 迫使殖民地的移民只能与英格兰人进行贸易往 来。起初,定居者使用玉米、烟草和其他一些商 品作为货币。马萨诸塞州是第一个制造自己货币 的州。后来,其他殖民政府也发行了自己的货币。 然而,只有有足够的黄金、白银能够与之兑换时, 纸币才有价值。不久后,在殖民地流通的纸币多 于其所拥有的黄金和白银。由此导致殖民地的货 币失去了价值。

大陆币和美钞

印刷纸币的热情继续给美国人带来问题。美

国独立战争期间,大陆会议发行了大陆币,或称为政府纸币,以资助战争。内战期间,美国政府也印发了昵称为"绿背"的纸币偿还欠款。在这两个时期,纸币变得毫无价值,因为没有足够的黄金和白银来支持新的货币。在此期间,银行也被允许发行纸币。

为了确保更好地控制流通中的货币供应量, 1913 年国会通过了《联邦储备法》。美国财政部 收购所有流通中的纸币。根据新法规定而建立的 美国联邦储备银行是唯一授权发行纸币的银行。

美国联邦储备银行还获得了调控国家货币供给量的工作。如今,美国联邦储备券,即我们目前的纸币,由美国印刷局印制。这些储备券是国家的法定货币,即用于支付美国境内所有债务的正式货币。

"美"事一桩



- I. 1.A 2.B 3.B 4.B 5.A 6.C 7.A 8.A
- II. 1.F 2.T 3.F 4.T 5.T
- III. 1. burdensome 2.sought 3.up 4.worthless 5.authorized



美国纸币上的头像

- 1 美元上印的是美国的国父, 第 1、2 届美国总统——乔治·华盛顿;
- 2美元上是第3任美国总统杰斐逊;
- 5美元是废除美国奴隶制的第16任总统亚伯拉罕·林肯;
- 10 美元上是美国第1任财政部长汉密尔顿;
- 20 美元上是第7任美国总统安德鲁·杰克逊;
- 50 美元上是第 18 任总统尤里西斯·格兰特·葛仑;

百元大钞上的头像不是总统,而是著名科学家、金融家、政治家富兰克林。

09

Factors of Production 生产要素



个人、家庭、企业和政府根据国家资源的利用情况做出经济决策。这些资源被称为生 产要素。这些生产要素通常被分成四组:土地、劳动力、资本和企业家。

Types of Resources

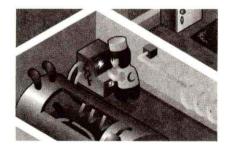
Individuals, families, businesses, and the government make economic decisions concerning the use of a nation's resources. These resources are typically categorized into four groups called factors of production: land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship².

Factors of Production

Land is the environmental resource. It includes all natural resources: land (including anything that grows on or below the soil), water, air, and wildlife. Some natural resources are plentiful, while others are scarce. Resources are classified as renewable³ and nonrenewable. A renewable resource is one that can be replaced, either naturally or by man. A nonrenewable resource is one that



cannot be replaced in a timely manner or at all by nature or by man. Payment for the use of land is called rent.



Labor is the mental and physical efforts of people applied to the production of goods and services. Labor is an important element of production. Workers labor to make goods and provide services. Payment for labor is called wages. In 1913, the Department of Labor was established to enforce laws created to protect workers against unfair labor practices by businesses.

Capital is the money, buildings, and machinery and equipment used to produce goods and services. Payment for investing capital is called interest. Capitalism is an economic system used by many nations, including the United States. Under this system, private individuals and corporations⁴ own the capital used to produce goods and services.





Entrepreneurship is the risk-taking resource. Entrepreneurs are people who combine labor, land, and capital resources to start businesses. Not every business is successful. Sometimes they fail. Payment for risk-taking or entrepreneurship is called profit. An important characteristic of capitalism is free enterprise⁵: individuals own businesses to make a

profit. The profit motive⁶, the possibility of making money, is the main reason people take the risk of starting a business. Competition between businesses allows consumers to purchase⁷ the best quality product at the lowest price.

Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. categorize ['kætɪgəraɪz] v. 加以类别, 分类
- 2. entrepreneurship [ˌɒntrəprəˈnə:ʃɪp] n. <法>企业家, 主办人
- 3. renewable [rɪˈnju(ː)əbl] adj. 可更新的,可恢复的
- 4. corporation [.kɔːpəˈreɪʃən] n. [律]社团, 法人, 公司, 企业
- **5. enterprise** ['entəpraɪz] n. 企业,事业,计划,事业心,进取心
- 6. motive ['məutɪv] n. 动机, 目的 adj. 发动的, 运动的
- 7. purchase ['pə:t∫əs] vt. 买,购买



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. be categorized into 被分类为

e.g. The books here are categorized into more than 10 types, including economic, artistic, literary, scientific, and so on.

这些书被分成了十多类,包括经济、艺术、文学、自然等。

This company is categorized into several apartments.

这家公司被分成了几个部门。

2. take the risk of doing sth. 冒着做某事的风险

e.g. He took the risk of losing his job by making such a public speech.

他冒着丢掉工作的风险进行了那次演讲。

I took the risk of failing the exam by watching DVD.

我冒着考试不及格的风险看碟。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corn	rect letter in the	blank.
1. Individuals, famil	ies, businesses, and	the government make economic decisionsthe
use of a nation's r	esources.	
A. concerning	B. concerned	C. concern
2. Some natural reso	urces are plentiful,	others are scarce.
A. when	B. while	C. and
3. Resources are class	ssified rene	ewable and nonrenewable.
A. in	B. as	C. into
4. A renewable resou	irce is one that can b	be replaced, either natural by man.
A. or	B. nor	C. and

				_ ^
	ental and physical	efforts of people	to the production of	goods and
services.	D. amelia	Complied		
	bor is called wages.			
	B. as	C. to		
			orce laws created to prote	ct workers
	abor practices by bu			
A. against				
8. Capitalism is an	economic system _	by many nation	S.	
A. using	B.use	C.used		
9. One of the chara	cteristics of capitalis	sm free enterpri	se.	
A. are	B.is	C. /		
10. The profit moti	ve, the possibility o	of making money, is t	he main reason people	the risk
of starting a bus	siness.			
A. take	B. have	C. make		
中人工提展一步介绍	real Alaman a			THE PART
II. Write true (T) or false (F).			
1 Compet	tition between busi	nesses allows consu	imers to purchase the be	est quality
product at the lo	west price.			
2 Under :	Socialism, private	individuals and cor	porations own the capit	al used to
produce goods as	nd services.			
3 Land inc	cludes all natural res	sources: land (includi	ng anything that grows or	n or below
the soil), water, a			学的对外工作人员 心成3	
4. Entrepre	eneurs are people v	who combine labor,	land, and capital resourc	es to start
businesses.		美 新 角	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
5. Resource	es are classified into	renewable, nonrenew	vable, and half-renewable.	6×15
			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	THE PARTY
	hese sentences.			
T.			d feature of medication 1	. 1.1.
			d factors of production: la	and, labor,
	and in called			
2. Fayment for the t	use of land is called_	·		
	^		`~	

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

3.	Labor is the mental and	efforts of people applied to the production	of goods and
	services.		
4	Payment for risk-taking or entren	reneurshin is called	

- yment for risk-taking or entrepreneurship is called
- 5. Payment for labor is called . . .

参考译文

牛产要素

资源类型

个人、家庭、企业和政府根据国家资源的利 用情况做出经济决策。这些资源被称为生产要素。 这些生产要素通常被分成四组: 土地、劳动力、 资本和企业家。

生产要素

土地是环境资源。它包括所有自然资源: 土 地(包括任何在土壤以上或以下的资源)、水、 空气和野生动物。有些自然资源很丰富,有些则 很稀缺。资源分为可再生资源和不可再生资源。 可再生资源指可以被自然或人类替代的资源。不 可再生资源指短时间内或根本不能被自然或人类 替代的资源。使用土地而支付的报酬即所谓的租 金。

劳动力是指在生产商品和提供服务的过程中 消耗的脑力和体力的总和。劳动力是重要的生产 要素。工人通过劳动来生产商品和提供服务。劳 动报酬称为工资。1913年、美国劳工部成立、制 定法律,保护工人,以免在企业中受到不公平待 遇。

资本指金钱、厂房、机器和用于生产商品和 提供服务的设备。投资资本金而获得的收益称为 利润。资本主义是包括美国在内的许多国家采用 的一种经济制度。在这一制度下、私人和公司拥 有用于生产商品和提供服务的资本。

企业家是一种承担风险的资源。企业家指 集合劳动力、土地和资本以创业的人。并不是每 一家公司都成功,有时它们也会失败。企业家承 担风险所带来的收益称为利润。资本主义的一个 重要特点是自由企业制: 私人拥有企业以赚取利 润。利润动机即赚钱的可能性,是人们承担创业 风险的主要原因。企业间的竞争使消费者能够以 最低的价格购买到最优质的产品。

"美"事一桩



生产要素配置组合是经济学的基本问题

当今世界,经济活动、经济形态形形色色,纷繁复杂,但它们本质上都是生产要素如何配置的问题。第一,一切实体经济都会直接表现为生产要素配置。从生产者的角度看,就是怎样以各种生产要素配置而制造出产品。从流通的角度看,就是怎样通过一定生产要素配置而使产品发生位移,与新的生产者或消费者形成新的组合。从交换的角度看,就是生产者或消费者怎样卖掉自己不再需要的产品(生产要素组合),买回自己需要的产品(生产要素组合)。从分配的角度看,就是怎样把产品(生产要素组合)分配到众多消费者手中。从消费的角度看,就是怎样消费现有产品(生产要素组合),进入下一轮再生产过程。第二,由于货币是随着商品交换的需要而产生的,是要素的价值形态,因此资本的流动、银行资金的流动,实际上是生产要素的流动,它随时可以转换为实物形态进入具体的经济活动之中。如果货币的流动没有实物形态的生产要素来支撑,就形成"泡沫经济"。因此,研究资源即生产要素的配置,就成为经济学的基本问题。



Answer

I. 1.A 2.B 3.B 4.A 5.C 6.A 7.A 8.C 9.B 10.A II. 1.T 2.F 3.T 4.T 5.F

III. 1.entrepreneurship 2.rent 3.physical 4.profit 5.wages



10

Supply and Demand 供给与需求



美国的经济是以为消费者提供其所需的商品和服务为基础的。那些购买并使用商品和服务的人叫做消费者。为消费者提供商品和服务的个人和企业叫做生产者。消费者可使用的商品和服务的数量取决于供给和需求。

Supply and Demand

The economy of the United States is based on providing consumers with the goods and services they need and want. Consumers are people who buy and use goods and services. Producers are the people and businesses that provide these goods and services for the consumers. The goods and services made available to consumers are determined by supply and demand.

Supply is the number of items ready for sale. Demand is the number of items consumers want to purchase. If the supply of an item is greater than its demand by consumers, then there is a surplus of that item. A surplus causes the price of the item to decrease. When consumers' demand for the item is greater than the supply, this results in a scarcity². Scarcity causes the price of the item to increase.

Law of Supply and Demand

- The price of an item will go down if the supply increases or the demand for that item decreases.
- The price of an item will go up if the supply decreases or the demand for that item increases.



Part 2 American Economy 美国经济

Early Examples of Supply and Demand



Jamestown Colony prospered³ from tobacco production. Tobacco sold for very high prices in England due to the high demand for the product. This encouraged settlers to plant more tobacco to take advantage of the high prices.

In 1849, gold was discovered in California. People from all over the world rushed to California to get rich in the gold fields. With limited supplies of goods and services available to the prospectors⁴, the prices of items such as food, lodging⁵, and supplies skyrocketed⁶.

After the Civil War, small farms operated by sharecroppers⁷ and tenant⁸ replaced the large plantations. With few resources, the farmers depended on credit to purchase the goods and services they needed. To repay their debts, farmers grew cotton as a cash crop⁹. Eventually more cotton was produced than could be sold, and the price of cotton fell drastically.

Today

The cost of energy is a concern for consumers. One form of energy is fossil fuels¹⁰. Oil is a fossil fuel that is nonrenewable resource. There is a limited supply available. As other nations build more factories, drive more cars, and buy more computers, the rising demand for oil causes increases in oil prices. Future demand by individuals, businesses, and nations for fossil fuels will continue to cause increases in the price of fossil fuels, unless the demand can be satisfied by alternative energy sources.





Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. available [ə'veɪləbl] adj. 可用到的, 有用的
- 2. scarcity ['skεəsɪtɪ] n. 缺乏, 不足
- 3. prosper ['prospə] vi. 兴旺,繁荣,成功
- 4. prospector [pro'spektə(r)] n. 勘探者, 采矿者
- 5. lodge [lod3] vi. 临时住宿, 寄宿(某人家)
- 6. skyrocket ['skaɪrʌkɪt] vi. 突升, 猛涨
- 7. sharecropper ['[eəkropə(r)] n. (尤指美国西南部的)小佃农
- 8. tenant ['tenənt] n. 承租人、房客、租客 v. 出租
- 9. cash crop 商品作物
- 10. fossil fuel 矿物燃料, 化石燃料



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. provide sb. with sth. /provide sth. for sb. 为某人提供某物
 - e.g. The couple provided the guests with plenty of delicious dishes.
 - / The couple provided plenty of delicious food for the guests.
 - 那对夫妇为客人提供了丰富的菜肴。
 - The professor will provide data for his students.
 - 教授将给学生们提供一些数据。
- 2.take advantage of 利用
 - e.g. He took advantage of local natural resources setting up his own factory.
 - 他利用当地的自然资源建起了他的工厂。
 - Bill takes advantage of video promoting his project.
 - 比尔利用视频推广他的项目。
- 3....unless... 除非
 - e.g. I will not go there unless Elizabeth goes too.
 - 除非伊丽莎白去,我才去。

I sleep with the window open unless it's really very cold.

我总是开着窗户睡觉,除非天气非常冷才关上窗户。



Exercise 牛刀小试

		5180	
I. Write the cor	rect letter in	the blank.	
1. The economy of	f the United Sta	tes is based on providing consumers	the goods and
services they nee	ed and want.		
A. to	B. in	C. with	
2. Producers are the	e people and bu	sinesses that provide these goods and	servicesthe
consumers.			
A. for	B. to	C. with	
3. The goods and	services made	availableconsumers are determ	nined by supply and
demand.			AND THE TAXABLE
A. to	B. as	C. in	the supposed high
4. Supply is the nur	mber of items rea	ndy sale.	Contraction
A. to	B. for	C.in	
5. The price of an	item will go _	if the supply increases or the d	emand for that item
decreases.			
A./	B. up	C. down	
6. The price of an	item will go_	if the supply decreases or the d	emand for that item
increases.			
A. down	B. up	C./	
7. Tobacco sold for	very high prices	in England duethe high demand	d for the product.
A. to	B. for	C. in	
8. This encouraged	settlers to plant	more tobacco to take advantage	the high prices.
A. of	B. in	C. for	
	~		_

1			
9. Eventually mo	re cotton was pro	duced thanb	be sold, and the price of cotton fell
drastically.			
A. would	B. can	C. could	
10. The cost of end	ergy is a concern_	consumers.	
A. for	B. to	C. as	
	(T) or false (F)	vered in California.	selovovā "
2After	the Civil War, la	rge plantations repl	aced the small farms operated by
sharecroppers a	nd tenant.		
3 Oil	is a fossil fuel that	is renewable resource.	
			d nations for fossil fuels will continue
			demand can be satisfied by alternative
energy sources.			10.10
2901.73			
III Complete	these sentences		
7			
	he number of items		en and our and danguage.
	*	consumers want to pur	
3. If the supply of	an item is greater	than its demand by cor	nsumers, then there is aof
that item.			Control of the market of the Edition
4. When consumer	rs' demand for the	item is greater than the	e supply, this results in a
5. Scarcity causes	the price of the ite	m to	
6. With few resour	rces, the farmers d	epended onto p	ourchase the goods and services they
needed.			
	~		

参考译文

供给与需求

供给与需求

美国的经济是以为消费者提供其所需的商品和服务为基础的。那些购买并使用商品和服务的人叫做消费者。为消费者提供其商品和服务的个人和企业叫做生产者。消费者可使用的商品和服务的数量取决于供给和需求。

供给是指可出售的商品的数量。需求是指消费者愿意购买的商品的数量。如果一件商品的供给大于其需求,则会出现商品剩余。商品剩余造成其价格下降。当消费者对一件商品的需求大于其供给时,则导致商品短缺。商品短缺造成其价格上涨。

供求法则

- 1. 当供给增加或需求减少时,商品的价格将下降。
- 2. 当供给减少或需求增加时,商品的价格将上涨。

供求关系的早期例子

詹姆斯顿殖民地的经济繁荣于烟草的生产。 因为对烟草的强烈需求,该产品在英国的售价极 高。这种现象鼓舞殖民者种植更多的烟草,以从 其高价中获利。

1849 年,加利福尼亚州发现金矿。从世界各地来的淘金者涌入加州,在淘金中暴富。由于淘金者所拥有的商品和服务有限,致使食物、住房和供给物等的价格猛涨。

南北战争过后,由佃农和承租人经营的小农场替代了大规模的种植园经济。仅有的资源使得农场主依靠贷款来购买所需的商品和服务。为了偿还他们的欠款,农场主将棉花作为一种商品作物种植。最终,棉花供过于求,其价格急剧下降。

现今

消费者对能源的消耗感到担忧。矿物燃料是能源的一种。石油是一种矿物燃料,属于不可再生资源。它的供给量是有限的。由于国家建造更多的工厂、驾驶更多的汽车、购买更多的电脑,对石油与日俱增的需求导致其价格上涨。个人、企业、国家对矿物燃料的未来需求将致使其价格继续上涨,除非这种需求能够被其他能源替代品所满足。

Answer

I. 1.C 2.A 3.A 4.B 5.C 6.B 7.A 8.A 9.C 10.A II. 1.T 2.F 3.F 4.T

III. 1. Supply 2.Demand 3. surplus 4. scarcity 5.increase 6.credit



科技生活

化石燃料(Fossil Fuel)

化石燃料是指煤炭、石油、天然气等这些埋藏在地下、不能再生的燃料资源。化石燃料中按 埋藏能量的数量顺序分别有煤炭类、石油、油页岩、天然气和油砂。

煤炭是埋藏在地下的植物受地下和地热的作用,经过几千万年乃至几亿年的炭化过程,释放 出水分、二氧化碳、甲烷等气体后,含氧量减少而形成的,含炭量非常丰富。由于地质条件和进 化程度不同,含炭量不同,从而发热量也就不同。按发热量大小顺序分为无烟煤、烟煤和褐炭等。 煤炭在地球上分布较为广泛,不是集中在某一产地。

石油是水中堆积的微生物残骸,在高压的作用下形成的碳氢化合物。石油经过精制后可得到汽油、煤油、柴油和重油。石油在地球上分布不均,中东占 54%,北美占 12%,南美占 9%,几乎占了可确认埋藏量的 3/4。油页岩是水藻化后形成的,含灰分过多,多半不能自燃。油砂是含重质油 4%~20% 的砂子。油页岩和油砂在美洲大陆偏多。

Economic Systems

经济体系



每个国家必须选择一种经济体制来分配资源。一共有三种基本的经济体制,分别为传统型经济、计划经济以及市场经济。

Three Basic Economic Questions

The needs and wants of individuals, families, businesses, and nations for goods and services are unlimited¹. The resources to satisfy these needs and wants are limited; therefore every nation is faced with answering these questions.

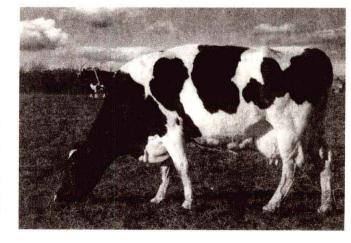
- ◆1. What goods and services will be produced?
- ◆2. Who will be responsible for producing the goods and services?
- ◆3. How will the goods and services be distributed to consumers?

There is no absolute correct way of allocating² scarce resources. A particular method might prove to be ideal in one situation but less satisfactory in other situations. Each nation must select an economic system to allocate resources. There are three basic economic systems: traditional,

command3, and market.

Methods of Allocation

In a traditional economic system, economic decisions are based on a society's customs⁴, culture, and way of life. Hunting, farming, gathering, and making things by hand



are methods used to meet the people's needs under this system. Tradition assumes that things do not change, and if it worked well in the past, it will work as well in the future.

In a command economic system, the government makes economic decisions. The government owns most of the industries. In a command economy, it is important for producers to meet the government's assigned production quotas⁵, which are the amounts of goods and services to produce. Prices are set by the government and do not change according to supply and demand.

The market economic system is the method used in the United States. In our "free market system", customers and producers decide what to produce, how much to produce, and the worth of goods and services. Entrepreneurs or business owners seeing an opportunity for profits will produce and market goods or services. If entrepreneurs do a good job in anticipating⁶ the desires of the consumers, then they will make



profits7. If the entrepreneurs do a poor job, there will be a loss in profit.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词 Work Andrews Williams

- **1.unlimited** [An'limitid] *adj.* 无限的, 无约束的
- 2.allocate [ˌæləuˈkeɪt] v. 分配,安置
- **3.command** [kəˈmɑːnd] *n.* 命令, 掌握, 司令部 *v.* 命令, 支配
- **4. custom** ['kʌstəm] *n*. 习惯,风俗,海关
- 5. quota [ˈkwəutə] n. 配额, 限额
- 6. anticipate [æn'tɪsɪpeɪt] vt. 预期, 期望, 过早使用, 占先
- 7. **profit** ['profit] n. 利润, 益处, 收益 vi. 得益, 利用 vt. 有益于, 有利于



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. be faced with 面对

e.g. The factory is faced with the threatening of going bankrupt.

这个工厂面临即将倒闭的威胁。

Jack is faced with breaking up with his girlfriend.

杰克可能要和女友分手。

2. It is important for sb. to do sth. 对某人来说做某事很重要

e.g. It is important for the teachers to vary his or her tones when giving the lectures, in order to attract students' attention well.

对老师来说,讲课时用抑扬顿挫的语气十分重要,那样可以更好地吸引学生的注意力。

It is very important for the children to form good habits.

让孩子们养成良好的习惯十分重要。

3. according to 根据

e.g. According to the regulation of this high school, students cannot wear longhair.

根据这个中学的规章规定, 学生不得留长发。

According to the lady's description, the policemen have more confidence in capturing that criminal.

根据那位女士的描述,警察更有把握抓住那个罪犯了。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

In a traditional economic system, economic decisions are based _____a society's customs, culture, and way of life.

A. on

B. a

C. in

2. Hunting, farming, gathering, and making things by hand are methods used tothe
people's needs under this system.
A. have B. meet C. met
3. Tradition assumes that things do not change, and if it worked in the past, it will work
as well in the future.
A. well B. good C. better
4. How will the goods and services be distributed consumers?
A. to B. in C. for
5. Entrepreneurs or business owners seeing an opportunityprofits will produce and
market goods or services.
A. to B. as C. for
6. Prices are set the government and do not change according to supply and demand.
A. by B. in C. with
7. A particular method might prove ideal in one situation but less satisfactory in other
situations.
A. to be B. be C./
II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 In a traditional economic system, economic decisions are based on a society's
customs, culture, and way of life.
2. If entrepreneurs do a good job in anticipating the desires of the consumers, then they
will make profits.
3 In a command economy, it is important for producers to meet the consumer's
assigned production quotas, which are the amounts of goods and services to produce.
4 There is no absolute correct way of allocating scarce resources.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. There are three basic economic systems: traditional,, and market.
2. In a command economic system, the makes economic decisions. The government
owns most of the industries.
3. Entrepreneurs or business owners(see) an opportunity for profits will produce and
market goods or services.

- 4. Tradition assumes that things do not change, and if it worked well in the past, it will work as ____ in the future.
- 5. Prices are set by the government and do not change according___supply and demand.

参考译文

经济体系

三个基本经济问题

个人、家庭、企业、国家对于商品和服务的需求是无限的,但满足这些需求的资源是有限的。 因此每个国家都面临着回答这些问题:

- ◆ 1. 将生产和提供什么样的商品和服务?
- ◆ 2. 谁来负责生产、提供这些商品和服务?
- ◆ 3. 这些商品和服务将如何分配给消费者?

没有一种完全正确的分配有限资源的方式。 某一种方式或许在一种情况下很理想,但在其他 情况下就不那么尽如人意。每个国家必须选择一 种经济体制来分配资源。一共有三种基本的经济 体制,分别为传统型经济、计划经济以及市场经 济。

分配方式

在传统的经济体系中,经济决策基于一个社会的风俗习惯、文化和生活方式。狩猎、耕作、采集、手工制造是在这种体制下满足人们需求的方式。传统观念认为事物不会改变,如果它在过去运作得很好,将来也会如此。

在计划经济体制下,国家政府制定经济决策。

大部分工业归政府所有。在计划经济下,对于生产者来说,满足政府分配的生产定额(即生产、提供的商品和服务的数量)很重要。价格由政府制定,而且不会根据供求关系的变化而改变。

美国的经济体制是市场经济体制。在我们的"自由经济体制"下,顾客和生产者决定生产什么、生产多少以及商品和服务的价格。企业家或企业所有者看准获利的机会,生产并出售商品和服务。如果企业家能够成功地预期消费者需求,那么,他们将会获利。然而,如果企业家做出错误的预测,则会亏损。

"美"事一桩

市场经济的起源

市场经济时代是以工业为主导的时代,人们已经看到了现代工业文明在改善人类生活中所取得的巨大成就,今天许多发展中国家都致力于积极推进国家的工业化。但历史似乎总在与人类为难,从采集开始直到封建农业,在各个历史阶段,"不该来的"都来了,而由农业到工业,"该来的"却迟迟不来。这是为什么呢?

一般地,工业是从农业中分离独立出来的,要揭开工业文明和市场经济的起源之谜,只能从农业经济的发展中着手探索。如前所述,还在奴隶农业时期,就已产生了最早的手工业和商品经济萌芽。到农业经济时代末期,即封建农业时期,以农具制作和农产品加工为主的手工业和商品经济,已经变得相当发达,出现了不少专门的手工业作坊和商店。为了满足不断扩大的市场需求,这些作坊和商店便不断扩大经营规模,其基本做法,一是实行雇工经营,二是不断改进工具,结果最终导致了资本主义机器大工业的形成。

这里关键在于商品经济能否发展起来。从本质上来讲,商品经济就是市场经济,而市场经济则必然导致以雇工经营和机器大生产为主要特征的资本主义经济制度。但商品经济的发展与自给自足的小农经济是对立的,它一方面刺激小农家庭增加消费,另一方面又在竞争中竭力排挤家庭手工业,减少小农家庭收入,同时还以种种胁迫利诱手段,吸引家庭劳动力外流。其结果,常常使农户家破人亡,并对封建统治形成直接威胁,因而必然引起小农的竭力抵抗和封建统治者的重重阻挠。但"青山遮不住,毕竟东流去",虽然在中国过于强大的封建势力有效地遏制了商品经济的发展,但在西欧地区商品经济却冲破了相对薄弱的封建势力的阻挡,蓬勃发展起来。从此,人类便进入了以工业为主导的市场经济历史发展新阶段。

Answer

I.1.A 2.B 3.A 4.A 5.C 6.A 7.A

II. 1.T 2.T 3.F 4.T

III. 1.command 2.government 3.seeing 4.well 5.to



Gross Domestic Product

12

O SEUZEDAN

国内生产总值



国家每年出台一份经济报告,政府计算出当年的经济增长指数,并将其与过去几年的增长相比较。政府利用这些信息来保持经济健康稳定增长。

Public vs. Private Goods and Services

Goods and services can be categorized as private or public. Private goods and services are provided by businesses and are sold to consumers. Some private goods include books, cars, clothes, computers, and games. A few businesses that provide services include hair salons, theaters, hospitals, and construction companies. The government provides public goods and services. Some public goods and services include police protection, national defense², education, and construction and repair of bridges and highways.



GNP3 vs. GDP4

Each year, the nation gets an economic report card. The government calculates⁵ the growth of the economy and compares it to the economic growth of past years. The government uses the information to keep the economy healthy and growing.

Before WWI, the United States did not have a set system for computing the economic performance of the nation. No government or private agency was responsible for collecting the data needed to calculate the value of all private and public goods and services produced in a year, or the gross national product (GNP). In the 1930s, Simon Kuznets, an American economist, developed a method for measuring the yearly economic growth of a nation. In 1971, Kuznets was awarded the Nobel Prize in Economics.

Today, many economists believe using the gross domestic product (GDP) is a better measure of economic performance than the GNP. The GNP measures the total amount of money spent on private and public goods and services within the United States.

Using GDP Figures



The Bureau⁶ of Economic Analysis is the agency in the United States Department of Commerce that is responsible for collecting the data used

to figure the GDP. The government uses the information to determine which phase of the business cycle the economy is in: expansion,

recession, or depression. Economists also use the GDP figures to compare the economic performance of the United States with the economic performance of other countries.

Three major components used in calculating the GDP are household⁷ purchases of consumer goods and services, government purchases of goods and services, and purchases of capital goods⁸ by businesses: buildings, machinery⁹ and equipment.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. categorize ['kætɪgəraɪz] v. 加以类别, 分类
- 2. defense [dɪˈfens] n. (D-)(美国)国防部, 防卫, 防卫物
- 3. GDP(Gross Domestic Product) 国内生产总值
- 4. GNP(Gross National Product) 国民生产总值
- 5. calculate [ˈkælkjuleɪt] v. 计算,考虑,计划,打算
- **6.** bureau ['bjʊərəʊ] n. 办公桌, 衣柜; <美>局, 办公署
- 7. household [ˈhaʊshəʊld] n. 一家人,家庭,家族
- 8. capital goods 资本货物(指生产商品所需的机器、厂房等)
- 9. machinery [məˈʃiːnərɪ] n. [总称] 机器,机械



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. compare...to... 把……比做, 比喻为……
 - e.g. People often compare the landscape to a beautiful drawing.

人们常常把风景比做美丽的图画。

The girl's face is always compared to a red apple in China.

在中国,人们常常把小女孩的脸比做红苹果。

- 2. be responsible for 对……负责
 - e.g. The government should be responsible for the death in the accident.

政府应该为事故中的遇难者负责。

Parents should be responsible for their children.

家长应该对孩子负责。

- 3. compare...with... 将……与……比较
 - e.g. It is not reasonable to compare the command economy with market economy.

将集中管理制经济与计划经济相比较是不合理的。

Jane likes to compare her husband with her parents.

珍妮喜欢将她的丈夫与她的父母相比较。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.	
1. Goods and services can be categorized private or public	ic.
A. as B. in C. to	
2. The government calculates the growth of the economy and c	ompares it the economic
growth of past years.	w
A. to B. with C. as	
3. No government or private agency was responsible	collecting the data needed to
calculate the value of all private and public goods and services	produced in a year.
A. to B. for C. in	

7	
	4. Before WWI, the United States did not have a set system computing the economic
	performance of the nation.
	A. to B. in C. for
	5. The GNP measures the total amount of money spent private and public goods and
	services within the United States.
	A. on B. in C. for
	6. In 1971, Kuznets wasthe Nobel Prize in Economics.
	A. awarded B. rewarded C. accepted
	7. Simon Kuznets, an American economist, developed a method for measuring the
	economic growth of a nation.
	A. year B. yearly C. yearing
	II. Write true (T) or false (F).
	1 Today, many economists believe using the gross domestic product (GDP) is a better
	measure of economic performance than the GNP.
	2 In 1975, Kuznets was awarded the Nobel Prize in Economics.
	3 Goods and services can be categorized as private or public.
	4 In the 1930s, Simon Kuznets, an American economist, developed a method for
	measuring the yearly economic growth of a nation.
	5 Three major components used in calculating the GDP are household purchases of
	consumer goods and services, government purchases of goods and services, and purchases of
	capital goods by businesses: buildings, machinery and equipment.
	III. Complete these sentences.
	1. Private goods and services are provided by businesses and are sold to
	2. The government uses the information to determine which phase of the business cycle the
	economy is in: expansion,, or depression.
	3. A few businesses that provide services include hair salons, theaters, hospitals, and
	companies.
	4. Some public goods and services police protection, national defense, education, and
	construction and repair of bridges and highways.
	5. The government uses the information to keep the economy healthy and

参考译文

国内生产总值

公共与私人的物品和服务

物品和服务可以被分为私有和公有。私人物品和服务由企业提供,并销售给消费者。私人物品包括书籍、汽车、服装、计算机和游戏。少数企业提供服务,包括发廊、影剧院、医院和建筑公司。政府提供公共物品和服务,包括治安、国防、教育、建筑以及桥梁与公路维护。

国民生产总值与国内生产总值

国家每年出台一份经济报告,政府计算出当年的经济增长指数,并将其与过去几年的增长相比较。政府利用这些信息来保持经济健康稳定增长。

第一次世界大战之前,美国没有衡量国家经济状况的系统。没有政府或私人机构负责计算并收集一年中私人与公共物品及劳务的总价值,即国民生产总值(GNP)。20世纪30年代,美国经济学家西蒙·库兹涅茨制定了一套衡量国家年经济增长的方法。1971年,库兹涅茨被授予诺贝尔经济学奖。

如今,许多经济学家认为,衡量经济状况采 用国内生产总值(GDP)比国民生产总值更好。 国民生产总值是指在美国境内,所有花费在私人 与公共物品和劳务上的款项总额。

国内生产总值数据的使用

经济分析局是隶属于美国商务部的机构,负 责收集用于计算国内生产总值的数据。政府利用 这些信息确定经济正处于商业周期的哪个阶段: 扩张、衰退还是萧条。经济学家还使用国内生产 总值数据来比较美国与其他国家的经济状况。

国内生产总值的三个主要组成部分是: 消费 者对商品及服务的购买; 政府对商品及服务的购 买; 企业对资本货物,即厂房、机器、设备的投资。

Answer

I 1.A 2.B 3.B 4.C 5.A 6.A 7.B

II 1.T 2.F 3.T 4.T 5.T

III 1.consumers 2.recession 3.construction 4.include 5.growing



"美"事一桩。

\bigcirc

西蒙·库兹涅茨(Simon Kuznets)

西蒙·库兹涅茨于 1901 年 4 月 30 日出生在俄国乌克兰哈尔科夫市的一个皮毛商人家庭,父亲亚伯拉罕·库兹涅茨和母亲波琳·弗里德曼都是犹太人。在西蒙·库兹涅茨 6 岁的时候,他的父亲移居美国,西蒙·库兹涅茨本人说,他从那时候起已经对经济学产生了浓厚的兴趣,相信经济学是研究一切社会问题的基础。

1922年,西蒙·库兹涅茨也移居到美国,进入哥伦比亚大学攻读经济学。他于 1923年获得文科学士学位,1924年获得文科硕士学位,1926年获得博士学位。1927年,西蒙·库兹涅茨进入米契尔(W.C.Mitchell)教授主持的国民经济研究局(NBER),并在那里一直工作到1961年。

西蒙·库兹涅茨在西方经济学界十分活跃,他是美国经济学会、美国统计学会、美国哲学学会、 美国科学促进协会、国际统计学会会员,美国经济史学会、英国皇家统计学会的名誉会员,瑞典皇家 科学院院士,英国科学院通讯院士,担任过美国经济学会会长和美国统计学会会长等职。他还获得普 林斯顿大学、宾夕法尼亚大学、哈佛大学、耶路撒冷希伯莱大学名誉博士学位。

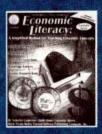
20世纪20年代以来、西蒙·库兹涅茨主要从事下述领域的研究。

- (1) 经济周期。主要著作有《零售和批发贸易的周期波动》(1962年)、《生产和价格的长期运动》(1930年)、《工业和贸易的季节性波动》(1934年)等。
- (2) 国民收入核算。主要著作有《国民收入和资本形成》(1938年)、《1919—1938年的国民收入及其构成》(1941年)、《战争时期的国民产值》(1945年)、《国民收入:发现的概述》(1946年)、《1869年以来的国民产值》(1946年)等。
- (3) 经济增长。主要著作有《1870年以来美国国民收入的长期变化》(1951年)、《各国经济增长的定量方面》(1956年)、《关于经济增长的六篇演讲》(1959年)、《现代经济增长:速率、结构和扩展》(1966年)、《各国经济增长:总产值和生产结构》(1971年)等。

西蒙·库兹涅茨在上述研究领域中都做出了杰出的贡献。他在经济周期研究中所提出的为期 20年的经济周期,被西方经济学界称为"库兹涅茨周期"。他在国民收入核算研究中提出了国民收入及其组成部分的定义和计算方法,被经济学家们誉为"美国的 GNP 之父"。他对经济增长的分析,被西方经济学界认为揭示了各发达国家一个多世纪的经济增长过程,并提出了许多深刻的见解。据说,西蒙·库兹涅茨的研究成果被引用的次数,在西方经济学界的经济学家和统计学家中无人能与之相比。正因为这些,在 1971 年诺贝尔经济学奖的评选过程中,瑞典皇家科学院从 100 多个提名所选出的 10个候选人中,最后确定了西蒙·库兹涅茨。

Income Taxes

所得税



所得税是对个人和企业每年取得的收入征收的一种税。城市、州及联邦政府征收此 税。政府已设立了代扣所得税制度,使支付和征收个人所得税更加方便。

The Invention of Income Tax

The first federal income tax was collected in 1862 to help pay the cost of the United States Civil War. Prior to the Civil War, the U.S. government did not tax income; instead, it relied on revenues² from tariffs³, or taxes on imported goods. When the war came to an end, the tax was repealed⁴. The government returned to using tariffs and taking items such as beer, tobacco, and even chewing gum⁵ to raise revenue. Congress realized these types of taxes were not reliable sources of revenue. The Sixteen A



types of taxes were not reliable sources of revenue. The Sixteen Amendment, passed in 1913, gave the government the power to levy⁶, or impose and collect, income tax.

Withholding⁷ Tax

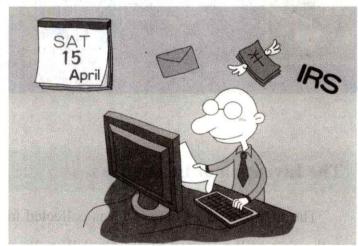
An income tax is a tax on the money an individual or business earns each year. Cities, states, and/or the federal government collect the tax. The government has set up a system of tax withholding to make the payment and collection of personal income taxes more convenient for taxpayers⁸. The employers are responsible for subtracting⁹ a certain amount of money from each employee's paycheck¹⁰ and sending it to the appropriate governments.

Pay Day

People are given a pay stub each time they are paid. The pay stub shows details such as how much money has been earned and how much tax has been deducted¹¹ from the paychecks. The pay stub is a way for the employee to have a record of earnings and deductions.

Filing Tax Returns

The deadline for paying personal income tax is April 15th of each year. Taxpayers are legally responsible from preparing and submitting a tax return to the Internal Revenue Service (IRS¹²). Many people send their tax returns through the post office. An increasing number of taxpayers use electronic filing because it is faster and more convenient. When the IRS receives the tax return, it is checked for accuracy. Tax evasion¹³, trying to avoid paying taxes, is illegal.



As a result of the withholding of taxes, some taxpayers may still owe income tax at the end of the year, while other taxpayers may be entitled¹⁴ to a tax refund. This depends on whether the employer has withheld too little or too much money from an employee's paycheck.

Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. prior** ['praɪə] *adj*. 优先的, 在前的 *n*. 预先
- 2. revenue ['revɪnju:] n. 收入, 国家的收入, 税收
- 3. tariff ['tærɪf] n. 关税, 税则
- **4. repeal** [rɪˈpiːl] ν. 废止,撤销,否定,放弃,废除 n. 废除,撤销
- 5. chewing gum □香糖
- **6. levy** ['levɪ] *n*. 征收, 征税, 征兵 *v*. 征收, 征集, 征用

- 7.withholding [wɪð'həuldɪŋ] n. 扣交
- 8.taxpayer ['tæks,peɪə] n. 纳税人
- 9.subtract [səb'trækt] v. (~ from)减去, 减
- 10.paycheck ['pert[ek] n. 付薪水的支票, 薪水
- 11. deduct [dɪ'dʌkt] v. 减除, 扣除
- 12.IRS (abbr.)Internal Revenue Service (缩写)美国国税局
- 13.evasion [ɪ'veɪʒən] n. 逃避, 借口
- **14.entitle** [ɪn'taɪtl] vt. 给……权利(或资格), 给……题名, 给……称号 v. 授权



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. prior to 在前, 居先
 - e.g. This task is prior to all others.

这项任务比其他任务都重要。

My appointment to the post was prior to yours.

我任命该职在你之前。

- 2. rely on 依靠、依赖
 - e.g. Charities rely on voluntary donations.

慈善事业依靠自愿捐款。

Nowadays we rely increasingly on computers for help.

现今我们越来越依赖电脑来帮助。

- 3. be entitled to 有……的资格、有权
 - e.g. He is entitled to a pension.

他有领退休金的资格。

All are entitled to an equal start.

所有人都享有平等起步的权利。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the c	orrect letter in tl	he blank.
1. Priorth	e Civil War, the U.S.	government did not tax income.
A. for	B. with	C. to
2. It relied	revenues from tariffs	s, or taxes on imported goods.
A. in	B. on	C. with
3. When the war	camean end, th	
A. to	B. into	C. as
4. The pay stub s	hows details such	how much money has been earned and how much tax
has been deduc	eted from the payche	cks.
A. as	B. for	C. of
5. When the IRS	receives the tax retur	n, it is checked accuracy.
A. with	B. to	C. for
6. As a result of t	he withholding of tax	xes, some taxpayers may still owe income tax at the end o
the year, while	other taxpayers may	beto a tax refund.
A. titled	B. entitled	C. assigned
7. The governme	ent has set a	system of tax withholding to make the payment and
collection of pe	ersonal income taxes	more convenient for taxpayers.
A. to	B. up	C. into
8. This depends _	whether the en	nployer has withheld too little or too much money from ar
employee's pay	ycheck.	a very rime deposite.
A. on	B. at	C. as
9. The pay stub is	a way the emp	loyee to have a record of earnings and deductions.
A. for	B. in	C. at
10. The employe	rs are responsible _	subtracting a certain amount of money from each
employee's pa	nycheck and sending	it to the appropriate governments.
A. for	B. of	C. at

II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 The Sixteen Amendment, passed in 1933, gave the government the power to levy, or
impose and collect, income tax.
2 An income tax is a tax on the money an individual or business earns every two year.
3 Tax evasion, trying to avoid paying taxes, is illegal.
4 As a result of the withholding of taxes, some taxpayers may still owe income tax at
the end of the year, while other taxpayers may be entitled to a tax refund.
5 The first federal income tax was collected in 1862 to help pay the cost of the United
States Civil War.
kata alka alka a a aza a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a
III. Complete these sentences.
1. Taxpayers are legally responsible from preparing and submitting a tax return to the Internal
Revenue (IRS).
2. Tax, trying to avoid paying taxes, is illegal.
3. The government returned to using tariffs and taking items such as beer, tobacco, and even
chewing to raise revenue.
4. The employers are responsible for subtracting a certain amount of money from each
paycheck and sending it to the appropriate governments.

所得税

所得税的发明

帮助支付美国内战的费用。在内战之前,美国政

税收收入。战争结束后, 所得税被废除了。政府 联邦最早于1862年开始征收所得税、用来: 重新征收关税、并采用了针对啤酒、烟草甚至口 香糖的税目以增加收入。国会意识到这种税收来 府没有征收所得税, 而是依靠关税或进口货物的 : 源不可靠。1913年通过了第十六修正案, 赋予政 府征税的权力,即强制征收所得税的权力。

代扣所得税

所得税是对个人和企业每年取得的收入征收的一种税。城市、州及联邦政府征收此税。政府已设立了代扣所得税制度,使支付和征收个人所得税更加方便。雇主有责任扣除每位员工工资中的一定金额,并把它送交相应的政府。

发薪日

人们每一次取得收入的同时也拿到了工资 单。工资单显示工资扣除的细节,如挣了多少钱、 多少税款已被从工资中扣除。工资单为员工提供 了记录工资收入和扣除的方式。

报税

缴纳个人所得税的截止日期是每年的 4 月 15 日。纳税人负有从编制报税表到将其提交给美国国税局 (IRS) 的法律责任。许多人通过邮局发出报税表。而越来越多纳税人采用电子方式报税,因为它更加方便快捷。美国国税局收到报税表后会检查它的准确性。偷税、逃税都是非法的。

代扣税款的结果是,有些纳税人在年底可能 还欠所得税,而其他纳税人可享受退税。这取决 于雇主从雇员的薪水中扣缴的多少。

"美"事一桩

富人是个税缴纳的主体

美国的富人是个人所得税缴纳的主体,个税收入的六成来自富有和高收入的人群。目前,美国收入最高的 1% 家庭的总收入约占美国家庭收入的 19%,但他们缴纳的个人收入所得税占美国个税总额的 39%;收入最高的 5% 家庭的总收入约占美国家庭收入的 56%,但他们缴纳的个人收入所得税占美国个税总额的 86%。

美国根据个人收入情况逐步提高税率,以减少低收入者的负担,控制高收入者的收入过快增长。 其最基本的原则是收入多缴税多,收入低的可以先缴税后退税。美国在收入方面的规定也相当复杂, 不仅考虑个人的实际收入,还十分重视家庭其他成员尤其是儿童的因素。

日本: 对个税设立了不少扣除项目

日本税制中,对于个人所得税设立了不少扣除项目。总的来说有两类:一类是对人的扣除, 一类是对事的扣除。前者的主要目的在于照顾低收入者的生活需要,它具体分为基础扣除、配偶 扣除(日本很多女性不工作)、抚养扣除、残疾扣除和老人扣除等。而对事的扣除,主要是为了应对某些突发事件,具体有社会保险费的扣除等。

这就是说,尽管很多日本人年收入相同,但如果抚养的子女人数不同,需要赡养的老人数量不同,需交纳的所得税税款也就有很大不同。

德国: 收入越多, 缴个税越高

根据德国法律, 所有在德国的常驻居民、在德国的非常驻但收入高于德国平均水平的外国居民, 都要缴纳个人所得税, 所得税因个人收入多少缴纳的比例不等, 收入越多的, 缴税比例越高。

德国对不同家庭情况采取不同的个人所得税起征点。但是有几种情形可以减少个人收入所得税,包括:已婚家庭但拥有 18 岁以下子女,或者子女在 27 岁以下但仍在上学的以及子女没有收入的;向德国机构捐助政治款项或者慈善款项;不可抗拒的特殊高额开支(如生病)等。

在德国,所有有工作的人都要参加失业、退休和医疗保险,这三大保险是由雇主和雇员平分的。 工资收入不包括雇主为雇员缴纳的三大保险金,雇员缴纳的三大保险金属于个人所得税涵盖的范围,但这部分个人所得税有一个最高限额。



Answer

I. 1.C 2.B 3.A 4.A 5.C 6.B 7.B 8.A 9.A 10.A II. 1.F 2.F 3.T 4.T 5.T

III. 1.Service 2.evasion 3.gum 4.employee's

A Humor 休闲时刻





股市幽默之扁鹊见蔡桓公

扁鹊见蔡桓公,立有间,扁鹊曰:"股市将大跌,不抛将恐回吐利润。"

桓侯回: "寡人不抛。"

扁鹊出,桓侯曰: "空头之好测顶以为神。"

居十日,扁鹊复见,曰: "股市将大跌,不抛将恐损失手续费。"桓侯不应,扁鹊出,桓侯又不悦。

Z. EXTER TO EXXIVE

居十日,扁鹊复见,曰: "股市将大跌,不抛将恐套牢。" 桓侯又不应,扁鹊出,桓侯又不悦。

居十日,扁鹊望桓侯而还走。

居五日,股市果大跌,桓侯忙拨扁鹊手机,回应曰:您呼叫的用户已关机,请稍候再拨。桓侯遂套牢。

14

Banking 银行业



银行为人们提供一个安全的地方去存放他们的资金。早期,人们将他们的硬币交给那 些将硬币储存在保险箱的货币兑换商和放债的人。随后,银行的概念从在街边长凳上进行银行业务的意大利传播到其他欧洲国家。

Early Banking

Banks provide people with a safe place to store their money. In early times, people left their coins with money – exchangers¹ and moneylenders² who stored the coins in their strongboxes³. Later, the idea of banks spread from Italy, where banking was conducted on city street benches, to other European countries. In the 1600s, English goldsmiths⁴ acted as bankers. They stored coins for people



in their vaults⁵. They goldsmiths issued receipts for the deposits⁶. The receipts or notes were more convenient than coins to carry, so people began using them as money.

United States Banking System

In 1791, the United States Congress established the First Bank of the United States. Many states and individuals also owned and operated banks. During this "Free Banking Era" each bank issued its own bank notes or paper money. Many of the banks printed too much paper money, which led to several financial panics and distrust in the banking system. In 1913, Congress established the Federal Reserve note as the only legal U.S. currency. During the Great Depression of the 1930s, many banks failed. In March of 1933, President Franklin D. Roosevelt ordered a nation-wide bank holiday, the closing of all banks. This stopped people from trying to convert

their bank deposits into gold or currency. Roosevelt believed that it would provide time for the "rehabilitation" of our banking facilities." Banks that were financially sound were allowed to reopen. The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) was created by the United States Congress to help restore faith in the banking industry by protecting a depositor's money.

Banking Today

Today, banks offer a wide variety of services for customers. Money can be deposited, or stored, at banks in a variety of accounts. Checking accounts⁸ allow depositors to withdraw⁹ their money through ATMs, debit cards, automatic payment withdrawals, and/or writing checks. Depositors must have enough money in their accounts to cover the money withdrawn. If not, the depositor is penalized¹⁰ with an overdraft¹¹ fee, or charge. Savings accounts¹² allow depositors to store their money at the bank. In return, the bank will pay the depositor interest, or a fee, for the use of their money. The bank uses



the deposited money to make loans to customers. The customers will pay the bank interest on the loan. Also, a bank makes money by charging fees for checking accounts, ATM withdraws, and overdrafts.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. exchanger [ɪks't∫eɪndʒə] n. 交换器(机,剂),换(放,散)热器
- 2. moneylender ['mʌnɪlendə(r)] n. (尤指经营典当的)放债者
- 3. strongbox ['stronboks] n. 保险箱
- 4. goldsmith [ˈgəʊldsmɪθ] n. 金匠
- **5. vault** [vo:lt] *n*. 拱顶,银行的金库
- 6. deposit [dɪ'pɒzɪt] n. 存款, 押金, 保证金 vt. 存放
- 7. rehabilitation [ˈriː(h)əˌbɪlɪˈteɪ∫ən] n. 复原

- 8. checking account 活期账户
- 9. withdraw [wið'dro:] n. 收回,撤退,退回
- 10. penalize ['pi:nəlaɪz] v. 处罚
- 11. overdraft ['əuvədra:ft] n. 透支, 透支的款项
- 12.savings account 储蓄账户



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. faith in 对……的信心
 - e.g. I've got a lot of faith in the team; I'm sure they won't fail us.

我对这个队很有信心, 我相信他们不会令我们失望的。

Thanks for having faith in me, I won't let you down!

感谢您对我的信任,我不会让您失望的!

- 2. offer sth. for sb. 为某人提供某物
 - e.g. She offers each of his patients a special recipe.

她给她的每个病人都提供一份特殊的食谱。

The school offers lunch for children

学校为孩子们提供午餐。



Exercise 牛刀小试

- I. Write the correct letter in the blank.
- 1. Banks provide people____ a safe place to store their money.
 - A. for
- B. with
- C. to

2. In the 1600s, English goldsmiths actedbankers.
A. as B. like C. with regretarion does you have a restorated and the control of t
3. Many of the banks printed too much paper money, which ledseveral financial panics and
distrust in the banking system.
A. to B. into C. as
4. Many can be deposited, or stored, at banks in a varietyaccounts.
A. to B. for C. of
5. This stopped people from trying to convert their bank depositsgold or currency.
A. with B. to C. into
Banks that were financially sound were allowedreopen.
A. for B. to C. with
7. Later, the idea of banks spread Italy, where banking was conducted on city street
benches, to other European countries.
A. to B. from C. into
8. If not, the depositor is penalized an overdraft fee, or charge.
A. with B. to C. as
II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 In 1913, Congress established the Federal Reserve note as the only legal U.S.
currency.
2 In March of 1933, President Franklin D. Roosevelt ordered a nation-wide bank
holiday, the closing of all banks.
3 In 1782, the United States Congress established the First Bank of the United States.
4 Checking accounts allow depositors to withdraw their money through ATMs, debit
cards, automatic payment withdrawals, and/or writing checks.
5 The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) was created by the United States
Congress to help restore faith in the banking industry by protecting a depositor's money.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. In the 1600s, Englishacted as bankers.
2return, the bank will pay the depositor interest, or a fee, for the use of their money.
3. Savings accounts allow depositors to store their money the bank.

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

- 4. The bank uses the deposited money to make loans ____ customers.
- 5. The customers will pay the bank interest_____the loan.

参考译文

银行业

早期银行业

银行为人们提供一个安全的地方存放他们的资金。早期,人们将他们的硬币交给那些将硬币储存在保险箱的货币兑换商和放债的人。随后,银行的概念从在街边长凳上进行银行业务的意大利传播到其他欧洲国家。在17世纪,英国的金匠扮演着银行家的角色。他们将人们的硬币储存在银行金库中。这些金匠为存款的人发放收据。而收据或纸币比硬币方便携带得多,由此人们开始拿它们当货币使用。

美国银行系统

1791 年,美国国会建立了美国第一银行。许多州和个人也拥有并操控银行。在这个"自由银行时代",每个银行发布它们自己的纸币。许多银行因印制过多的纸币导致了数起财政恐慌事件和人们对银行系统的不信任。1913 年,国会将美元定为美国唯一合法的流通货币。在 20 世纪 30 年代的大萧条时期,许多银行倒闭。1933 年 3 月,罗斯福总统命令全国的银行歇业。这一举措阻止了人们的挤兑现象。罗斯福相信"这将为我们的金融机构提供一个复原的时间"。财政上可靠的

银行允许重新开放。美国国会建立了联邦保险存款公司,通过保护存款者的钱以重建人们对银行业的信心。

当今的银行

如今,银行为顾客提供多种多样的服务。顾客可以在银行的多个账户内进行存取款。活期存款账户允许存款者通过银行自动取款机、提款卡、自动付款撤销和开支票进行取款。取款者的账户内必须有足够的钱以支付取款数额。如果没有,他们会因透支而被处以罚款。储蓄账户(定期账户)允许存款者将钱存放在银行。银行会给存款者一些利息作为使用他们的钱的回报。银行用这些存款给客户发放贷款。客户支付给银行贷款利息。银行也会通过收取活期账户、自动取款机取款的费用和透支罚款来赚钱。

Answer

I. 1.B 2.A 3.A 4.C 5.C 6.B 7.B 8.A II. 1.T 2.T 3.F 4.T 5.T III. 1.goldsmiths 2.In 3.at 4.to 5.on



"美"事一桩



ATM自动取款机

【概述】

ATM 是 Automatic Teller Machine 的缩写, 意为自动柜员机。它是一种高度精密的机电一体化设备, 是利用磁卡或智能 IC 卡储存用户信息并通过加密键盘(EPP)输入密码, 然后通过银行内部网络验证并进行各种交易的金融自助设备。ATM 的出现减轻了银行柜台人员的工作压力, 更为人类提供了安全方便的金融服务。

【ATM的发明】

1967年6月27日,英国人约翰·谢珀德 – 巴伦 (John Shepherd-Barron) 发明的第一部电脑自动提款机,安装于英国伦敦北部的柏克莱银行 Enfield 分行。

1995年, 上海金卡工程 ATM 在中国开通。

15

Credit Cards 信用卡



赊购对于顾客来说是一种便捷的购物方式。不幸的是,信用卡不是免费的金钱,它们是高利率的贷款。

Buying on Credit

Consumers can purchases goods and services without using currency. This is called buying on credit. Buying on credit is not a new idea. It dates back to ancient civilizations¹. Merchants, using a variety of methods, kept records of debts, or money owed to them, by customers. One method of early record keeping was tallying² using wooden sticks. Tallymen would notch³ one side of a stick to record the debt and the other side to record payment.

Installment4 Buying

Credit and debt played a major role in the development of the United States. The invention of the automobile transformed American buying habits. In the early 1900s, Henry Ford produced a method of buying on credit with payments over an extended period of time, became a way of life for many people. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business.

Credit Cards

The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. The use of a credit card is a loan from the issuer temporarily⁵ pays for the customer's purchases. It then sends the customer a statement for all of the charges placed

on the credit that month. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full or pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. An interest rate can vary based on a customer's credit and payment history. Businesses reserve⁶ the right to deny credit to any customer that they feel is a bad risk or might not be able to repay the debt.



Problems with Buying on Credit

Buying on credit can be a convenient way to shop for customers. Unfortunately, credit cards are not free money. They are high-interest loans. The availability⁷ of easy credit encourages people to spend more money than they can afford. High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate⁸ rapidly. Later or missed payments on a credit card are reported to credit bureaus. This will lower an individual's credit rating, which is used to determine whether or not a person is a good credit risk.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- civilization [,sɪvɪlaɪ'zeɪ∫ən;-lɪ'z-] n. 文明, 文化, 文明社会
- 2. tally ['tælɪ] vt. 点数, 计算, 记录, 加标签于
- **3. notch** [not∫] *vt.* 刻凹痕, 用刻痕计算
- 4. installment [ɪnˈstɔːlmənt] n. 分期付款
- 5. temporary ['tempərərɪ] adj. 暂时的, 临时的, 临时性的
- 6. reserve [rɪ'zə:v] vt. 储备,保存,保留,预定
- 7. availability [əˌveɪləˈbɪlɪtɪ] n. 可用性,有效性,实用性
- 8. accumulate [əˈkjuːmjuleɪt] v. 积聚, 堆积



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1.date back to 追溯到

e.g. The Chinese civilization can date back to 5000 years ago.

中国文明可以追溯到五千年前。

My family has a vase, which is said to date back to Ming Dynasty.

我家有个花瓶, 据说是从明代传下来的。

2. encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事

e.g. Teachers encourage students to read books as many as possible.

老师们鼓励学生尽量多读书。

My mother encourages us to help each other.

妈妈鼓励我们要互相帮助。

3. end up doing 结束做某事, 最终

e.g. We ended up sleeping around the floor after drinking too much last night.

我们昨晚喝了太多酒,最后都在地板上东倒西歪地睡了。

Beginning with injuring others and end up ruining oneself.

损人不利己。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I.	Write	the	correct	letter in	the	blanl	ζ.

1	Consumers	can nurchases	goods and	services without	currency
ı.	Consumers	can purchases	goods and	services without	currency

- A. to use
- B. use
- C. using
- 2. Purchasing goods and services without using currency is called buying credit.
 - A. by
- B. in
- C. on
- 3. It dates back ancient civilizations.
 - A. to

- B. on
- C for

4. Merchants, using a varietymethods, kept records of debts, or money owed to them, by customers. A. of B. for C. / 5. One method of early record keeping was tallying wooden sticks. A. to use B. use C. using 6. Credit and debt played a major role in the development the United States. A. / B. of C. on 7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers at their business. A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 4. Credit cards are not free money, but high-interest	
A. of B. for C./ 5. One method of early record keeping was tallying wooden sticks. A. to use B. use C. using 6. Credit and debt played a major role in the development the United States. A. / B. of C. on 7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers at their business. A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their businesss. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	4. Merchants, using a varietymethods, kept records of debts, or money owed to them, by
A. to use B. use C. using 6. Credit and debt played a major role in the development the United States. A. / B. of C. on 7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers at their business. A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	customers.
A. to use B. use C. using 6. Credit and debt played a major role in the development the United States. A. / B. of C. on 7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers at their business. A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	A. of B. for C. /
6. Credit and debt played a major role in the development the United States. A. / B. of C. on 7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers at their business. A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	5. One method of early record keeping was tallying wooden sticks.
A. / B. of C. on 7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers at their business. A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	A. to use B. use C. using
7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers at their business. A, shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	6. Credit and debt played a major role in the developmentthe United States.
to encourage consumers at their business. A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	A. / B. of C. on
A. shop B. shopping C. to shop 8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	7. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards
8. An interest rate can vary based a customer's credit and payment history. A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	to encourage consumers at their business.
 A. at B. in C. on II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	A. shop B. shopping C. to shop
 Write true (T) or false (F). In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	8. An interest rate can vary baseda customer's credit and payment history.
 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	A. at B. in C. on
 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with payments. High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	
payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	II. Write true (T) or false (F).
payments. 2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	1 In the early 1900s, Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with
rapidly. 3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. 4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	
 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	2 High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate
 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	rapidly.
every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. 5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States.	3 One method of early record keeping was tallying using wooden sticks.
 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting and it does not have a store of value. Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	4 Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full
 III. Complete these sentences. 1. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	every month and end up paying high amounts of interest.
 Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	5 The credit card does not function as money because it cannot as a unit of accounting
 Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	and it does not have a store of value.
 Complete these sentences. Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	
 Later, individual businesses, suchoil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	III. Complete these sentences.
 cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business. 2. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	
 The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Credit and debt a major role in the development of the United States. 	
charged interest on the remaining balance. 3. Credit and debta major role in the development of the United States.	
3. Credit and debta major role in the development of the United States.	
JET TO THE SECOND OF THE SECON	
	The second secon

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

5. Businesses reserve the right to deny credit to any customer that they feel is a bad risk or might not be able to _____the debt.

参考译文

信用卡

赊购

消费者可以不用现金购买商品和服务,叫做赊购。赊购并不是一个新想法,它可追溯到古代文明时期。商人通过多种方式记录顾客的欠款。一种早期记录的方式是通过竹签计数。商人在竹签的一端刻痕记录欠款,另一端记录已支付的款项。

分期付款

借贷在美国的发展中扮演了很重要的角色。 汽车的发明改变了美国人的购买习惯。20世纪初, 哈里·福特开创的通过赊账购买的方式在长期的 一段时期内变成了很多人的一种生活方式。随后, 私企,如石油公司和连锁饭店发放信用卡以鼓励 消费者在他们的企业内消费。

信用卡

信用卡并不能代替钱的作用,因为它既不能起到账目的作用也不能用来储藏。信用卡的作用是从发放者那里临时贷款以支付顾客的购买行为。它随后寄给顾客一张当月的所有使用信用卡的费用明细。顾客可以全额偿还信用卡发放者欠

款或只偿还一部分并被收取剩余差额的利息。企业很喜欢发放信用卡,因为很多顾客不会每月全额偿还欠款并会支付高额的利息。利率会根据一个顾客的信誉度和还款史而变化。企业有权拒绝任何存在还款风险或无力还款的顾客。

赊购带来的问题

赊购对于顾客来说是一种便捷的购物方式。 不幸的是,信用卡不是免费的金钱。它们是高利率的贷款。这种简单的、触手可及的赊购方式使 得人们的花费高出他们可承受的额度。信用卡差 额的高利率可能会造成人们的负债急速增加。过 时偿还或尚未偿还的信用卡债务会被报告给信用 资料社。这会降低个人的信用指数,信用指数被 用来决定一个人是否是一个好的信用风险者。

Answer

I. 1.C 2.C 3.A 4.A 5.C 6.B 7.C 8.C II. 1.F 2.T 3.T 4.T 5.T

III. 1.as 2.or 3.played 4.loans 5.repay



"美"事一桩



美国次贷危机

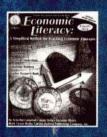
美国次贷危机(Subprime Crisis)又称次级房贷危机,也译为次债危机。它是指一场发生在美国, 因次级抵押贷款机构破产、投资基金被迫冻结、股市剧烈震荡引起的金融风暴。它致使全球主要金融 市场出现流动性不足危机。美国次贷危机从 2006 年春季开始逐步显现。2007 年 8 月开始席卷美国、 欧盟和日本等世界主要金融市场。次贷危机目前已经成为国际上的一个热点问题。

在美国,贷款是非常普遍的。当地人很少全款买房,通常都是长期贷款。可是在那里失业和再就业是很常见的现象。这些收入并不稳定甚至根本没有收入的人,买房因为信用等级达不到标准,就被定义为次级信用贷款者,简称次级贷款者。

由于之前的房价很高,银行认为尽管贷款给了次级信用借款人,如借款人无法偿还贷款,则可以利用抵押的房屋来还,拍卖或者出售后收回银行贷款。但由于房价突然走低,借款人无力偿还时,银行把房屋出售,但却发现得到的资金不能弥补当时的贷款加利息,甚至都无法弥补贷款额本身,这样银行就会在这些贷款上出现亏损。

一两个借款人出现这样的问题还好,但由于分期付款的利息上升,加上这些借款人本身就是次级信用贷款者,这样就导致了大量的无法还贷的借款人。正如上面所说,银行收回房屋,却卖不到高价,大面积亏损,引发了次贷危机。

16 Stock Market 股市



股市是可以购买、出售、交易股票或公司股份所有权的场所。公司通过销售股份筹集 资金,以进行产品推广和研发。股票购买者是在对公司进行投资。他们成为股东,即以追求利益为目的的公司所有者之一。

Stock Market Terminology¹

The stock market is a place where people can buy, sell, or trade stocks, or shares of ownership in companies. A company sells shares to raise money for expansion or research for product development. People who buy stocks are investing² in the company. They become stockholders³, or part owners in the company with the hope of making money. If the company grows and makes a profit, the investor can make money. The company may share the profits with the stockholder by



paying a dividend⁴. The stockholder can also make money or a capital gain by selling the stock when the price per share increases. Stockholders often pay stockbrokers⁵ to manage their stock portfolio⁶, which are all the stocks an investor owns. Investing in the stock market is risky, and profits are not guaranteed⁷.

History of the U.S. Stock Market

The United States emerged from the American Revolution as a nation heavily in debt. The founding fathers wanted to pay off war debt while becoming an economic world power. Alexander Hamilton, the first U.S. Secretary of the Treasury, came up with the idea of starting a stock exchange modeled⁸ after the one in Great Britain. In New York, selling stocks become so successful that the stock market trading moved from a street corner into a building on Wall Street.

The stock market prospered in the U.S. until the early 1900s. Individuals hoping to become millionaires were borrowing large sums from banks to buy stocks investing in stocks. By the fall of 1929, heavy speculation, which is buying, selling, and trading of stocks on credit, had driven stock prices to record highs. When stock prices started to fall, it caused a nationwide panic. Investors rushing to sell found no one wanting to buy. In late October, the stock market crashed. The crash was a major cause of the Great Depression. The Securities Act of 1933 established the Securities and Exchange Commission¹⁰ to protect investors and the nation against another stock market crash. Today, the stock market is monitored and regulated at both the state and federal levels.

Tracking Stocks

Stocks are traded on a variety of stock exchanges throughout the world. One of the largest and most familiar exchanges is the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE). One of

the most popular ways to keep track of the up and down movement of the entire stock market is to check the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DOW¹¹). Two animals are used to describe the



ups and downs of the stock market. A bull market is when stock market prices continue to rise over an extended time period. The bear market is the opposite¹² of a bull market.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. terminology [.tə:mɪˈnɒlədʒɪ] n. 术语学
- 2. invest [ɪn'vest] v. 投(资), 购买(有用之物), 授予, 投资
- 3. stockholder ['stokhəuldə(r)] n. 股东
- **4. dividend** ['dɪvɪdend] n. 被除数,股息,红利,额外津贴,奖金,年息
- 5. stockbroker ['stokbrəukə(r)] n. 股票经纪人
- 6. portfolio [po:tˈfəʊlɪəʊ] n. 股份单,证券投资组合
- 7. guarantee ['gærənˈtiː] vt. 保证,担保
- 8. model ['modl] vt. 模仿, 模拟

- 9. security [sɪˈkjʊərɪtɪ] n. 安全
- **10. commission** [kəˈmɪ[ən] *n*. 委任,委托,代办(权),代理(权)
- 11. Dow Jones Industrial Average (DOW) 道琼斯工业平均指数
- 12. opposite ['opəzɪt] n. 相反的事物



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. pay off 还清(债务等)付清,报复,赢利

e.g. It took them three years to pay off the debt.

他们三年才还清欠债。

Most of the profits are swallowed up by the mortgage. Once we've got that paid off I'll feel we've turned the corner.

房产抵押耗尽了大部分利润,一旦抵押款偿清,我们就渡过了难关。

- 2. come up with (针对问题、挑战等)提出,想出;提供
 - e.g. No one have come up with a convincing explanation of why dinosaurs die out.

尚未有人能对恐龙的灭绝做出一个令人信服的解释。

The scientists are beating their brains trying to come up with a solution to the problem. 科学家正绞尽脑汁,力求找到解决这个问题的办法。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the	correct letter in	the blank.	har the state of the state of
1. A company se	lls shares to raise me	oney for expansion or research	product development.
A.at	B.to	C. for	one in the property of
2. People who be	uy stocks are investi	ngthe company.	
A. for	B. in	C. to	is a first of tobard.

3. They become stockl	holders, or part ov	vners in the company	the hope of making money.
A. of	B. with	C. for	
4. The company may s	share the profits _	the stockholder by pay	ving a dividend.
A. with	B. in	C. at	
5. Investing in the stoo	k market is	, and profits are not guara	nteed.
A. risked	B. risking	C. risky	
6. The founding father	s wanted to pay _	war debt while becomin	g an economic world power.
A. in	B. off	C. of	
7. Alexander Hamilto	on, the first U.S.	Secretary of the Treasury,	came upthe idea of
starting a stock exch	nange modeled aft	er the one in Great Britain.	
A. with	B. to	C. at	
8. Individuals hoping	to become million	onaires were borrowing larg	ge sums banks to buy
stocks.			如果概
A. at	B. to	C. from	
9. The crash was a ma	jor cause	the Great Depression.	
A. for	B. of	C. in	
10. The Securities Act	of 1933 establish	hed the Securities and Exch	ange Commission to protect
		her stock market crash.	
A. against	B. from	C. for	
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).		
		ty of stock exchanges throu	ghout the world. One of the
		s the New York Stock Excha	
			or trade stocks, or shares of
ownership in compa			R. S. L.
		market prices continue to	rise over an extended time
period.	1,5 9911		
•	et is when stock	market prices continue to	rise over an extended time
period.	ict is when steek	market prices continue to	nise over an extended time
	es Act of 1923 e	stablished the Securities an	d Exchange Commission to
		st another stock market cras	
protect investors and	a die nadon again	st another stock market class	
	~ ~		

III. Complete these sentences.

- One of the most popular ways to keep track of the up and down movement of the entire stock market is to check the Dow Jones Industrial _____(DOW).
- 2. If the company grows and makes a , the investor can make money.
- 3. Two animals are used to describe the ups and of the stock market.
- 4. By the fall of 1929, heavy speculation, which is buying, selling, and trading of stocks on , had driven stock prices to record highs.
- 5. Investors _____(rush) to sell found no one wanting to buy.

参考译文

股市

股市术语

股市是可以购买、出售、交易股票或公司股份所有权的场所。公司通过销售股份筹集资金,以进行产品推广和研发。股票购买者是在对公司进行投资。他们成为股东,即以追求利益为目的的公司所有者之一。如果公司成长并获利,投资者也能得到利益。公司支付股息之后可与股东共同分享利润。股价上涨时,股东也可以通过出售股票获得收入,即资本收益。股东往往聘请股票经纪人对持有的所有股票进行投资组合管理。股市投资存在风险,并不保证赢利。

美国股市发展史

独立战争之后的美国呈现出一副负债累累的 面貌。建国者们希望国家在支付战争债务的同时 成为世界经济强国。美国第一任财长亚历山大·汉 密尔顿提出效仿英国成立证券交易所的想法。在 纽约,股票买卖非常成功,股市交易从街角走入 华尔街大厦。

股市在美国的繁荣持续到 20 世纪初。梦想成为百万富翁的人们从银行借贷大量资金购买股票。到了 1929 年秋天,大规模投机,即通过借贷的股票买卖交易,推动股票价格再创新高。之后股票价格的下降引起了全国性的恐慌。投资者急于出售股票但发觉没有买家。在 10 月后期,股市崩盘。这是诱发大萧条的主要原因。1933 年出台的《证券法》规定成立证券交易委员会,以保护投资者和国家免于另一轮股市灾难。如今,州和联邦同时对股市进行监测和管理。

追踪股票

世界各地的许多证券交易所都进行股票交易。纽约证券交易所(NYSE)是规模最大、名

声最盛的交易所之一。跟踪整个股市涨跌走势 最普遍的方法之一是使用道琼斯工业平均指数 (DOW)。有两种动物被用来描述股票市场的起 伏波动。牛市是指股票价格在很长的一段时间内 持续上涨。而熊市则相反。



Answer

I.1.C 2.B 3.B 4.A 5.C 6.B 7.A 8.C 9.B 10.A II. 1.T 2.T 3.T 4.F 5.F

III. 1. Average 2. profit 3.downs 4.credit 5.rushing



"美"事一桩



股票市场的起源

股票至今已有将近 400 年的历史。股票是社会化大生产的产物。随着人类社会进入了社会化大生产时期,企业经营规模扩大与资本需求不足的矛盾日益突出,于是产生了以股份公司形态出现的、股东共同出资经营的企业组织; 股份公司的变化和发展产生了股票形态的融资活动; 股票融资的发展产生了股票交易的需求; 股票的交易需求促成了股票市场的形成和发展; 而股票市场的发展最终又促进了股票融资活动和股份公司的完善和发展。所以,股份公司、股票融资和股票市场的相互联系和相互作用,推动着股份公司、股票融资和股票市场的共同发展。

股票最早出现于资本主义国家。在 17 世纪初,随着资本主义大工业的发展,企业生产经营规模不断扩大,由此而产生的资本短缺、资本不足便成为制约资本主义企业经营和发展的重要因素之一。为了筹集更多的资本,于是出现了股份公司形态的由股东共同出资经营的企业组织,进而又将筹集资本的范围扩展至社会,产生了以股票这种表示投资者投资入股,并按出资额的大小享受一定的权益和承担一定的责任的有价凭证,并向社会公开发行,以吸收和集中分散在社会上的资金。

股票交易市场远溯到 1602 年,荷兰人开始在阿姆斯特河桥上买卖荷属东印度公司股票,这是全世界第一支公开交易的股票,而阿姆斯特河大桥则是世界最早的股票交易所。在那里挤满了等着与股票经纪人交易的投资人,甚至惊动警察进场维持秩序。荷兰的投资人在第一个股票交易所投资了上百万荷币,只为了求得拥有这家公司的股票,以彰显身份的尊贵。

现在大部分国家都有一个或多个股票交易所。纽约证券交易所是美国最大、最老、最有人气的股票市场。纽约证交所有 200 多年的历史,大部分历史悠久的财富 500 强都会在纽约证券交易所挂牌。在纽约证交所,经纪人依客户所开的条件在场内公开寻找买卖主,本身不左右价格。

Part 3 American History 美国历史

第一批到达北美洲的欧洲人是冰岛海盗,大约在公元 1000 年,首领名叫雷夫·埃里克逊。 在加拿大纽芬兰省发现了他们的足迹,但海盗们没有能建立起永久居住地,很快就与新大陆脱 离了联系。

500 年后,对亚洲香料、纺织品和染料的需求促使欧洲的航海家们梦想找到一条缩短东西方距离的航线。1492 年,意大利航海家克里斯托弗·哥伦布代表西班牙王室,从欧洲向西航行,在加勒比海巴哈马群岛中的一座岛屿靠了岸。西班牙探险家们用了 40 年的时间在中部和南部美洲建立起一个庞大的帝国。到 16、17 世纪,北欧人开始在现在的美国东北部海岸定居,这里很快成为英国的地盘,在 18 世纪发生革命战争前一直是英国的殖民地。

18 世纪中叶,英国在美洲的殖民地与英国之间已有了裂痕。殖民地的扩张使他们产生某种自觉,自觉到英国的迫害,而萌生独立的念头。1781 年,美军赢得了独立战争决定性的胜利,进而成立了全国性政府。

19世纪初期,美国开始工业化,而内战之后,则步入成熟阶段。在从内战至第一次世界大战的不到 50 年时间内,它从一个农村化的共和国变成了城市化的国家。然而好景不长,1929 年美国经济进入不景气时代。上百万的工人失业,大批的农民被迫放弃耕地,工厂商店关门,银行倒闭——一片萧条。1932 年,罗斯福当选总统,他主张政府应拿出行动来结束经济大恐慌,新政府虽然解决了许多的困难,但美国的经济一直到第二次世界大战才苏醒起来。第二次世界大战之后,美苏两国关系日趋恶化,分别在军事、政治、经济、宣传各方面加紧准备,一如战时,这种状态被称为"冷战"。

Benjamin Franklin 本杰明·富兰克林





本杰明·富兰克林 (1706-1790) 是他所在年代的风云人物之一。他与同期的乔治·华盛顿、托马斯·杰弗逊和亚历山大·汉密尔顿一起,成为美国革命与后革命时期的领军人物

Benjamin Franklin was one of the great men of his age.

Along with George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, and

Alexander Hamilton, he was among the leading Americans of the

Revolutionary and post-Revolutionary period.

Franklin was born in Boston, the 15th child in a brood¹ of 17. His father was a chandler²; his mother was a strict and authoritarian³ woman. Although Franklin attended school for a time—long enough to prove himself an undistinguished scholar—he withdrew and went to work for his father.

Continuing to be an omnivorous4 reader, he consumed books

on algebra⁵, geometry, navigation, grammar, logic, science, French, German, Italian, Spanish, and Latin.

At 12 years of age, he was apprenticed⁶ to his brother James, a printer. Aspiring⁷ to write, he produced a series of articles under the pen name of "Mrs. Silence Dogood." James, not knowing that Benjamin had written them, printed the articles in his paper. Eventually, after his identity was discovered, Franklin fled to Philadelphia. Now 17, he worked as a printer and managed to buy a press in 1730. His newspaper, the *Pennsylvania Gazette*⁸, quickly became a success due to its style and wit⁹.

His eventual marriage to Deborah Reed proved to be a happy one only to a degree. Deborah

was inclined to nag10, simply because she did not understand the extent of Franklin's ambition.

In 1733, he began the publication of *Poor Richard's Almanack*¹¹, an annual accomplishment that kept him busy for years. Meanwhile, his fertile¹² mind and unending energy led him into other projects. He was Philadelphia's postmaster for a time and improved on the mail service. He established special messenger services between certain cities. He started the world's first subscription¹³ library. He organized a fire department. He reformed the city police and commenced a program to pave and light the streets of the town. He led the fight to establish a hospital in Philadelphia, and he helped to found the American Philosophical Society.

Later, he studied the relationship of electricity to lightning and conducted his famous kite experiments to prove his point. In between times, he studied the flow of ocean currents¹⁴, invented a new kind of stove, and brought bifocal¹⁵ glasses to the Colonies.

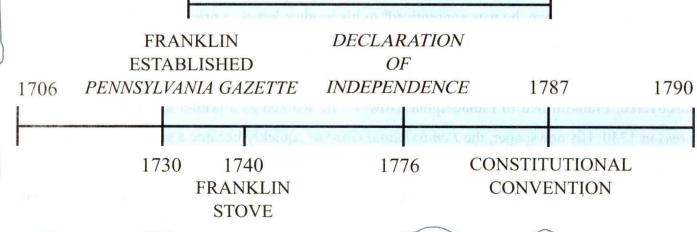
The list of accomplishments in Franklin's life had only begun. He persuaded the British government to drop the Stamp Act. When the Colonies chose the path of independence, he helped write the *Declaration of Independence*. When the Colonies needed military help, he went to France and persuaded that government to send troops and supplies.

In the Constitutional Convention of 1787, he was the sobering¹⁶ voice of compromise. His last public act was to sign an appeal to Congress calling for the abolition¹⁷ of slavery in America.

He died in April 1790. Approximately 20,000 people attended ceremonies in Philadelphia in his honor. He was buried in Christ Church Cemetery. In anticipation of this event, Franklin had even written his own headstone¹⁸ inscription.

Benjamin Franklin

TIME LINE FRANKLIN'S SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH





Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. brood [bru:d] n. (动物中鸟或家禽的)一窝, (同种或同类的)一伙
- 2. chandler ['tʃa:ndlə] n. 杂货零售商, 蜡烛制造者
- 3. authoritarian [ɔ:ˌθɒrɪˈteərɪən] adj. 独裁的, 独裁主义的
- 4. omnivorous [pm'nɪvərəs] adj. 杂食的, 什么都吃的, 什么都读的, 随手乱拿的
- 5. algebra [ˈældʒɪbrə] n. 代数学
- 6. apprentice [ə'prentɪs] v. 当学徒
- 7. aspire [əsˈpaɪə] vi. 热望, 立志
- 8. gazette [gə'zet] n. 报纸, 政府的公报, (大学的)学报 ν . 在公报上刊登, 在公报上刊载
- 9. wit [wɪt] n. 智力, 才智, 智慧
- **10.** nag[næg] n. 老马, 驽马, 劣等竞赛马, (作坐骑的)矮小马, 唠叨 v. 不断地唠叨, 恼人
- 11. almanack ['o:lmənæk; 'olmə,næk; 'omənɪk] n. <古>=almanac历书、年鉴
- 12. fertile ['fa:taɪl; 'fa:tɪl] adj. 肥沃的, 富饶的, 能繁殖的
- 13. subscription [sʌbˈskrɪpʃən] n. 捐献, 订金, 订阅, 签署, 同意, [医]下标处方
- 14. current [ˈkʌrənt] n. 涌流, 趋势, 电流, 水流, 气流
- 15. bifocal [baɪˈfəukəl] adj. 双焦点的
- 16. sobering ['səubərɪŋ] adj. 使清醒的, 使冷静的
- **17. abolition** [æbəˈlɪ∫ən] *n*. 废除, 废除奴隶制度
- 18. headstone ['hedstəun] n. 墓石、基石



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. due to 由干、因为
 - e.g. Most of the problems were due to human error.

多数问题都是人为错误造成的。

The project had to be abandoned due to a lack of government funding.

这项工程由于缺乏政府的资助而不得不放弃。

2. incline to 倾向于, 有……的趋势

e.g. His obvious sincerity inclined me to trust him.

他满脸的真诚, 让我愿意相信他。

I incline to view that we should take no action at this stage.

我倾向于认为我们在这个阶段不应采取行动。

They will be more inclined to listen if you don't shout.

你要是不大声嚷叫, 他们会更愿意倾听。

3. lead to/into 导致, 造成 (后果); 使得出 (观点)

e.g. Eating too much sugar can lead to health problems.

食用过多的糖会引起健康问题。

This has led scientists to speculate on the existence of other galaxies.

这就使得科学家推测还有其他星系存在。

4. call for (去) 接; 需要; (公开) 要求

e.g. I'll call for you at 7 o'clock.

我7点钟去接你。

The situation calls for prompt action.

目前的形势需要立即采取行动。

They called for the immediate release of the hostages.

他们要求立即释放人质。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I	Write	the correct l	otter in t	he blank
	- VVIIII		C-11C-1 515 I	BRE- BREZERRE

1. Franklin's mother was a strict and _____ woman.

A. auditoria

B. authorized

C. authoritarian

2. Franklin prove himself a(n) ______ scholar at school.

A. distinguished

B. undistinguished

C. distinct

	~	
3 to write, he produced a serie	es of articles.	
A. Aspiring B. Inspiring	C. respiring	
4. Poor Richard's Almanack was an annual		that kept Franklin busy for
years.		
A. accomplishment B. amusement	C. achievement	
5. Franklin started the world's first	library.	
A. prescription B. subscription	C. inscription	
6. Franklin helped to found the American	So	ociety.
A. Psychological B. Physical	C. Philosophica	I will good to the con-
II. Write true (T) or false (F).		
1Franklin produced a series of articles un	nder the pen name	of "Mrs. Silence Dogood."
2James, knowing that Benjamin had write	tten them, printed t	he articles in his paper.
3The Pennsylvania Gazette, quickly beca	ame a success due t	to its style and wit.
4In 1733, he began the publication of <i>Po</i>	or Richard's Almai	nack.
5Franklin was Philadelphia's postmaster	for a time and imp	roved on the mail service.
6Approximately 2,000 people attended f	uneral ceremonies	in Philadelphia in the honor
of Franklin.		
III. Complete the sentences with the w	vords given.	
compromise commence appre	entice extent appea	al withdraw
1. Franklin from school and		
2. At 12 years of age, he was		
3. Deborah did not understand the		
4. He reformed the city police and		
streets of the town.	- P	ogram to pave and right the
5. Franklin last public act was to sign an	to Congre	ss calling for the abolition of
slavery in America.		O 200 mm 1 mm 2 mm 2 mm 2 mm 2 mm 2 mm 2
6. In the Constitutional Convention of 1	787. Franklin w	as the sobering voice of
		and account voice of

参考译文

本杰明・富兰克林

本杰明·富兰克林是他所在年代的风云人物之一。他与同期的乔治·华盛顿、托马斯·杰弗逊和亚历山大·汉密尔顿一起,成为美国革命与后革命时期的领军人物。

富兰克林出生在波士顿,他是家里十七个孩子中的第十五个。他的父亲是一个杂货店老板,母亲则是一位严厉而又独裁的女性。尽管富兰克林接受过一段时期的学校教育——时间之长足以证明他是一个表现平平的学者——他放弃了学业去为父亲帮忙。但他仍然继续着自己读书的习惯,博览群书,代数、几何、航海、语法、逻辑、自然科学、法文、德文、意大利文、西班牙文、拉丁文都是他涉猎的范围。

12 岁时,他给他的哥哥詹姆斯——一个印刷商——当学徒。出于对写作的渴望,他以"Silence Dogood 夫人"的笔名创作了一系列作品。詹姆斯并不知道那些作品是他的弟弟本杰明创作的,将它们印刷在了自己的报纸上。最后,富兰克林的身份被发现,逃往费城。1730年,当时17岁的富兰克林成为一个印刷商并设法买下了一家出版社。他的报纸《宾夕法尼亚报》由于独特的风格和敏锐的视角很快便大获成功。

他最终与黛博拉·里德结婚,而实践证明这段婚姻并不十分美满。黛博拉并不知道富兰克林的鸿鹄之志,她总是喜欢唠叨个不停。

1733 年,他开始出版《可怜的理查德历书》, 这项每年都有的工作使他很多年都处在一种忙碌 状态。同时,他富有创造力的大脑和永不枯竭的精力促使他涉足了一些其他的领域。他曾担任过宾夕法尼亚州的邮政局长,积极改善信件邮递服务; 在一些城市之间建立起特殊邮递服务机制; 创建了世界上第一所订阅图书馆; 组织消防队; 改革城市的警察制度; 实施城镇铺路的工程并修筑路灯; 在费城领导了开设医院的斗争; 并帮助成立了"美国哲学协会"。

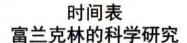
之后,他研究了电与闪电的关系并通过著名的风筝试验证明了自己的观点。其间,他还研究了洋流的湾流图,发明了一种新式烤炉,并将双光眼镜引入到北美殖民地。

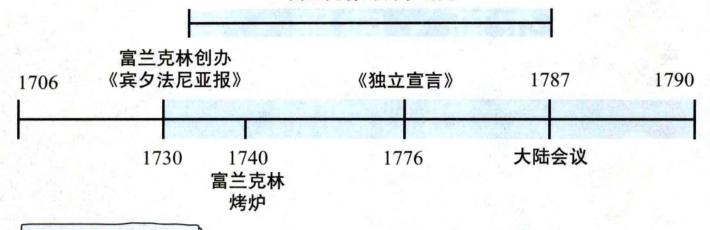
这一系列的成功只是富兰克林一生成就的开始。他成功游说英国政府停止了印花税法案。当北美殖民地选择走上独立的道路时,他帮助撰写了《独立宣言》。当北美殖民地需要武装力量支持时,他出使法国,成功劝说法国政府派发了军队和补给。

在 1787 年美国宪法法案的制定工作中,他 使争论激烈的双方达成了协议。他最后一个公义 举动是签署了向国会提出的废除北美奴隶制的请 愿书。

1790 年富兰克林溘然长逝。大约 20,000 人参加了在费城为他举办的葬礼。他被葬于 Christ Church 墓地。他早已预料到这一天,去世前就已写好了自己的墓志铭。

Benjamin Franklin





名人轶事

1732年,本杰明·富兰克林开始出版历书。 他佯称这些历书都是一位名叫理查德·桑德斯的 人撰写的。富兰克林称他为"可怜的理查德", 他的历书不久就闻名全殖民地。这些小册子被译 成了几乎所有已知的文字。

《可怜的理查德历书》为什么如此受欢迎呢? 首先,富兰克林是个科学家,他所刊登的关于恒 星和行星的每件事都是正确的。除可靠的信息外, 还印有很多诗和简短的名言。可怜的理查德认为 人们应当努力工作,节省金钱,生活简朴,真诚 老实。他用各种方法使全殖民地的人民认识到: 建设一个繁荣昌盛国家的方法就是他们无论做什 么工作总要诚诚恳恳、贯彻始终。

这里引用《可怜的理查德历书》里的几则劝告:

与智者交谈、一言已足。

用旧了的钥匙总是明亮的。

如果你热爱生命,就不要浪费时间,因为生命是由时间组成的。

一个"今天"等干两个"明天"。

保护你的店铺、你的店铺就会保护你。

如果你想有一个忠实的仆人并且是你喜欢的 人, 那你就给自己当仆人吧。

小漏洞可以沉大船。

你要想知道金钱的价值,就去试试向别人借 点钱。

经验包含珍贵的学问,但蠢人却不能从中获 得教益。

早睡早起使人健康、富裕和聪明。

Answer

I. 1. C 2.B 3.A 4.A 5. B 6. C

II. 1.T 2. F 3.T 4. T 5.T 6.F

III. 1. withdrew 2. apprenticed 3.extent 4. commenced 5. appeal 6. compromise

18

Charles William Eliot

查尔斯•威廉•爱略特



查尔斯・威廉・爱略特(1834-1926)是美国历史上杰出的教育家之一。他的一生似乎都与哈佛大学紧密相联。他在1849年,也就是当他只有15岁的时候被哈佛大学录取了。在那里他受到了本杰明・皮尔斯、路易斯・阿格塞、阿萨・格雷和约西亚・帕森斯・库克等人的熏陶。

Charles William Eliot was one of the greatest educational leaders in the history of the United States. He was born to New England Yankee¹ stock² in 1834. His entire life seems to have been associated with Harvard College. Charles's father was the treasurer³ and historian of the college, and Charles himself was enrolled in the institution in 1849—at only fifteen years of age. There he came under the influence of such men as Benjamin Pierce, Louis Agassiz, Asa Gray, and Josiah Parsons Cooke.

Four years after his graduation, Charles became a professor at Harvard. As one of the youngest professors in the history of the institution, Eliot introduced laboratory exercise, elective instruction and written examinations.



In 1865, and later in 1867, Eliot made first-hand observations of education in Europe. Shortly after his return, he wrote an interesting article on his experiences for *Atlantic Monthly*, and this, plus his growing reputation, caused his appointment to the presidency⁴ of Harvard.

The changes brought about by Eliot at Harvard were not only revolutionary at that college but were powerful in terms of having a national impact. During his lifetime, the school quadrupled⁵ in student size, and it added graduate schools in arts and sciences, applied science and business, and courses in such wide and diverse areas as architecture and forestry.

Eliot also brought women members into the faculty and recruited leading professors in

SABBATICALS

EXCHANGE PROFESSORSHIPS

VARIED CURRICULA

foreign countries for the Harvard staff. He developed "exchange professorships," introduced the notion⁶ of sabbatical⁷ leaves, and developed a liberal system of retirement allowances⁸. All three of these latter reforms were so far ahead of the situation in the rest of the nation that some colleges still did not have them as late as 1930.

Eliot also introduced the notion of allowing students to carry more courses during a term and pushed a plan to allow the medical college to grant the M.D. after three years of study.

Eliot's writings were so voluminous⁹ that one wonders how he did it all. He wrote enough to fill at least eight volumes, as well as the *Report of the President of Harvard College*. These last are still considered prime¹⁰ reading in the study of higher education.

Besides all of this, Eliot edited the *Harvard Classics*. He had once made a remark that a man could obtain a liberal education by reading only fifteen minutes a day. Being challenged on that statement, he undertook to prepare a range of reading that could prove his point. So widely was Eliot respected in the United States that the *Harvard Classics* became best-selling publications, to be found in the homes of many American families.

It could be said that higher education in America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the dominance¹¹ of imposing¹² and effective college presidents. Among these would be such men as Angell, McCosh, Hopkins, and Eliot himself. They were important, not only because of the changes they made in American colleges and universities, but for a number of other reasons as well. They created a distinctive¹³ system of higher education that was truly American. Most of all, however, by their imposing intellectuality¹⁴, they developed among their students a profound respect for the world of learning.

Charles William Eliot

TIME LINE

PROFESSOR AT PRESIDENCY OF HARVARD COLLEGE 1834 1849 1865 1870 1926 STUDIED GRADUATE SCHOOLS

REPORTS ON

EUROPEAN EDUCATION

AT

HARVARD



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. Yankee ['jæŋkɪ] n. [美] 美国人, 美国佬
- **2. stock** [**stok**] *n*. 树干, 库存, 股票, 股份, 托盘, 祖先, 血统, 原料
- **3.** treasurer ['treʒərə] n. 掌管钱款的人,司库,出纳员; 财务主任; [美]财政部出纳局长
- **4.** presidency ['prezidensi] *n*. 总统[主席、议长、校长]的职位[任期]
- 5. quadruple ['kwodrupl] adj. 四倍的,四重的,[乐]每小节四拍的
- **6. notion** ['nəʊ[ən] n. 概念, 观念, 想法, 意见, 打算, 主张
- 7. sabbatical [səˈbætɪk(ə)l] adj. 安息日的, 似安息日的, 周期性休息的
- 8. allowance [əˈlauəns] n. 津贴、补助、宽容、允许
- 9. voluminous [vəˈljuːmɪnəs, vəˈluː-] adj. 卷数多的, 著书多的, 容积大的, 长篇的
- **10.** prime [praim] adj. 主要的,最初的,有青春活力的,最好的,第一流的
- 11. dominance ['dominans] n. 优势, 统治
- 12. imposing [ɪmˈpəuziŋ] adj. 使人难忘的, 壮丽的
- 13. distinctive [dɪs'tɪŋktɪv] adj. 与众不同的, 有特色的
- 14. intellectuality [,ɪntɪ'lektju'ælɪtɪ] n. 智力, 知性



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. associate with 联想; 联系; 交往; (尤指)混在一起; 表明支持, 表示同意 e.g. He is closely associated in the public mind with horror movies.

在公众的心目中、他总是和恐怖电影紧密联系在一起。

I don't like you associating with those people.

我不喜欢你和那些人混在一起。

May I associate myself with the Prime Minister's remarks?

我可以公开表示赞成首相的话吗?



2. enroll (in/on) 加入, 注册, 登记

e.g. You need to enroll before the end of August.

你必须在8月底前注册。

The center will soon be ready to enroll candidates for the new programme.

中心将很快为新课程的招生做好准备。

to enrol on a course / to enroll in a course

注册学习一门课程

3. ahead of 在……前面; 早于; 领先

e.g. Ahead of us lay ten days of intensive training.

我们还要进行10天的强化训练。

I finished several days ahead of the deadline.

我是在最后期限的前几天完成的。

His ideas were way ahead of his time.

他的思想远远超越了他那个时代。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I Write the corre	ect letter in the bla	nk	
1. Write the corre	ct letter in the bia	III.	
1. Charles' entire life	seems to have been	with Harvard College.	depair of
A. assessed	B. assassinated	C. associated	
2. In 1865, and later	in 1867, Eliot made fi	rst-hand of ea	ducation in
Europe.			
A. observations	B. conservations	C. preservations	
3. The changes brough	nt about by Eliot at Har	vard were powerful	having
a national impact.			
A. in turn of	B. in terms of	C. in favor of	

4. Eliot introduced to	he notion of	1 annua
	ne netten er	ieaves.
A. substantial	B. statistical	C. sabbatical
5. College president	ts created a	system of higher education that was truly
American.		
A. distinctive	B. distractive	C. distinction
II. Write true (T	T) or false (F).	
1Charles him	self was enrolled in Har	vard institution in 1849—at only sixteen years of age.
2Charles can	ne under the influence o	of such men as Benjamin Pierce, Louis Agassiz, Asa
Gray, and Josiah I	Parsons Cooke at Harvar	rd.
3Eliot introd	uced laboratory exercise	e, elective instruction and written examinations.
4Eliot also i	ntroduced the notion of	f allowing students to carry more courses during a
term.		The state of the s
study of higher ed	lucation.	ecame best-selling publications, to be found in the
homes of many A	merican families.	p noncentration of the name in
homes of many A		ne right form of the words given.
III. Complete th	e sentences with th	ne right form of the words given.
III. Complete th	owance quadruple volu	ne right form of the words given. uminous dominance recruit stock
III. Complete the all	ne sentences with the lowance quadruple volu- ew England Yankee	ne right form of the words given. uminous dominance recruit stock in 1834.
all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life	lowance quadruple volumew England Yankeeetime, the school	in 1834. in student size.
111. Complete the all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also	lowance quadruple volumew England Yankee	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff.
all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also 4. Charles developed	lowance quadruple volume England Yankee leading per dia liberal system of retires.	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff. rement
all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also 4. Charles developed 5. Eliot's writings we	lowance quadruple volume England Yankee leading per dia liberal system of retirers so	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff. rement that one wonders how he did it all.
111. Complete the all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also 4. Charles developed 5. Eliot's writings we	lowance quadruple volume England Yankee etime, the school leading per dia liberal system of retirements of the second end of	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff. rement that one wonders how he did it all. America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the
1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also 4. Charles developed 5. Eliot's writings we	lowance quadruple volume England Yankee leading per dia liberal system of retirements of imposing and england e	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff. rement that one wonders how he did it all. America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the effective college presidents.
all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also 4. Charles developed 5. Eliot's writings with 6. It could be said to	lowance quadruple volume England Yankee leading per dia liberal system of retire ere so that higher education in of imposing and england a liberal system of the england in of imposing and england englan	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff. rement that one wonders how he did it all. America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the effective college presidents.
all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also 4. Charles developed 5. Eliot's writings with 6. It could be said to	lowance quadruple volume England Yankee leading per dia liberal system of retire ere so that higher education in of imposing and england a liberal system of the england in of imposing and england englan	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff. rement that one wonders how he did it all. America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the effective college presidents.
all 1. He was born to No. 2. During Eliot's life 3. Eliot also 4. Charles developed 5. Eliot's writings with 6. It could be said to	lowance quadruple volume England Yankee etime, the school leading per dia liberal system of retire ere so that higher education in of imposing and england en	in 1834. in student size. professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff. rement that one wonders how he did it all. America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the effective college presidents.

参考译文

查尔斯・威廉・爱略特

查尔斯·威廉·爱略特是美国历史上杰出的教育家之一。1834年他出生于美国东北部新英格兰地区的一个本土家庭。他的一生似乎都与哈佛大学紧密相联。查尔斯的父亲是哈佛大学的一名财务主任和历史学家,而查尔斯也在1849年也就是当他只有15岁的时候被哈佛大学录取了。在那里他受到了本杰明·皮尔斯、路易斯·阿格塞、阿萨·格雷和约西亚·帕森斯·库克等人的熏陶。

毕业四年后,查尔斯成为哈佛大学的一名教授。作为学院历史上最年轻的教授之一,他引进了实验室练习、选修课指导和笔试考试。

在 1865 年和之后的 1867 年,爱略特亲自对欧洲的教育进行了研究。回国之后他很快依据亲身经历在《大西洋月刊》上发表了一篇颇有趣味的文章。正是这篇文章,再加上他渐渐显赫的名望、促使他升任了哈佛大学的校长。

爱略特给哈佛带来的变化不仅对学院来说是 革命性的,在全国范围内更是产生了深远影响。在 他的有生之年,学校的生源扩大了四倍,在人文学 科、自然科学学科、应用科学学科和商学学科增设 了研究生学院,同时还在建筑学和林业学这样广泛 且多样化的学科增设了相关的课程。

爱略特同时还招收女教师,并从国外聘请一 流教授加入到哈佛的教师队伍。他开创了"教授 交流"项目,引进了公休假概念,创建了新式退

查尔斯·威廉·爱略特是美国历史上杰出的 : 休养老体制。后来的这三项改革在全国范围内都 : 家之一。1834 年他出生于美国东北部新英 : 是相当领先的,一些大学直到1930年才开始引入。

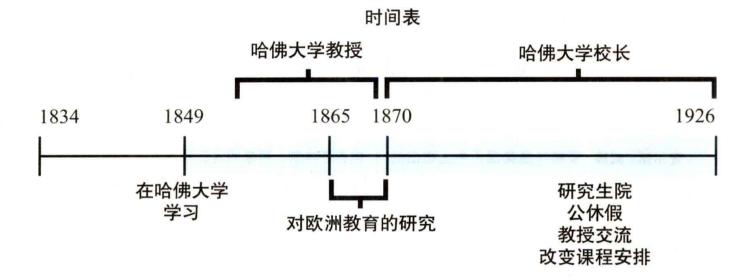
爱略特也引进了允许学生在一学期中可以选 修更多课程的概念,并推行了允许医学学院学生 在三年学习后即可被授予医学博士的计划。

爱略特的写作量之多使人不禁要想知道他是 怎样做到这一切的。他的著作量多达八卷,包括 《哈佛大学校长报告》。这些著作在后来仍被认为 是高等教育里的主打阅读书籍。

除此之外,爱略特还编辑了《哈佛经典》。 他曾经这样评价到:如果一个人一天可以阅读 十五分钟,那么他将拥有渊博的学识。正是由于 上述陈述的挑战,他开始着手准备一系列的阅读 书籍以便证明自己的观点。爱略特在美国备受推 崇,以致于《哈佛经典》成为最畅销的出版物, 几乎是家家必备。

可以这样认为,从 1850 年到 1930 年,美国高 等教育的最大亮点就是那些处于主导地位的雄才大 略的大学校长们。在这些校长中,有安吉尔,有麦 库什,有霍普金斯,还有爱略特自己。他们起到了 中流砥柱的作用,不仅是因为他们给美国的学院或 者大学带来的变化,更有另外一系列的原因。他们 创建了真正有美国特色的高等教育体制。然而,最 重要的是,他们凭借着自己超凡的知性魅力,使学 生们发自内心地对学术界充满崇敬。

Charles William Eliot



'美"事一桩

哈佛大学 (Harvard University) ——全球最多亿万富豪就读的大学

她与世界上第一条地下铁、第一条电话线生活在同一个城市! 美国独立战争以来几乎所有的革命 先驱都出自于她的门下,她被誉为美国政府的思想库。先后诞生了 8 位美国总统,40 位诺贝尔奖得 主和 30 位普利策奖得主。她的一举一动决定着美国的社会发展和经济的走向,商学院案例教学盛名 远播。她培养了微软、IBM 一个个商业奇迹的缔造者。

哈佛大学前身为剑桥学院。1636 年 10 月 28 日, 马萨诸塞海湾殖民地议会通过决议,决定筹建一所像 英国剑桥大学那样的高等学府,拨款 400 万英镑。由于创始人中不少人出身于英国剑桥大学,他们就把哈佛大学所在的新镇命名为剑桥。1638 年正式开学,第一届学生共9 名。1638 年 9 月 14 日,牧师兼伊曼纽尔学院院长的 J. 哈佛病逝,他把一半积蓄 720 英镑和400 余册图书捐赠给这所学校。1639 年 3 月 13 日,马



萨诸塞海湾殖民地议会通过决议,把这所学校命名为哈佛学院。

如今,哈佛大学已发展为拥有十个研究生院、四十多个系科、一百多个专业的大型院校。正式注

册有 18,000 名学位候选人,以研究生为主,也包括本科生。另外还有 13,000 名非学位学生在其扩展 学院学习一门或更多的课程。在哈佛大学工作的教职员工超过 14,000 人,包括超过 2,000 名的教授 和讲师。还有 7,000 多教员在所属的各个医院工作。多年来,哈佛大学除了培养大量的美国学生外,还接纳来自世界各国的大批留学生和访问学者。

历史上,哈佛大学的毕业生中共有8位曾当选为美国总统。他们是约翰·亚当斯(美国第二任总统)、约翰·昆西·亚当斯、拉瑟福德·海斯、西奥多·罗斯福、富兰克林·罗斯福(连任四届)、约翰·肯尼迪、乔治·沃克·布什和巴拉克·候赛因·奥巴马。哈佛大学的教授团中总共产生了34名诺贝尔奖得主。

哈佛早期的校训是"察验真理"(Veritas [1643])、"荣耀归于基督"(In Christ Gloriam [1650]),以及"为基督·为教会"(Christo et Ecclesiae [1692])。哈佛早期印章展示三本翻开的书本,两本面向上,一本面向下,象征着理性 (reason) 与启示 (revelation) 之间的动力关系。哈佛的一份最早期文献——1642年的学院法例——如此写道:"让每一位学生都认真考虑以认识神并耶稣基督为永生之源,作为他人生与学习的主要目标,因而以基督作为一切正统知识和学习的唯一基础。所有人既看见主赐下智慧,便当在隐密处认真借着祷告寻求他的智慧。"



Answer

I. 1. C 2.A 3.B 4. C 5. A

II. 1.F 2.T 3.T 4.T 5.T 6.F

III. 1. stock 2. quadrupled 3. recruited 4. allowances 5.voluminous 6. dominance



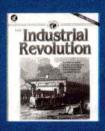
A Humor 休闲时刻



A bit of advice for those about to retire. If you are only 65, never move to a retirement community. Everybody else is in their 70s, 80s, or 90s. So when something has to be moved, lifted or loaded, they yell, "Get the kid."

这里想对将要退休者提一点忠告。如果你只有 65 岁的话,千万别进退休社区。因为那里人人都七八十岁或者八九十岁了。每当要搬东西、抬东西或者装东西时,他们就叫喊,"让小的干吧"。

Developments in Agriculture 农业发展



与交通和通讯的发展同时发生的是农业方面的新进步。这些发展包括钢制犁耙、收割机、机械化割捆机和蒸汽式打谷机。其中前两项——也就是钢制犁耙和收割机——对美国的农业产生了极其深远的影响。它们帮助大平原实现了规模化耕作。

Coinciding¹ with progress in transportation and communication were new advances in agriculture. Among these were the steel plow², the reaper³, the mechanical binder⁴, and the steam-driven thresher⁵. The first two—the steel plow and the reaper—had the most profound effect on agriculture in America in that they helped open the Great Plains to extensive farming.

Pioneers who began pushing into California and Oregon in the 1840s bypassed⁶ the Great Plains as uninhabitable⁷. Rain was sparse⁸, and the soil seemed unsuitable for farming. The "Great American Desert," as they called it, was best left to the Indians.

Then John Deere invented his steel plow in 1837. Previously, farmers had gotten along quite well with plows made of wood and iron. But wooden and iron plows could not handle the matted⁹ roots characteristic of the prairie¹⁰ grass of the Plains, nor the sticky soil surrounding these roots

that clung to the blades and made plowing difficult. Deere's steel plow easily cut through the difficult prairie grass and its gluelike soil. Suddenly, cultivation

of the Plains seemed a possibility.

But even with the steel plow, farming vast areas of the Plains was not practical because of a shortage of manpower. Using cradles¹¹ and sickles¹², many workers were needed to harvest grain and similar crops, and there just were not that many settlers living in the region. McCormick's reaper

solved that problem. His reaping machine could do the work of many men, and it could do it a lot faster. Together with the steel plow and advent¹³ of windmills for irrigation¹⁴, the Great American Desert was transformed into America's breadbasket.

Shortly after the reaper was invented, the mechanical binder appeared. The binder tied grain into sheaves¹⁵ as fast as it was cut. Using the new device, two men and a team of horses could harvest and bind several acres¹⁶ of wheat a day. Next came the steam-driven thresher, which separated grain from the stalks¹⁷ of wheat. And eventually, Deere introduced the first steel plow to be pulled by horses. One invention followed another, and the impact of the Industrial Revolution on agriculture was apparent everywhere.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. coincide [ˌkəuɪn'saɪd] vi. 一致,符合
- 2. plow [plau] n. 犁 v. 耕, 犁, 耕地, 费力穿过, 艰苦前进, 在考试中被淘汰
- 3. reaper ['ri:pə] n. 收割者, 收割机
- **4. binder** ['baɪndə] n. 装订工,包扎者,包扎工具,[法律]临时契约
- **5. thresher** ['θre∫ θ(r)] *n.* 打谷者, 打谷机, [鱼]长尾鲨
- 6. bypass ['baɪpɑ:s; (US) 'baɪpæs] n. 旁路 vt. 设旁路, 迂回
- 7. uninhabitable [ˈʌnɪnˈhæbɪtəbl] adj. 不适于人居住的
- 8. sparse [spa:s] adj. 稀少的,稀疏的
- **9. matted** ['mætɪd] *adj*. 有席子的, 缠结的, 纠缠的, 无光泽的, 暗淡的
- 10. prairie ['preərɪ] n. 大草原,牧场, <美方>林间小空地
- **11. cradle** ['kreɪdl] n. 摇篮,发源地,支船架 vt. 将……放在摇篮内
- 12. sickle ['sɪkl] n. 镰刀
- **13. advent** ['ædvənt] *n*. (尤指不寻常的人或事)出现,到来
- **14. irrigation** [ˌɪrɪˈɡeɪʃən] n. 灌溉,冲洗
- **15. sheave** [∫i:v] n. 滑车轮, 槽轮 vt. 捆
- **16. acre** ['eɪkə] n. 英亩, 地产, 大片田地
- 17. stalk [sto:k] n. 茎,柄,梗,秆



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. coincide (with) 同时发生; 相同; 极为相似; 相接; 相交
 - e.g. The strike was timed to coincide with the party conference.

那次罢工选择在召开政党大会的同一时间举行。

The present position of the house coincides with that of an earlier dwelling.

这栋房子现在的位置恰与原住宅的位置一样。

The interests of employers and employees do not always coincide.

雇主和雇员的利益并不总是一致的。

- 2. transform (from) (into) 使改变形态; 使改变外观(或性质); 使改观
 - e.g. The photochemical reactions transform the light into electrical impulses.

光化学反应使光变为电脉冲。

A new colour scheme will transform your bedroom.

新的色彩调配将使你的卧室焕然一新。

It was an event that would transform my life.

那是能够彻底改变我的一生的一件事。

- 3. separate (from) (使)分离,分散;隔开;阻隔;分居;区分;区别
 - e.g. Those suffering from infectious diseases were separated from the other patients.

传染病患者同其他病人隔离开来。

He separated from his wife after 20 years of marriage.

他和妻子在结婚20年后分居了。

The judges found it impossible to separate the two contestants.

裁判无法把两位参赛者分出高下。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I	Write	the corr	rect letter	in the	blank
	VV I III.	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2			REPORTED BY

1. _____ with progress in transportation and communication were new advances in agriculture.

A. Cosigning

B. Considering

C. Coinciding

2 Th 1 - 1	the manner had the me	ost of	act on agriculture i	n America
		eff	ect on agriculture i	II Allierica.
	B. propound			
3. Pioneers who bega	n pushing into Califo	ornia and Oregon in the	e 1840s	the
Great Plains.				
A. bystander	B. bypassed	C. byway		
4. Next came the steam	m-driven thresher, wh	ich separated grain from	n the	of wheat.
A. swanks	B. stalks	C. swales		
5. The impact of the In	ndustrial Revolution	on agriculture was	every	where.
A. apparent	B. appetent	C. appetite		
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).			
1The steel ploy	w and the reaper help	ed open the Great Plain	s to extensive farm	ing.
2John Deere in	vented his steel plow	in 1937.		
3. With the stee	l plow, farming vast a	reas of the Plains seem	ed practical.	
4. McCormick's				
5. Using the mo	echanical binder, two	men and a team of h	orses could harves	and bind
several acres of who				
6. The "Great American Desert" was best left to the Indians.				
III Complete the	sentences with t	he correct form of	the words give	n
ma	at irrigation gluelike	advent sheave spars	e transfor	
1. Rain was	and the soil seems	ed unsuitable for farmin	g in the 1840s.	
2. Wooden and iron p	plows could not han	dle the	_ roots characteri	stic of the
prairie grass of the				
3. Deere's steel plow	easily cut through the	difficult prairie grass a	nd its	soil.
4. Together with the st	teel plow and	of windmills fo	or	_ the Great
American Desert wa	as	into America's bread	lbasket.	
5. The binder tied grai	n into	as fast as it was cut.	•	
	The state of the s			

参考译文

农业发展

与交通和通讯的发展同时发生的是农业方面的新进步。这些发展包括钢制犁耙、收割机、机械化割捆机和蒸汽式打谷机。其中前两项——也就是钢制犁耙和收割机——对美国的农业产生了极其深远的影响。它们帮助大平原实现了规模化耕作。

在19世纪40年代,前往加利弗尼亚州和俄勒冈州的第一批淘金者认为大平原不适宜生存绕道而行。那里降雨量稀少,土地贫瘠,不适于耕作。这片被称做"美国大沙漠"的平原便拱手留给了印第安人。

1837年,约翰·迪尔发明了钢制犁耙。以前,农民们一直使用的是木制和铁制犁耙,而且用得还不错。但是木制和铁制的犁具处理不了缠结在一起的草根和附着在上面的黏性土壤,这种特殊的草在大平原的牧场上随处可见,根部的黏土总是粘在铁锹上,使耕种变得十分困难。迪尔的钢制犁耙能轻易地切断这种牧草并且甩掉像胶水似

的土壤。瞬间, 耕种大平原变为一个可能。

但即使是使用了钢制犁耙,由于劳动力缺乏,耕作广袤的大平原仍然是不切实际的想法。由于只能使用支架和镰刀,收割麦子和谷物就需要大量的工人,而该地区的定居人数远未能满足此需求。麦考马克的收割机恰巧可以解决这个问题。他的收割机不仅在工作量上可以等同于众多工人,而且速度还更快。再加上钢制犁耙和风车灌溉技术的使用,昔日的"美国大沙漠"变成了富饶的产粮大地。

就在收割机发明不久,机械化割捆机也诞生了。割捆机将收割后的粮食立刻捆扎成束。借助于这些新设备,两个人和几匹马便可在一天之内完成数公顷小麦的收割和捆扎。接下来发明的蒸汽式打谷机可将小麦的麦杆和谷粒分离开来。最后,迪尔又采用马匹来牵拉钢制犁耙。一个接一个发明的诞生,使得工业革命带给农业的影响无所不在。

Answer

I. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. T

III. 1. sparse 2. matted 3. gluelike 4. advent; irrigation; transformed 5. Sheaves



"美"事一桩

0

美国大平原

美国大平原是世界上著名的平原之一,它实际上一直延伸到加拿大。在美国境内,它的基本界限是:西起落基山山麓的海拔 1800 米等高线一带;东到密西西比河谷地,大约沿着等高线为海拔 300 米的位置;北到加拿大的萨斯喀彻温河 (Saskatchewan);南到得克萨斯州的南部。美国学术界对于大平原的东部界线有不同的认识,一般认为在西经 97°附近。



大约在公元 1600 年前大平原一直人口稀少。19 世纪中期,白人逐渐西迁,一步步地向美国中西部侵入,并且在大平原上定居下来。他们赶走了印第安人,以家养的牛群代替几乎被他们灭绝的野牛群,后来又发展了牧羊业,逐渐形成以畜牧业为主的经济。直到19世纪的80年代,这时恰逢一个较长的湿润周期(约14年),而且当时小麦的价格又很高,于是许多天然牧场被开垦为农田。但好景不长,又出现了干旱年、这些

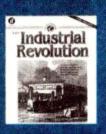
低于正常年份的降水使农作物受到严重威胁,使得这些农场主无利可图,于是只有废弃撩荒。等到又一个湿润期到来时,又照旧循环一次。这样做导致了严重的恶性循环。因为草原被毁后,牧草极难恢复,致使土地裸露,抗蚀力减弱,一遇到严重干旱及大风时,灾难就不可避免了。最典型的是 20 世纪 30 年代的 "黑风暴",这是上述恶性循环的集中表现。人类在 1934 年 5 月 12 日就遭遇了一次历史上罕见的严重惩罚。在这一天,从加拿大的西段边境与美国西部草原相邻接的几个州,刮起了一股尘雾,以每小时 60—100 英里的速度向东推进。这股尘雾携带了美国西部干旱地区的三亿吨肥沃表土,跨越全美国 2/3 的领土,一直到达美国的东海岸,最后倾泻于离岸几百英里的大西洋中。这就是历史上著名的"黑风暴"。震惊全球的长 1500 英里、南北宽约 900 英里、厚度达 2 英里的巨大尘土带,使得当时美国的冬小麦严重减产,约比过去 10 年的平均产量减少了102 亿斤。

从那以后,大平原的农业引起了各方关注,采取了一些措施,逐步使得该区的农业生产稳定下来。这些措施主要可归纳为: 1.扩大灌溉; 2.机械化; 3.增施化肥; 4.利用杀虫剂及除草剂; 5.加强保护土壤。

由于各种措施,现在的大平原成为美国的"面包篮"(Bread Basket)。

20

Slums¹ and Sweatshops² 贫民窟和血汗工厂



第二次工业革命期间,美国工厂、矿井和条件极差的血汗工厂中大批辛苦劳作的工人 均是来自北欧和东欧的移民。资本家们之所以选择雇佣这些工人,是因为支付这些工人的 工资可以更低,而这些移民愿意干任何只要可以找得到的工作。

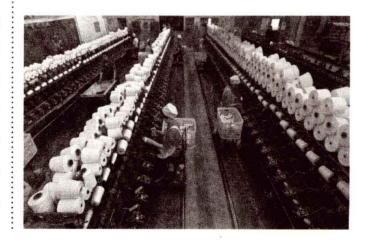
A large majority of the workers who toiled³ in American's factories, mines, and "sweatshops" during the Second Industrial Revolution were immigrants from southern and eastern Europe. Owners preferred to hire them because they would work for lower wages, and the immigrants themselves were eager to take any job they could find. And because their pay was so low, these newcomers to America were forced to live under the worst possible conditions.

Some men came to America alone, hoping to make their "fortunes" and return to their families in the old country. They were called "birds of passage". As such, they paid as little for lodging as possible. Some shared one room in an apartment with as many as 12 other men. They spread mattresses⁴ on the floor in rows, there being nothing else in the room except a stove. Sometimes two men shared the

same mattress. The man who worked during the day used the mattress at night, while the night worker claimed it during the day.

Sweatshops were makeshift⁵ factories set up in sheds⁶ or tenement⁷ houses when factories could not house all of the workers. Some sweatshops were of the home variety, where entire families labored from dawn to well into the night trying to earn enough money for life's barest⁸ necessities.

Most sweatshops were concentrated in the garment⁹ industry. "Sweaters" bought or rented



sewing machines and set up shop in tenements. Often, an entire family, its boarders, and nearby neighbors toiled away in several dark rooms for as long as 16 hours a day. Their job was to sew together pre-cut pieces of garment: fronts, backs, sleeves, cuffs¹⁰, and so on. Even the youngest of children helped by performing such simple tasks as threading needles and snipping¹¹ off loose threads. A hard-working child could add from 50c to \$1.50 a week to a family's income.

Other families worked equally long hours

in their pathetic¹² apartments making such things as cigars and artificial flowers. What they earned for their efforts barely put food on the table. Making artificial flowers, a family had to make 144 flowers to earn 10c! As in the garment sweatshops, children worked alongside their parents. There was little time for play or school.

In time, laws were passed making sweatshops illegal. But for many years, they were as much a part of the manufacturing scene as factories.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. slum [slʌm] n. 贫民窟 vi. 访问贫民区
- **2.** sweatshop ['swet \int op] n. 血汗工厂(指工人劳动条件差、工作时间长、工资低的工场或工厂)
- **3. toil** [toɪl] *n*. 辛苦,苦工,网,罗网,圈套 *vi*. 苦干,跋涉,费力地做
- **4. mattress** ['mætrɪs] *n*. 床垫,空气垫,(用以护堤的)沉床
- 5. makeshift ['meɪk∫ɪft] n. 将就,凑合,权宜之计 adj. 权宜之计的,凑合的
- **6. shed** [∫ed] *n*.棚, 小屋, 工棚, 货棚
- 7. tenement ['tenɪmənt] n. 房屋, 住户, 租房子
- 8. bare [beə] adj. 赤裸的, 无遮蔽的, 空的
- 9. garment ['ga:mənt] n. 衣服,外衣,外表
- 10. $cuff[k\Lambda f] n$. 袖口, 裤子翻边, 护腕, 手铐 vt. 给……上袖口, 给……上手铐
- 11. snip [snɪp] v. 剪断
- 12. pathetic [pəˈθetɪk] adj. 可怜的, 悲惨的



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. force into/to 强迫, 迫使 (某人做某事)
 - e.g. The President was forced into resigning.

总统被迫辞职。

I was forced to take a taxi because the last bus had left.

最后一班公共汽车已经开走,所以我只好坐了一辆出租汽车。

- 2. set sb./sth. up 资助; 诬陷; 建起; 安装好; 引发
 - e.g. He denied the charges, saying the police had set him up.

他否认那些指控, 说警察冤枉他了。

The police set up roadblocks on routes out of the city.

警察在城外的路上设置了路障。

The slump on Wall Street set up a chain reaction in stock markets around the world.

华尔街股价暴跌在全球股票市场上引起了连锁反应。

- 3. toil away/up (长时间)苦干,辛勤劳作;艰难缓慢地移动;跋涉
 - e.g. I've been toiling away all day trying to get this work finished.

我整天苦干,想把这项工作赶完。

They toiled up the hill in the blazing sun.

他们冒着炎炎烈日艰难地一步一步爬上山冈。

- 4. snip off (快速) 剪去, 剪掉
 - e.g. snip off the ends 剪去末端

snip the corner off the carton of milk

剪掉盛牛奶的纸盒的边角



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the co	rrect letter in the bla	nk.	
1. The man who	worked during the day us	sed the mattress at night, while the nigh	t worker
	it during the day.		
A. slept	B. claimed	C. reclaimed	
2. Some sweatshop	ps were the home va	riety.	
A. of	B. in	C. on	
3. "Sweaters" bou	ght or rented sewing machi	nes and set up shop in	
A. tenants	B. tournaments	C. tenements	
4. An entire family	y, its boarders, and nearby	neighbors away in several da	rk rooms
for as long as 16	hours a day.		
A. foiled	B. toiled	C. soiled	
5. The youngest o	f children helped by perfo	rming such simple tasks as threading nee	edles and
	off loose threads.		
A. snipping	B. skipping	C. slipping	
II. Write true	(T) or false (F).		
1A large	majority of the workers	who toiled in American's factories, min	nes, and
"sweatshops" d	uring the Second Industria	al Revolution were immigrants from sout	hern and
eastern Asian.			
2Some men	n came to America alone, l	hoping to make their "fortunes" and return	n to their
families in the o	ld country.		
3Some share	red one apartment with as r	nany as 12 other men.	
4A hard-wo	orking child could add fron	n 50c to \$1.50 a day to a family's income.	
5Making an	rtificial flowers, a family ha	ad to make 14 flowers to earn 10c.	
6As in the	garment sweatshops, childr	en worked alongside their parents. There w	was little
time for play or	school.		

III. Complete the sentences with the words given.

makeshift cuff pa	thetic garment bare lodge
1. The immigrant workers paid as little for	as possible.
2. Sweatshops were	_ factories set up in sheds or tenement houses.
3. Entire families labored from dawn to wel	l into the night trying to earn enough money for life's
necessities.	
4. Most sweatshops were concentrated in the	ne industry.
5. The workers job was to sew together	pre-cut pieces of garment: fronts, backs, sleeves,
, and so on.	
6. Other families worked equally long hou	rs in their apartments making such
things as cigars and artificial flowers.	

参考译文

贫民窟和血汗工厂

第二次工业革命期间,美国工厂、矿井和条件极差的血汗工厂中大批辛苦劳作的工人均是来自北欧和东欧的移民。资本家们之所以选择雇佣这些工人,是因为支付这些工人的工资可以更低,而这些移民愿意干任何只要可以找得到的工作。也正是因为这样极低的工资,这些初到美国的人们被迫生活在最艰苦的环境中。

一些人是单独来到美国的,希冀可以在此淘金之后荣归故里。这些人被称为"候鸟"。正是如此,这些人会用尽可能少的钱来解决住的问题。有时甚至13个人共租公寓里的一间房子。他们将床垫一排排铺在地板上,房间里除了一只火炉外一无所有。有时两人挤在同一张床垫上。上白班的人晚上睡床垫,白天则给上夜班的人使用。

当工厂的厂房不能容纳所有工人进行劳作时,便在棚屋房和廉价公寓里建立起血汗工厂,作为权宜之计。一些血汗工厂是家庭式的,在那里所有的家庭成员从清晨工作到深夜,仅仅是为了挣取能够维持基本生活的工资。

大多数的血汗工厂都集中在服装业。工厂主 们购买或者租赁缝纫机器,在廉价公寓里开设工 厂。通常,一家人——血汗工厂的寄膳者们,还 有附近的邻居都会在几个黑屋子里每天苦干 16 个小时之久。他们的工作就是将事先裁好的服装 各部分缝在一起:正面、背面、袖子和袖口等等。 甚至最小的孩子都来帮些简单的忙,比如穿针引 线和剪去线头。一个努力工作的孩子可以在一个 星期内为家庭增加 50 美分到 1.5 美元的收入。

辛苦地工作同样长的时间,制作一些香烟或者是 假花。这样辛苦挣来的钱仅仅能保证他们桌上的 食物。就拿制作假花来说,一家人得做 144 朵才 : 不合法的。但在很多年中,它们在大规模制造业 能挣到 10 美分! 而在服装业的血汗工厂里, 孩 : 的舞台上扮演了同正规工厂一样重要的角色。

其他的家庭也在他们各自条件恶劣的小屋里 : 子们就在父母旁边工作, 很少有时间玩耍或者去 上学。

终干,相应的法律诵讨了,规定血汗工厂是

"美"事一桩

美国移民文化

20 世纪初、美国是个拥有 7600 万人口的国家。到了 1990 年、美国的人口增长到 2.49 亿、其 中 43% 的人口增长来自 20 世纪的移民以及他们的子孙。专家们估计,按目前移民的速度和人口 增长的规律、到 2050 年、美国人口将增加到 3.97 亿。届时美国国内就不存在以欧洲白人为多数 的族裔。有专家认为,到那时,如果把融入主流社会并同美国人通婚的拉丁美洲后裔和亚裔仍然 看做少数族裔, 那么美国白人将是少数族裔。

在尼克松政府中担任国家安全事务助理和国务卿的基辛格博士、在卡特政府中担任国家安全 事务助理的布热津斯基及美国现任国务卿奥尔布莱特女士,都是在东欧国家出生然后到美国定居 的外来移民。尤其是基辛格和布热津斯基两人,他们讲话都带有浓重的外国口音。按照美国法律 规定、他们可以在政府中担任要职、也可以竞选国会议员、但是没有资格当总统。

已故总统肯尼迪的家庭是爱尔兰移民的后裔,他的曾祖父是北爱尔兰威克斯福德人,因为大 饥荒于 1848 年移民美国波士顿。波士顿所在的马萨诸塞州现在是肯尼迪家庭的政治势力范围,其 他政客长期以来很难击败肯尼迪家族候选人。美国前参谋长联席会议主席沙利卡什维利将军也是 东欧移民。海湾战争期间担任美国参谋长联席会议主席的黑人将军鲍维尔,是牙买加移民的后裔。

翻开美国人的家谱史,除了未被赶光杀绝的土生土长的印第安人外,其他美国人都是外国移 民或移民的后裔。美国是个人口不断增长的移民国家,移民美国的有合法的,也有非法的。许多 现在是正宗美国人的老祖宗、当初可能也是非法进入美国的。

从 1820 年到 1993 年, 共有 5400 万移民因为贫困、饥荒、政治和宗教迫害来到美国。他们来自爱尔兰、北欧、波兰、捷克、斯洛伐克、匈牙利、意大利和亚洲各国。1980 年至 1990 年, 美国接纳了 950 万合法与非法移民,可以说是 20 世纪的大移民。

在今天的美国,人们可能没有注意到这样一个事实:在纽约的意大利后裔和移民的人数,竟然是威尼斯商城人口的两倍;美国的犹太人超过以色列的人口;汽车城底特律的波兰人多于波兰大多数城市的人口;爱尔兰后裔和移民的数量超过爱尔兰的总人口。今天的美国事实上是个多民族的大熔炉,是个松散的联合国,是一个没有任何民族人口占多数的国家。

Answer

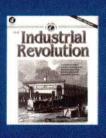
I. 1. B 2. A 3.C 4. B 5. A

II. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T

III. 1. lodging 2. makeshift 3. barest 4. garment5. cuffs 6. pathetic



The Age of Steam 蒸汽时代



詹姆斯・瓦特并不是第一个为蒸汽和它的潜力着迷的人。亚历山大的西罗、一位古代 科学家、其实已在公元一到三世纪制作了一台小型叶轮机。

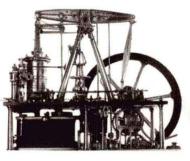
James Watt was not the first person to be fascinated by steam and its potential¹ power. Hero of Alexandria, an ancient scientist, actually built a small steam turbine between the first and third centuries. But since the Egyptians and Greeks had an abundance² of slaves to do their work for them, they simply laughed at the thought of any kind of labor-saving device.

Interest in steam power continued through the Middle Ages and into the modern era. The first practical use of steam power came about in 1712 when an Englishman named Thomas Newcomen built a steam engine to pump water from coal mines. Although the engine worked, it was far from cost-effective. Its huge appetite³ for fuel used almost as much coal as it helped to mine.

Young James Watt was working as an instrument maker at the University of Glasgow in 1763, when one of Newcomen's machines was brought to him for repair. Watt studied

the engine and hit upon a way to improve it. To Newcomen's machine, which worked by forcing steam into a hollow cylinder⁴ to move a piston⁵ back and forth, Watt added a condenser⁶ with an air pump. He also added a steam jacket to maintain the necessary heat in the cylinder. The result was that Watt's engine shot steam into both ends of cylinder, causing it to move at a much faster rate. Whereas Newcomen's slow-moving engine was practical only as a pump, Watt's new device offered all sorts of possibilities for the future.

Watt was granted a patent for his steam engine in 1769. Five years later, in 1774, he received the backing⁷ of Matthew Boulton, a





Birmingham manufacturer. This sent Watt on his way to financial success, and by the time he retired in 1880, he was a wealthy man.

By 1785, Watt's steam engine had replaced water power in some of England's cotton mills. The engine also made it possible to build factories in places other than next to rivers and streams. Thus, factories could be located in cities where a large supply of cheap

labor was available for work. By 1804, an engine similar to Watt's was being used to run Richard Trevithick's steam locomotive⁸. And, three years later, Robert Fulton's steamboat, the Clermont, driven by steam engine, chugged⁹ up the Hudson River from New York City to Albany at the breath-taking speed of almost 5 miles per hour!



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. fascinate ['fæsɪneɪt] vt. 使着迷, 使神魂颠倒 vi. 迷人, 有吸引力
- 2. abundance [ə'bʌndəns] n. 丰富, 充裕
- 3. appetite ['æpɪtaɪt] n. 食欲, 胃口, 欲望, 爱好
- 4. cylinder ['sɪlɪndə] n. 圆筒,圆柱体,汽缸,柱面
- 5. piston ['pɪstən] n. [机]活塞
- 6. condenser [kən'densə] n. 冷凝器, 电容器
- 7. backing ['bækɪŋ] n. 衬背,援助,支持者,赞助者
- 8. locomotive [ˌləukəˈməutɪv] n. 机车,火车头 adj. 运动的
- 9. chug [t∫∧g] v. 发出轧轧声 n. 轧轧声



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. fascinated by sth./to see,learn, etc. 入迷的,极感兴趣的
 - e.g. I've always been fascinated by his ideas.

我总是对他的想法极感兴趣。

They were fascinated to see that it was similar to one they had at home. 他们发现这个和他们家中的那个相似,极感兴趣。

2. appetite (for) 食欲; 胃口; 强烈欲望

e.g. Don't spoil your appetite by eating between meals.

不要在两餐之间吃东西, 以免影响胃口。

The public have an insatiable appetite for scandal.

公众对丑事总是喜闻乐道。

- 3. hit upon/on 突然有个好主意; 偶然想到妙点子
 - e.g. She hit upon the prefect title for her new novel.

她灵机一动为自己的新小说找到了一个理想的书名。

He hit upon a new plan.

他想出一个新计划。

- 4. back and forth 反复来回
 - e.g. ferries sailing back and forth between the islands 往返于岛屿之间的渡船
- 5. other than 除……以外; 不同; 不同于; 不
 - e.g. We are going away in June but other than that I'll be here all summer.

我们6月份外出:除此以外,我整个夏天都在这里。

I have never known him to behave other than selfishly.

我从没见过他不自私。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corre	et letter	in th	ie blank.
--------------------	-----------	-------	-----------

1. James Watt was not the first person to be ______ by steam and its potential power.

A. fascinated

B. fashioned

C. festinated

2. Since the Egyptians	s and Greeks had	l a(n) of slaves to do their work for
them, they simply la	ughed at the thou	ight of any kind of labor-saving device.
A. avoidance	B. abidance	C. abundance
3. Its huge	for fuel used alr	most as much coal as it helped to mine.
A. appraise	B. appetite	C. paradise
4. Watt studied the eng	gine and	a way to improve it.
A. hit upon	B. sit upon	C. hit away
5. Watt was granted a	for	his steam engine in 1769.
A. patient	B. patent	C. potent
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).	
1Hero of Alexa	andria, an ancien	t scientist, built a small steam turbine between the first
and third centuries.		
2Young Jame	s Watt was worl	king as a steam machine maker at the University of
Glasgow in 1763.		
3Although Tho	mas Newcomen's	s engine worked, it was far from cost-effective.
4Watt's engine s	shot steam into bot	th ends of cylinder, causing it to move at a much faster rate.
5Whereas New	comen's slow-me	oving engine was practical only as a pump, Watt's new
device offered all so	orts of possibilities	s for the future.
6The Clermont	was driven at the	e speed of almost 5 kilometers per hour!
III. Complete the	e sentences wi	th the correct form of the words given.
	backing cylind	der supply piston chug pump
1. Thomas Newcomen	built a steam eng	gine to water from coal mines.
2. In 1774, Watt receiv	red the	of Matthew Boulton.
3. Factories could be l	ocated in cities w	where a large of cheap labor was available
for work.		
4. Robert Fulton's ste	amboat, the Cle	ermont, driven by steam engine, up the
Hudson River.		
5. Newcomen's mach	ine worked by	forcing steam into a hollow to move a
back and f	forth.	
		_

参考译文

蒸汽时代

詹姆斯·瓦特并不是第一个为蒸汽和它的潜力着迷的人。亚历山大的西罗,一位古代科学家,其实已在公元一到三世纪制作了一台小型叶轮机。但由于当时古埃及人和古希腊人拥有大量的奴隶来为他们工作,因此对任何可以节省劳动力的器械都嗤之以鼻。

对蒸汽力量的兴趣一直从中世纪持续到一个新时代。第一次将蒸汽力量进行实际利用的尝试出现于1712年,是一位名叫托马斯·纽卡门的英国人制作了一台蒸汽引擎用于抽取矿井中的水。尽管引擎能够开始正常工作了,但却花费巨大,很不划算。它惊人的耗煤量已经能够与它帮助生产出来的煤等同了。

1763 年,年轻的詹姆斯·瓦特在格拉斯哥大学工作,制作乐器,当时纽卡门的一台机器送来让他修理。瓦特仔细研究了这台引擎,突然想到一种改进的方法。纽卡门原来的机器采用的是将蒸汽压入中空的汽缸推动活塞前后移动的工作原理,瓦特就在其中加上了一个带空气泵的冷凝器。

他同时还增添了蒸汽保护罩来保持汽缸里必需的 温度。改进后,瓦特的引擎可将蒸汽快速射入汽 缸的两端,使其能以更快的速度转动。相比只能 用作泵的纽卡门的慢速转动的引擎,瓦特的新器 械为未来的一切都提供了可能。

1769年,瓦特的新式蒸汽机获得专利。五年后,也就是1774年,他得到了一位名叫马修·博尔顿的制造商的赞助。从此瓦特的财富开始积累,到1880年退休的时候,他已家财万贯。

1785年时,瓦特的蒸汽机在英格兰的一些棉花作坊里已彻底代替了水车。蒸汽机也使得在其他地方建造工厂成为可能,而不再用依河或依溪而建了。这样,工厂就可建在有大量廉价劳动力可利用的城市里了。1804年,一台与瓦特的蒸汽机很相似的引擎被运用于理查德·特莱威狄发明的蒸汽式火车头中。三年后,罗伯特·富尔顿的蒸汽船,用蒸汽引擎驱动的克莱蒙特号,沿着哈得孙河一路以惊人的每小时大约五英里的速度从纽约飞驶到奥尔巴尼!

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4.T 5. T 6. F
- III. 1. pump 2.backing 3. supply 4. chugged 5. cylinder; piston



科学生活

美国高速铁路运输

美国的铁路运输,自 1828 年第 1 列旅客列车投入运营后,100 多年来为美国的经济繁荣作出了重要贡献。1956 年,美国通过《州际高速公路法》(Interstate Highway Act),兴建了四通八达的高速公路网。随着汽车和飞机制造业的迅速发展,美国的铁路运输特别是客运业在逐渐萎缩。目前全国运营的客运铁路绝大部分仅限于市内的轻轨交通,城市间铁路的大部分只用于货运,而其中 40% 则用来运煤。但进入 20 世纪 80 年代以后,由于交通等基础设施建设跟不上经济迅速发展的需要,高速公路堵塞,机场拥挤,也由于能源、环境问题同交通运输的矛盾日益突出,迫使人们重新考虑铁路运输,高速铁路计划因此应运而生。

高速铁路运输,一般定义为最高速度 200km/h 以上的铁路运输。美国运输部联邦铁路管理局 (FRA)1997 年 9 月发表的《美国高速地面交通》研究报告,把速度 145km/h 以上都看做"高速"。根据《美国高速地面交通》定义,高速铁路运输根据所采用的技术不同,可以分为 3 种类型。

- (1) 普通高速铁路(Accelerail,简称 ACC)。对现有铁路进行适当改造升级后,采用先进的摆式列车技术,最高速度 145~ 240km/h。如瑞典的 X2000、西班牙的 Talgo、意大利的 Pendolino、英国的 InterCity225、华盛顿—纽约的 Metroliners。
- (2) 新型高速铁路(New HSR, 简称 NHSR)。一般需要新建线路,最高速度可达 320km/h。如法国的 TGV、德国的 ICE 和日本的新干线。
- (3) 磁悬浮铁路 (Magnetic levitation, 简称 Maglev)。需要新建线路,最高速度 480 ~ 500km/h, 采用全新的磁悬浮列车技术。德国和日本已进行了较长时间的试验,但目前还没有一条线路投入运营。

根据美国"高速地面交通协会"第 15 届年会和《美国高速地面交通》介绍,现有和酝酿中的美国高速铁路共有 10 条。其中很多已经得到所在州政府的有力支持,有些已经得到联邦政府对基础设施和列车改进等方面的资金支持。

尽管如此,美国高速铁路的发展远远落后于其他发达国家。奥巴马在一次演讲中用惯用的排比方式说道: "我们需要……能满足 21 世纪需求的智能型运输系统,一个省时高效的系统,一个能减少拥挤、提高生产力的系统,一个能减少空气污染、创造就业岗位的系统。" 但是美国政府是否能将"说道"转化成"轨道",人们还要拭目以待。

The Ups and Downs of the 1930s and 1940s 20世纪三四十年代沉浮记



今天的历史学家把女权运动划分为两个阶段。第一阶段开始于1848年的纽约州色内加瀑布市、结束于1920年的《二十世纪修正案》的颁布。第二阶段开始于20世纪60年代早期、一直至今。

Historians today divide the struggle for women's rights into two movements. The first began in Seneca Falls in 1848 and concluded with the 19th Amendment in 1920. The second began in the early 1960s and is still going on.

The period between the two movements was a time of inaction¹ for women reformers. Many felt that the 19th Amendment gave them all the rights they needed and that the job was completed. Some took up other causes or devoted themselves to family life. Then the Great Depression of 1929 began, and enthusiasm for reform waned² as people struggled just to put food on the table.

The Great Depression was a terrible time in America's history. Banks closed, businesses failed, and millions of workers lost their jobs. Harsh economic conditions actually resulted in women losing some of the rights they had gained. Because so many men were

out of work, over half of the states introduced laws forbidding married women to hold jobs. Misguided officials believed that a woman with a husband did not need to work. They failed to consider that many men could not or would not find jobs. Also, it was necessary in many families for both the husband and the wife to work just to make ends meet.

The Great Depression lasted until the outbreak of World War II in 1939. Jobs became available almost overnight as America began manufacturing supplies and war materials for those countries fighting the Axis³ Powers. When the United States entered the war in 1941, a tremendous opportunity opened up for women. So many men left for the armed forces that women were needed to fill jobs in factories and other places. Women worked in munitions⁴ plants and shipyards. They worked in steel mills and meatpacking plants. They served as

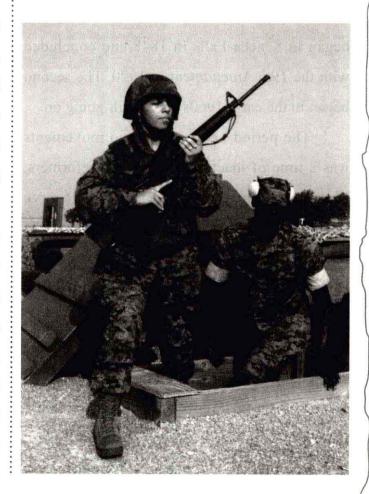
painters, plumbers, electricians, and garbage truck drivers. They operated cranes⁵ and drove trucks and buses. Women of all ages, moved by patriotism, offered their services. In Georgia, even the widow of Confederate⁶ General James Longstreet signed up to work the morning shift at the Bell Aircraft Factory in Marietta. She was 80 years old!

Thousands of women who did not enter the labor force during the war volunteered their services in other ways. Some served as volunteer police clerks, couriers, air-raid wardens⁷, and fire watchers. More than three million joined the Red Cross. Another million worked in USO⁸ centers across the nation. And then there were thousands who joined the women military branches: the WAAC⁹, the WAVE¹⁰, and the women Marines. Many served as nurses and more than a thousand became noncombat¹¹ pilots.

After the war, everyone agreed that America could not have achieved victory without the help of its working women. Women literally¹² kept the nation running during those trying¹³ years. Yet, when the war was over, a strange thing happened. The women who had worked so hard in the factories and at other jobs formerly held by men were fired. They were told to go home and resume their former

lives. The jobs they had performed for four years were now needed by the fighting men being released from the services.

In spite of setbacks¹⁴, women recorded some achievements during the depression and war years. One of the most notable¹⁵ was the appointment by President Roosevelt of Frances Perkins as Secretary of Labor in 1933. Ms. Perkins was the first person of her sex to hold a cabinet¹⁶ position. When asked by a reporter if being a woman was a handicap¹⁷, she quipped¹⁸: "Only in climbing trees!"





Vocabulary 新鲜酷词 www.was.com/

- 1. inaction [ɪnˈæk[ən] n. 无行动,不活动,无为,怠惰,迟钝
- 2. wane [weɪn] vi. 变小、亏缺、衰落、退潮、消逝、呈下弦
- 3. Axis [ˈæksɪs] 轴心国: 1936年的德意联盟,后来包括在第二次世界大战中反对同盟国的日本和其他国家
- 4. munition [mju(:)'nɪ∫ən] n. 军需品 vt. 供给军需品
- 5. crane [kreɪn] n. 起重机
- 6. Confederate [kənˈfedərɪt] n. 同盟者, 同盟国 adj. 同盟的, 联合的 v. (使)联盟, (使)联合
- 7. warden ['wo:dn] n. 典狱官, 看守人, 学监, 区长, (供煮食的)一种冬梨
- 8. USO (United Service Organizations) 美国劳军联合组织
- 9. WAAC (Women's Army Auxiliary Corps) 妇女辅助军团
- 10. WAVE(Women Accepted for Volunteer Emergency Services)美国海军志愿紧急服役妇女队
- 11. noncombat [non'kombæt] adj. 非战斗的
- 12. literally ['lɪtərəlɪ] adv. 照字面意义,逐字地
- 13. trying ['traɪɪŋ] adj. 难受的,费劲的,令人厌烦的
- **14. setback** ['setbæk] *n*. 顿挫, 挫折, 退步, 逆流, (疾病的)复发
- 15. notable ['nəutəbl] adj. 值得注意的,显著的,著名的
- **16.** cabinet ['kæbɪnɪt] n. (有抽屉或格子的)橱柜, <美>内阁
- 17. handicap ['hændɪkæp]v. 妨碍, 使不利, 阻碍 n. 障碍, 不利条件
- **18.** quip [kwɪp] v. 说讽刺的话, 嘲弄, 说托辞



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. take up 继续;接下去;占用(时间);占据(空间)
 - e.g. The band's new album takes up where their last one left off.

这个乐队的新唱片集是接上一集的乐曲录制的。

9

I won't take up any more of your time.

我不再占用你的时间了。

2. devote yourself/sth. to 献身; 致力; 专心

e.g. She devoted herself to her career.

她全力倾注于自己的事业。

I could only devote two hours a day to the work.

我一天只能在这个工作上花两个小时。

3. result in 造成: 导致

e.g. The cyclone has resulted in many thousands of deaths.

气旋已经造成了成千上万的人死亡。

These policies resulted in many elderly people suffering hardship.

这些政策使得许多老人饱受困苦。

4. sign up (使)签约受雇(或入伍);报名(参加课程)

e.g. The company has signed up three top models for the fashion show.

为时装表演,公司签约聘了三名顶尖模特儿。

He signed up for the English course on IELTS in the winter vacation.

他寒假报名参加了雅思英语课。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the cor	rect letter in the	e blank.	
1. The period between the two movements was a time of for			for women
reformers.			(
A. inaction	B. interaction	C. infraction	
2. Some women reformers		other causes or devoted themse	elves to family life.
A. took in	B. took up	C. take down	
3. Enthusiasm for re	eform	as people struggled just to put food	on the table.
A. waned	B. wined	C. wonted	

4. It was necessary in	many families for	for both the husband and the wife to work just to make
meet.		
A. ants	B. and	C. ends
5. America began ma	nufacturing supp	lies and war materials for those countries fighting the
Pow	ers.	
A. Axis	B. Aces	C. Acres
6. In Georgia, even the	e widow of Confe	ederate General James Longstreet to
work.		
A. signed in	B. signed up	C. signed out
7. Women	kept the n	nation running during those trying years in war.
A. literaturally	B. literately	C. literally
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).	
1Historians too	lay divide the stru	aggle for women's rights into two movements.
2Because so	many men were	out of work, most states introduced laws forbidding
married women to h	old jobs.	
3The Great Depression lasted until the outbreak of World War II in 1937.		
4Thousands of	women who did	not enter the labor force during the war volunteered their
services in other wa	ys.	
5More than thr	ee million women	n joined the Red Cross.
6 The women	who had worked	so hard in the factories and at other jobs formerly held
by men were fired.		
III. Complete the	sentences wit	h the correct form of the words given.
misguid	e noncombat mu	unitions harsh cabinet setback patriotism
1 econo	omic conditions a	ctually resulted in women losing some of the rights they
had gained.		
2	officials believed	d that a woman with a husband did not need to work.
3. Women of all ages,	moved by	, offered their services.
4. Some women works	ed in	plants and shipyards.

5. More than a thousand women became	_ pilots.	
6. Ms. Perkins was the first person of her sex to hold a	position.	1
7. In spite of, women recorded some ac	chievements during the depression and	1
war years.		(
		(

参考译文

20世纪三四十年代沉浮记

今天的历史学家把女权运动划分为两个阶: 段。第一阶段开始于1848年的纽约州色内加瀑 布市、结束于1920年的《二十世纪修正案》的 颁布。第二阶段开始于20世纪60年代早期、一 直至今。

两次女权运动之间的那段时期是女权运动改 革家们无所作为的日子。很多人认为《二十世纪 修正案》已经赋予了她们所需要的全部权利,女 权运动已经成功。于是一些人从事了其他工作, 还有一些人成为家庭主妇。从 1929 年的大萧条 开始,人们将精力都放在了解决温饱上,改革的 热情也就减退了。

大萧条在美国的历史上是段不堪回首的岁 月。银行倒闭,企业破产,大量工人失业。恶劣 的经济条件最终导致女性的一些权利得而复失。 由于众多男性失去工作,超过半数的州都通过了 禁止已婚女性就业的法律。误入歧途的官员们坚 信妇女们只要有丈夫就不需要工作了。他们并没 有考虑到很多男性也不能或将要找不到工作。同 : 义务承担起派出所职员、信差、防空观察员和火

时,对很多家庭来说,只有夫妻双方都外出工作 才能使收支相抵。

大萧条一直持续到 1939 年第二次世界大战 爆发。由于美国开始大量生产补给和军需品供给 与轴心国交战的国家, 一夜之间就业岗位巨增。 1941 年美国参战时,一个对女性来说绝好的机会 出现了。大量男性应征入伍,只得靠女性去工厂 或其他地方代替他们的工作。女性工作的身影在 军工厂、造船厂里随处可见。她们还出现在钢铁 厂、肉类加工厂。油漆工、管道工、电工、修理 厂卡车司机,她们无所不干。操作起重机,驾驶 卡车和公交车,她们无所不能。不论老少,女性 们被强烈的爱国精神鼓舞着, 贡献着她们的力量。 在佐治亚州、甚至连南部邦联军将军詹姆斯·朗 斯特里特的遗孀都去位于玛丽埃塔的贝尔飞机厂 上早班了。当时她已80岁高龄!

战争期间,成千上万没有在工厂工作的女性 也都用别的方式做些力所能及的事情。一些妇女

助军团,海军志愿紧急服役妇女队和女子舰队等; 一些当起了护士;还有超过1000的妇女成为非 战斗机飞行员。

战后, 国人一致认为, 如果没有参加工作的: 妇女的支持,美国就不可能取得成功。毫不夸张,: 在那段痛苦的年代里、是女性在促使整个国家正 常运作。但是, 当战争结束后, 奇怪的现象又发

险观察员的责任。超过 300 万的女性加入了红十 : 生了。那些在原本是男性占据的岗位和工厂上努 字会; 100 万在遍布全国的美国劳军联合组织工 : 力工作的女性被解雇了。她们被迫重新当起家庭 作;成千上万的人参加了妇女军团分支:妇女辅:主妇、继续以前的生活。从战场上凯旋的男人们 需要她们之前从事了四年的工作。

> 尽管遭受了挫折, 女性在大萧条和战争年代 还是取得了一些成绩。最显著的一点就是1933 年罗斯福总统任命弗朗西斯·帕金斯为劳工部长。 帕金斯夫人是第一位进入内阁的女性。当被一个 记者问及自己的性别是否是自己的劣势时、她风 趣地讽刺道: "只有在爬树的时候!"

"美"事一桩

美国大萧条

1929年10月29日,纽约证券交易所里所有的人都陷入了抛售股票的漩涡之中。股指从之前的 363 最高点骤然下跌了平均40个百分点,成千上万的美国人眼睁睁看着他们一生的积蓄在几天内烟 消云散。这是美国证券史上最黑暗的一天,是美国历史上影响最大、危害最深的经济事件、影响波及 西方国家乃至整个世界。此后,美国和全球进入了长达 10 年的经济大萧条时期。因此,这一天被视 作大萧条时期开启的标志性事件,由于正值星期二,被称为"黑色星期二"。

记录美国历史的《光荣与梦想》中曾这样写道:"千百万人只因像畜牲那样生活、才免干死亡。" 这一情景描述的正是美国大萧条时期的民生状况。

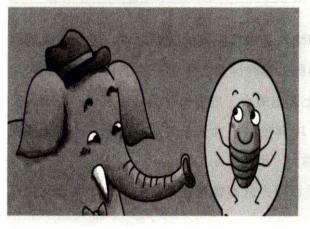
1932 年,约有200 万美国人到处流浪——其中有25 万以上在16~21 岁之间。这些被当时媒体称 为大萧条时期的"漂泊无依的人"中,有两手空空的佃农;有因为大旱三年、背井离乡的农场主;有 一大批刚从大学毕业, 找不到工作的青年; 还有忽然失业的愁眉苦脸的中年汉子带着生病的婴儿-这些人天天奔波,居无定所。

而这些人当中不乏衣冠楚楚的中产阶级——意气风发的银行行长或者曾在著名报纸上发表评论的 知名作家、如今却在夜间敲门讨饭或蜷缩在城市排队领面包的人群里。

这是自1929年"黑色星期二"开启的大萧条以来,美国人真实生活的一个缩影。据1932年9月的《财 富》杂志估计、美国有3400万成年男女和儿童没有任何收入、此数字接近人口总数的28%。而且这 个研究报告一如其他报告、那正在另一种地狱里受难的1100万户农村人口是不包括在内的。

在农村、特别是中西部的农民们、生活极其惨淡。由于农产品价格惨跌、大量农场主破产。 千百万人只因像畜牲那样生活,才免于死亡。宾夕法尼亚州的乡下人吃野草根、蒲公英;肯塔基州的 人吃紫罗兰叶、野葱、勿忘我草、野莴苣以及一向专给牲口吃的野草。城里的孩子妈妈在码头上徘徊 等待,一有腐烂的水果蔬菜扔出来,就上去同野狗争夺。蔬菜从码头装上卡车,她们就跟在后边跑, 有什么掉下来就捡。中西部地区一所旅馆的厨师把一桶残菜剩羹放在厨房外的小巷里,立即有十来个 人从黑暗中冲出来抢。人们还看到,有人全家走进垃圾堆捡骨头和西瓜皮啃。因为蛆虫多,芝加哥市 有一个寡妇在捡东西吃时总是先把眼镜摘掉,眼不见为净。

A Humor 休闲时刻



Let Me Take It Down

An elephant said to a mouse, "no doubt that you are the smallest and most useless thing that I have ever seen ."

"Please, say it again. Let me take it down ." The mouse said. "I will tell a flea what I know." 为我所用 包括全球菌类 周到 战势下降至战事高亢是

一头大象对一只小老鼠说:"你无疑是我见过的最小、最没用的东西。" "请再说一遍,让我把它记下来。"老鼠说,"我要讲给我认识的一只 跳蚤听。"

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. T
- III. 1. Harsh 2. Misguided 3. patriotism 4. munitions 5. noncombat 6. cabinet 7. setbacks



Part 4 American Literature 美国文学

美国文学表现为平民化和多元化。美国人富于阳刚之气,热爱自由,追求以个人幸福为中心的美国梦。美国人民写出的作品正展现出了这些特点。美国文学大致出现过3次繁荣,分别为: 19世纪前期形成的民族文学,第一次世界大战和第二次世界大战后的两度繁荣。至今美国作家中已有近10位作家获得诺贝尔文学奖。

本章节摘选了七篇美国文学史上七位名作家之经典之作,以飨读者。从中我们能够大致领略到美国文学的风采,当然也是为了激发读者对美国文学的兴趣,以在将来有兴趣读更多美国文学的精彩作品。

23

Journal of the First Voyage to America

第一次美洲航海日志(节选)

Christopher Columbus 古里斯托弗·哥伦布



克里斯托弗・哥伦布是历史上最著名的探险家之一。他很早就离开了他在意大利的家庭,开始航海。他学习了拉丁文,并阅读了马可・波罗关于富饶的亚洲的描述。本文节选自哥伦布第一次去往美洲的航海日志。

This account begins nine days after Columbus landed on San Salvador.

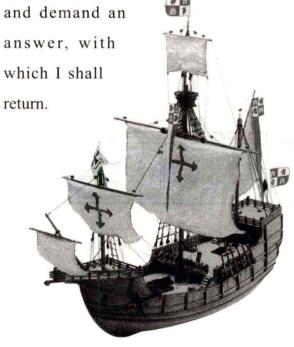


SUNDAY,OCT.21ST[1492]. At 10 o'clock, we arrived at a cape of the island, and anchored, the other vessels in company. After having dispatched¹ a meal, I went ashore, and found no habitation save a single house, and that without an occupant²; we had no doubt that the people

had fled in terror at our approach, as the house was completely furnished3. I suffered nothing to be touched, and went with my captains and some of the crew to view the country. This island even exceeds the others in beauty and fertility⁴. Groves of lofty⁵ and flourishing⁶ trees are abundant, as also large lakes, surrounded and overhung by the foliage7, in a most enchanting8 manner. Everything looked as green as in April in Andalusia. The melody of the birds was so exquisite9 that one was never willing to part from the spot, and the flocks of parrots obscured the heavens. The diversity in the appearance of the feathered tribe from those of our country is extremely curious. A thousand different sorts of trees, with their fruit were to be met with, and of a wonderfully delicious odor. It was a great affliction to me to be ignorant of their natures, for I am very certain they are all valuable; specimens10 of them and

of the plants I have preserved11. Going round one of these lakes, I saw a snake, whither we killed, and I have kept the skin for your Highnesses; upon being discovered he took to the water, whither we followed him, as it was not deep, and dispatched him with our lances; he was seven spans in length; I think there are many more such about here. I discovered also the aloe tree, and I am determined to take on board the ship tomorrow, ten quintals of it, as I am told it is valuable. While we were in search of some good water we came upon a village of the natives about half a league from the place where the ships lay; the inhabitants on discovering abandoned their houses, mad took to flight, carrying off their goods to the mountain. I ordered that nothing which they had left should be taken, not even the value of a pin. Presently we saw several of the natives advancing towards our party, and one of them came up to us, to whom we gave some hawk's bells and glass beads, with which he was delighted. We asked him in return, for water, and after I had gone on board the ship, the natives came down to the shore with their calabashes¹² full, and showed great pleasure in presenting us with it. I ordered more glass beads to be given them, and they promised to return the next day. It is my wish to fill all the water casks of the ships at this place, which being executed¹³,

I shall depart¹⁴ immediately, if the weather serve, auld said round the island, till I succeed in meeting with the king, in order to see if I can acquire any of the gold, which I hear he possesses. Afterwards I shall set sail for another very large island which I believe to be Cipango, according to the indications¹⁵ I receive from the Indians on board. They called the Island Colba, and say there are many large ships, and sailors there. This other island they name Bosio and inform me that it is very large; the others which lie in our course, I shall examine on the passage, and according as I find gold or spices¹⁶ in abundance, I shall determine what to do, at all events I am determined to proceed on to the continent, and visit the city of Guisav where I shall deliver the letters of your Highnesses to the Great Can,





Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. dispatch** [dɪs'pæt[] v. 派遣,发送;迅速处理;吃完;立即处死 n. 派遣;杀死、处决
- 2. occupant ['pkju:pənt] n. 占有者, 居住者
- 3. furnish [ˈfəːnɪʃ] ν. 装备,摆设,尤指配备家具等所需之物;供应,提供
- 4. fertility [fəːˈtɪlɪtɪ] n. 肥沃, 丰产, 多产, 人口生产, 生产力
- 5. lofty ['lo(:)ftɪ] adj. 高高的,崇高的,高傲的,高级的
- 6. flourish['flʌrɪʃ] vi. 繁荣, 茂盛
- 7. foliage ['fəʊlɪdʒ] n. 树叶, 植物
- 8. enchant[ɪn't∫ɑ:nt] vt. 施魔法, 使迷惑
- 9. exquisite ['ekskwɪzɪt] adj. 优美的,高雅的,精致的,剧烈的,异常的,细腻的,敏锐的
- 10. specimen ['spesɪmən] n. 样品, 标本
- 11. preserve [pri'zə:v] vt. 保护, 保持, 保存, 保藏
- 12. calabash['kæləbæ∫] n. [植]炮弹果, 葫芦
- 13. execute['eksɪkju:t] vt. 执行, 实行, 完成, 处死, 制成, [律]经签名盖章等手续使(证书)生效
- 14. depart [dr'pa:t] vi. 离开, 起程, 不按照, 逝世
- **15. indication**[ˌɪndɪˈkeɪ∫ən] *n*. 指出,指示,迹象,暗示
- 16. spice [spars] n. 香料, 调味品, 趣味, 意味, 情趣



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. exceed (the) others in sth. 在某些方面超过……
 - e.g. He exceeds the others in both playing football and playing basketball.

他足球、篮球都打得比别人好。

In this factory, workers who exceed others in production will get reword of it.

在这家工厂,生产上超前者会因此而得到奖赏。



e.g. He shows great pleasure in watching foreign movies.

他十分喜欢看外国电影。

My daughter shows great pleasure in playing toy bricks.

我女儿十分喜欢玩积木。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corre	ct letter in the blank.		
1. We arrived a	cape of the island.		
A. in B. at	C. on		
2. We had no doubt that	at the people had fled in terr	ror our app	proach.
A. on B. after	C. at		
3. A thousand differen	nt sorts of trees, with their	r fruit were to b	e met with, and of a
delicious odor.			
A. wonderful	B. wonderfully	C. wondering	
4. One of them came _	to us.		
A. up	B. toward	C. down	
5round one of	these lakes, I saw a snake.		
A. Went	B. Go	C. Going	
6. I ordered more glass	s beads to be given them, ar	nd they promised	the next day.
A. to return	B. returning	C. return	
7. After dispatch	hed a meal, I went ashore.		
A. have	B. having	C.had	
8. While we were in se	earch some good wat	er we came upon	a village.
A. of	B. for	C. with	

II. Write true (T) or false (F).			
1The author and his group arrived at the island on Oct. 21ST, a Saturday.			
2After having dispatched a meal, I went ashore, and found that there were some			
habitations.			
3The author thinks that this island exceeds the others in beauty and fertility.			
4The author knew very well about the natures of the trees on the island.			
5The author gave some hawk's bells and glass beads to the local person he met on the			
island, and asked him in return for some money.			
6After the author leaving this island, he shall set sail for another very large island.			
III. Complete these sentences. 1. At 10 o'clock, we arrived at a cape of the island, and anchored, the other vessels company.			
2. I discovered also the aloe tree, and I am determined to take board the ship tomorrow.			
3. I succeed (meet) with the king.			
4. According to the indications I receive the Indians on board.			
5. I shall depart immediately, in order see if I can acquire any of the gold.			
5. I determined to proceed on to the continent.			

参考译文

第一次美洲航海日志(节选)

后的第九天。

们到达了这个岛的一个海角, 抛锚停下了, 船队: 的其他船只也跟随着我们。匆匆吃了一顿饭之后,:: 我上了岸,发现除了一栋空无一人的房子之外,

这篇日志开始于哥伦布在圣萨尔瓦多岛登陆 : 这里没有人烟的迹象。我们相信房子的主人由于 我们的到来深感恐惧, 弃家而逃, 因为房子里面 1492年10月12日,星期日。10点钟,我:生活用具样样俱全。我向留下的人下令不许动房 子里任何的东西, 然后带着我的船长们和一些船 员去视察整个岛屿。比起其他岛屿, 这座岛屿之 美丽富饶可谓更胜一筹。这里到处都是高大而繁

茂的小树林, 还有那被绿树浓荫笼罩环绕的湖水, 景色十分优美迷人。整个世界就像4月的安塔露 西亚一样青翠欲滴。鸟儿歌声动听, 让人不忍离 去, 成群的鹦鹉连天空都能遮没。真是奇怪, 这 里的鸟类和我们国家的鸟类看起真是十分不同! 这里还有上千种不同的树木, 树上长满果实, 那 香味真是使人垂涎欲滴。非常遗憾的是我不知道 这些树的名字, 但我确信它们都很有价值, 所以 我保存了这些树和植物的标本。在湖周围视察时, 我们发现了一条蛇,它逃到了水里,我们一直跟 着它, 因为水不深, 最后用长矛把它捉住了。我 们杀了它,保留蛇皮献给陛下。这条蛇有七个掌 距那么长、我估计这一带还会有很多这样的蛇。 同时我们还发现了龙舌兰树,因为听说这种树很 值钱, 所以我决定明天往船上运 10 英吨。在我 们寻找饮用水的过程中, 见到了一座当地人的村 庄, 这个村庄距我们停船的地方大约有 1.5 英里。 那里的居民一发现我们就弃家逃走了, 还把值钱 的东西都带到了山里。我命令我们的人不许拿走 任何东西, 哪怕是只值一根针的东西。此时我们 看到几个当地人朝我们的方向走来, 而其中一个 来到了我们面前, 我们给了他一些鹰铃和玻璃珠, 这使他感到很高兴。作为交换, 我们向他要了一 些水。当我回到船上时,那些当地人已经带着装 满水的葫芦来到了岸边, 而且表现得很高兴。我 下今再给他们一些玻璃珠、他们答应第二天再来。 我希望能在这个地方将船上的水桶装满水, 如果 天气许可, 就马上离开, 绕岛航行, 直到我找到 这里的国王。因为我听说它拥有很多黄金, 所以 想试试看能否得到一些。之后我打算向另外一个 很大的岛屿进发,根据船上的印第安人提供的信 息,我相信这个岛就是西潘哥岛。那些印第安人 称这个岛为蔻芭岛,说那里有很多大船和船员。 还有一个岛屿他们称为波西亚岛, 据说这个岛也 很大。对于在我们航线上的其他岛屿、我也会在 经过的时候进行探查,并且根据是否发现了大量 的黄金或香料来决定我的行动。无论发生什么事 情,我决心向大陆航行,访问那个城市,把陛下 的信呈给大汗、并且带着他的答复回来。



关于日志

*日志是什么

简单地说,日志是一种心情的载体,一种对内心深处的窥探。日志可以记录你生活的点点滴滴, 把你内心的世界表露出来,更好地诠释自己的内心世界。

*日志的好处

日志能够保留自己的回忆,当时的心情、思想,以后看起来很有趣。如果你从事一些比较重要的 工作,日志可能成为工作总结、经验累积,等等。日志还是一种生活态度,你在及时地记录自己生活 的点点滴滴,你在认真地思考生活。同时,日志会让你的心灵得到释然。

"美"事一桩

0

哥伦布简介

克里斯托弗·哥伦布(约1451—1506),生于意大利热那亚,卒于西班牙巴利亚多利德,一生从事航海活动,先后移居葡萄牙和西班牙,相信大地球形说,认为从欧洲西航可达东方的印度和中国。在西班牙国王支持下,先后4次出海远航(1492—1493, 1493—1496, 1498—1500, 1502—1504),到达了西欧人认为的美洲大陆,他也因此成为名垂青史的航海家,开辟了横渡大西洋到美洲的航路。先后到达巴哈马群岛、古巴、海地、多米尼加、特立尼达等岛。在帕里亚湾南岸首次登上美洲大陆,考察了中美洲洪都拉斯到达连湾2000多千米的海岸线;认识了巴拿马海峡;发现和利用了大西洋低纬度吹东风,较高纬度吹西风的风向变化。他误认为到达的大陆是印度,并称当地人为印第安人。

哥伦布十分崇拜曾在热那亚坐过监狱的马可·波罗,他读过《马可·波罗游记》,十分向往印度和中国。当时,地圆说已经很盛行,哥伦布也深信不疑。他先后向葡萄牙、西班牙、英国、法国等国国王请求资助,以实现他向西航行到达东方国家的计划,都遭拒绝。一方面,地圆说的理论尚不十分完备,许多人不相信,把哥伦布看成江湖骗子。一次,在西班牙关于哥伦布计划的专门的审查委员会上,一位委员问哥伦布:即使地球是圆的,向西航行可以到达东方,回到出发港,那么有一段航行必然是从地球下面向上爬坡,帆船怎么能爬上来呢?对此问题,滔滔不绝、口若悬河的哥伦布也只有语塞。另一方面,当时,西方国家对东方物质财富需求除传统的丝绸、瓷器、茶叶外,最重要的是香料和黄金。其中香料是欧洲人起居生活和饮食烹调必不可少的材料,需求量很大,而本地又不生产。当时,这些商品主要经传统的海、陆联运商路运输。经营这些商品的既得利益集团也极力反对哥伦布开辟新航路的计划。哥伦布为实现自己的计划,到处游说了十几年。直到1492年,西班牙王后慧眼识英雄,她说服了国王,甚至要拿出自己的私房钱资助哥伦布,才使哥伦布的计划得以实施。

1492 年 8 月 3 日,哥伦布受西班牙国王派遣,带着给印度君主和中国皇帝的国书,率领三艘百十来吨的帆船,从西班牙巴罗斯港扬帆出大西洋,直向正西航去。经 70 个昼夜的艰苦航行,1492 年 10 月 12 日凌晨终于发现了陆地。哥伦布以为到达了印度,后来才知道,哥伦布登上的这块土地,属于现在中美洲巴勒比海中的巴哈马群岛,他当时为它命名为圣萨尔瓦多。1493 年 3 月 15 日,哥伦布回到西班牙。此后他又三次重复他的向西航行,又登上了美洲的许多海岸。直到 1506 年逝世,他一直认为他到达的是印度。后来,一个叫做亚美利哥的意大利学者,经过更多的考察,才知道哥伦布到达的这些地方不是印度,而是一个原来不为人知的新大陆。哥伦布发现了新大陆。但是,这块大陆却用

证实它是新大陆的人的名字命了名:亚美利加洲。后来,对于谁最早发现美洲不断出现各种微词。哥伦布发现新大陆的结论是毋庸置疑的。这是因为当时,欧洲乃至亚洲、非洲整个旧大陆的人们确实不知大西洋彼岸有此大陆。至于谁最先到达美洲,则是另外的问题,因为美洲土著居民本身就是远古时期从亚洲迁徙过去的。中国、大洋洲的先民航海到达美洲也是极为可能的,但这些都不能改变哥伦布到达新大陆的影响。印第安人,又称美洲原住民,是除爱斯基摩人外的所有美洲土著居民的总称。美洲土著居民中的绝大多数为印第安人,本来分布于美国各地,是东亚蒙古人种美洲支系。印第安人所说的语言称为美洲原住民语言,或者称为北美洲蒙古人种印第安语。印第安人的祖先来自中国北方,大约是在4万年前从亚洲渡过白令海峡到达美洲的,或者是通过冰封的海峡陆桥过去的。他们与亚洲同时代的人有某些相同的文化特色,例如用火、驯犬及某些特殊仪式与医疗方法。考古学和人类学认为印第安人的祖先和中国人有着一样的体质。在美国有阿塔巴斯干人、阿尔贡金人、易洛魁人、苏人和马斯科基人等,印第安人是美洲最早的居民。他们之所以被成为"印第安人",主要是因为当年哥伦布等探险者,以为他们到达的"新陆地"是印度,错误地称当地居民为"印第安"人("印度"一词的英文发音)。

Answer

I. 1.B 2.C 3.B 4.A 5.C 6.A 7.B 8.A

II. 1.F 2.F 3.T 4.F 5.F 6.T

III. 1.in 2.on 3.in meeting 4.from 5.to 6.am



名言锦句

Living without an aim is like sailing without a compass.

生活而无目标,犹如航海而无指南针。

-J.Ruskin

——J.鲁斯金

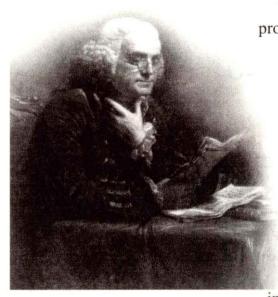
24

The Autobiography 富兰克林自传(节选)

Benjamin Franklin 本杰明·富兰克林



本文节选自《富兰克林自传》。《富兰克林自传》一书记录了本杰明・富兰克林—— 这位美国开国元勋从默默无闻到功勋卓著的奋斗历程。



It was about this time that I conceived the bold and arduous¹ project of arriving at moral perfection. I wished to live without committing any fault at any time; I would conquer all that either natural inclination², custom, or company might lead me into. As I knew, or thought I knew, what was right and wrong, I did not see why I might not always do the one and avoid the other. But I soon found I had undertaken a task of more difficulty than I had imagined. While my care was employed in guarding against one fault, I was often surprised another; habit took the advantage of inattention³; inclination was sometimes too strong for reason. I concluded,

at length, that the mere speculative⁴ conviction that it was our interest to be completely virtuous was not sufficient to prevent our slipping; and that the contrary habits must be broken, and good ones acquired and established, before we can have any dependence on a steady, uniform rectitude of conduct. For this purpose I therefore contrived the following method.

In the various enumerations of the moral virtues⁵ I had met with in my reading, I found the catalog more or less numerous, as different writers included more or fewer ideas under the same name. Temperance, for example, was by some confined to eating and drinking, while by others it was extended to mean the moderating every other pleasure, appetite, inclination, or passion, bodily or mental, even to our avarice and ambition. I proposed to myself, for the sake of clearness, to use ideas; and I included under thirteen names of virtues all that at that time occurred to me as

necessary or desirable, and annexed to each a short precept, which fully expressed the extent I gave to its meaning.

These names of virtues, with their precepts, were:

1. TEMPERANCE6

Eat not to dullness; drink not to elevation7.

2. SILENCE

Speak not but what may benefit others or yourself; avoid trifling8 conversation.

3. ORDER

Let all your things have their places; let each part of your business have its time.

4. RESOLUTION9

Resolve to perform what you ought; perform without fail what you resolve.

5. FRUGALITY¹⁰

Make no expense but to do good to others or yourself; i.e., waste nothing.

6. INDUSTRY¹¹

Lose no time; be always employed in something useful; cut of all unnecessary actions.

7. SINCERITY¹²

Use no hurtful deceit; think innocently and justly, and, if you speak, speak accordingly.

8. JUSTICE

Wrong none by doing injuries, or omitting the benefits that are your duty.

9. MODERATION13

Avoid extremes; forbear resenting injuries so much as you think they deserve.

10. CLEANLINESS

Tolerate no uncleanliness in body, clothes, or habitation.

11. TRANQUILITY¹⁴

Be not disturbed at trifles, or at accidents common or unavoidable.

12.CHASTITY¹⁵

Rarely use venery but for health or offspring, never to dullness, weakness, or injury of your own or another's peace or reputation.

13. HUMILITY¹⁶

Imitate Jesus and Socrates.

My intention being to acquire the habitude¹⁷ of all these virtues, I judged it would be well not to distract my attention by attempting the whole at once but to fix it on one of them at a time; and, when I should be master of that, then to proceed another, and so on, till I should gone through the thirteen; and, as the previous acquisition of some might facilitate the acquisition of certain others, I arranged them with that view, as they stand above. Temperance first, as it tends to procure that coolness and clearness of head, which is so necessary where constant vigilance was to be kept up, and guard maintained against the unremitting attraction of ancient habits and the force of perpetual temptations. This being acquired and established, Silence would be more easy; and my desire being to gain knowledge at the same time that I improved in virtue, and considering that in conversation it was obtained rather by the use of the ears than of the tongue, and therefore wishing to break a habit I was getting into of prattling, punning, and joking, which only made me acceptable to trifling company, I gave silence the second place. This, and the next, order, I expected would allow me more time for attending my project and my studies. Resolution, once become habitual, would keep me firm in my endeavors to obtain all the subsequent virtues; Frugality and Industry fleeing me from my remaining debt and producing affluence and independence, would make more easy the practice of Sincerity and Justice, etc., etc.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. arduous [ˈɑːdjʊəs] adj. 费劲的,辛勤的,险峻的
- 2. inclination [ˌɪnklɪˈneɪʃən] n. 倾斜, 弯曲, 倾度, 倾向, 爱好
- 3. inattention [ˌɪnəˈtenʃən] n. 疏忽
- 4. speculative ['spekjulətɪv, -leɪt-] adj. 投机的
- **5. virtue** [ˈvəːtjuː] *n.* 德行,美德,贞操,优点,功效,效力,英勇
- 6. temperance ['tempərəns] n.节欲, 戒酒, 禁酒
- **7. elevation** [.elɪˈveɪʃən] *n*.上升,高地,正面图,海拔,提高,仰角,崇高,庄严
- 8. trifle ['traɪfl] v. 开玩笑, 玩弄, 闲混, 浪费, 嘲弄
- 9. resolution [ˌrezəˈlju:∫ən] n. 坚定,决心,决定,决议
- 10. frugality [fru(:)'gælɪtɪ] n. 节俭, 节省
- 11. industry ['ɪndəstrɪ] n. 工业,产业,行业,勤奋
- 12. sincerity [sɪn'serɪtɪ] n. 诚挚, 真实, 真挚

- 13. moderation [ˌmɒdəˈreɪ∫ən] n. 适度
- 14. tranquility [træŋˈkwɪlɪtɪ] n. 宁静
- 15. chastity ['tʃæstɪtɪ] n. 纯洁, 贞节, 简洁
- 16. humility [hju(:) mɪlɪtɪ] n. 谦卑
- 17. habitude ['hæbɪtju:d] n. 习俗
- 18. acquisition [ˌækwɪ'zɪ[ən] n. 获得, 获得物



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. be employed in doing 从事于……; 时间花在……上
 - e.g. He is employed in creating novels.

他把大部分时间花在小说创作上。

She used to employ herself in cooking after work.

下班后她常常把时间花在烹饪上。

- 2. at length 最后; 详细地
 - e.g. We waited and waited. At length, they arrived.

我们等啊等,最后他们终于到了。

They discussed the problem at length.

他们详细讨论了这问题。



Exercise 牛刀小试

- I. Write the correct letter in the blank.
- 1. It was about this time that I conceived the bold and arduous project _____ arriving at moral perfection.
 - A.of
- B. for
- C. in

2. I would conquer all t	that either natural i	inclination, cu	istom,	_ company m	night lead me into.
A. nor	B. or	C. and			
3. I did not see why I r	night not always _	the o	ne and avoi	d the other.	
A. do	B. did	C. done			
4. While my care was	employed in guard	ding against o	one fault, I v	vas often	another.
A. surprising	B. surprise	C. surprise	d .		
5. I found the catalog	nore or nu	umerous.			
A. less	B. fewer	C. little			
6. Different writers inc	luded more or	ideas ur	nder the sam	e name.	
A. less	B. fewer	C. little		TANK!	
7. Make no bu	t to do good to oth	ners or yourse	elf.		
A. expense	B. expenses	C. expension	ng		
8. I proposed to mysel	f, for the sake	clearnes	s, to use ide	eas.	
A. for	B. on	C. of			
9. I had undertaken a t	ask of more	_ than I had	imagined.		
A. difficult	B. hard	C. difficult	y		
10. I included under necessary or desira		f virtues all			ed me as
A. to	B. on	Cinto			
A. to	B. on	C. Into			
II .Write true (T)	or false (F).		V-		
1The author	found that the	catalog are	more or le	ss numerou	s in the various
enumerations of the	moral virtues he l	had met with	in his readin	ng.	
2The author	thinks that if tem	perance is ac	equired and	established,	Silence would be
more difficult.					
III. Complete the	se sentences.				
1. I wished to live with	nout (com	nmit) any fau	It at any tim	e.	
2. But I soon found I h	ad undertaken a ta	ask n	nore difficul	ty than I had i	magined.
3. In the various enum catalog more or less	erations of the mo				

/	4. The contrary habits must broken.	
1	5. I might not always do the one and avoid (other).	。推到原天党等
1	6. Frugality and Industry fleeing me my remaining debt.	***
	7. Temperance first, as it tends to procure that coolness and clearness of l	head, which is so
1	necessary where constant vigilance was to be kept	
(8. For this purpose I therefore contrived the (follow) method.	
1		

参考译文

富兰克林自传(节选)

大约就在这个时候, 我的脑子里酝酿了这个: 大胆而又艰巨的任务: 达到道德上的完美境界。 我希望在生活中任何时候都不犯错误, 我要克服 所有可能导致我犯错误的因素, 无论是自然的倾 向和习惯,还是我身边的人。根据我所知道的, 或那时候我认为我所知道的, 正确和错误的标准, 我看不出为什么我不能一直遵循前者而同时避免 后者。可是很快我就发现我承担的这个任务比我 想象的更加困难。当我的注意力忙于戒备一个错 误的时候,我经常因为犯了另外一个错误而大吃 一惊。在我不注意的时候习惯就会占上风、而自 然的倾向有时候比理智要强大得多。最后我得出 一个结论, 那就是: 仅仅在思想上坚信完全的道 德对我们有好处, 但并不足以能够阻止我们犯错 误。因此我们必须先打破那些反面的习惯、养成 并建立好习惯,然后才能有一种始终如一的政治 品行让我们依靠。所以, 为了达到这一目的, 我 设计了以下方法。

根据我在阅读中见到的列举的各种美德,我 发现因为不同的作者在同一名字下会包含或多或 少的含义,所以这些列举的清单都比较长。比如 说"节制"这种美德,有些作者只把它限制在吃 饭和饮酒方面,而其他的作者则将它的含义扩展 到对各种享受的节制,包括食欲、意愿或肉体和 精神上的热爱,甚至还有我们的贪心和野心。为 了清楚起见,我建议我自己多用一些美德的名字, 每个名字上附加的意义少一点,而不能只用几个 名字,但每个名字中有很多含义。于是我列出了 十三种当时我认为是必要或值得拥有的美德,为 每种美德附加了一句短短的准则,充分地表达了 我为其规定的含义范围。

这些美德和它们的准则是:

1. 节制

食不得过饱, 饮不可过量。

2. 沉默

避免无聊闲扯, 言谈必须对人有益。

3. 秩序

生活物品要放置有序, 工作时间要合理安排。

4. 果断

要做之事就下决心去做,决心做的事一定要完成。

5. 节俭

不得浪费,任何花费都要有益,不论是于人干己。

6. 勤劳

珍惜每一刻时间,去除一切不必要之举,勤 做有益之事。

7. 真诚

不损害他人,不使用欺骗手段。考虑事情要 公正合理,说话要依据真实情况。

8. 公正

不得损人利己,履行应尽的义务。

9. 话度

避免任何极端倾向、尽量克制报复心理。

10. 清洁

身体、衣着和居所要力求干净清洁。

11. 平静

戒除不必要的烦恼,即那些琐事、常见的和 不可避免的不顺利的事情。

12. 纯洁

除为健康和为后代考虑之外决不纵欲,决不 使身体虚弱,生活贫乏,不可损坏自己及他人的 声誉或安宁。

13. 谦虚

以耶稣和苏格拉底为榜样。

我的目的是将所有这些美德习惯化, 所以

我认为不应该一次尝试所有的美德, 因为这样会 分散我的注意力, 而是应该一次只将注意力集中 在一种美德上, 当我获得了这一种以后, 就继续 进行下一种的培养, 以此类推, 一直到我培养了 所有的十三种美德。因为有些先培养的美德可能 会有助于其他一些美德的培养, 所以我按照上面 所示的顺序安排了这些美德。"节制"是第一个, 它可以使人拥有冷静清醒的头脑, 而这对我正是 极其必要的,因为我要保持不断的警惕性、来防 备旧习惯的持续吸引和反复不断的诱惑。在我获 得并且养成这种美德之后,"沉默"就比较容易了。 由于我希望在获取知识的同时能在道德上有所提 高,并且考虑在谈话中知识是利用耳朵而不是舌 头来得到的, 所以我希望能改掉闲聊, 说双关语 和开玩笑的习惯, 因为这个习惯只能使我被那些 琐屑而没有价值的人们接受。基于以上考虑, 我 把"沉默"排在了第二位。我希望这个美德和下 面的"秩序",能使我有更多的时间来专注于自 己的工作和学习。而一旦"果断"成为习惯、我 就能在获得下面的美德的过程中更加坚决。"节 俭"和"勤劳"将使我从残留的债务中解脱出来、 变得富裕和独立, 这会使"真诚"和"公正"的 实现更加容易, 诸如此类, 等等, 等等。

Answer

- I. 1.A 2.B 3.A 4.C 5.A 6.B 7.A 8.C 9.C 10.A
- II. 1.T 2.F
- III. 1.committing 2.of 3.with 4.be 5. the other 6.from 7.up 8.following



名人轶事



一分钟的改变

本杰明·富兰克林有一次接到一个年轻人的求教电话,并与他约好了见面的时间和地点。当年轻人如约而至时,本杰明的房门大敞着,而眼前的房子里却乱七八糟、一片狼藉,年轻人很是意外。

没等他开口,本杰明就招呼道:"你看我这房间,太不整洁了,请你在门外等候一分钟,我收拾一下,你再进来吧。"然后本杰明就轻轻地关上了房门。

不到一分钟的时间,本杰明就又打开了房门,热情地把年轻人让进客厅。这时,年轻人的眼前展现出另一番景象——房间内的一切已变得井然有序,而且有两杯倒好的红酒,在淡淡的香气里漾着微波。

年轻人在诧异中,还没有把满腹的有关人生和事业的疑难问题向本杰明讲出来,本杰明就非常客气地说道:"干杯!你可以走了。"

手持酒杯的年轻人一下子愣住了,带着一丝尴尬和遗憾说:"我还没向您请教呢……"

"这些……难道还不够吗?"本杰明一边微笑一边扫视着自己的房间说,"你进来又有一分钟了。"

"一分钟……"年轻人若有所思地说,"我懂了,您让我明白用一分钟的时间可以做许多事情,可以改变许多事情的深刻道理。"

A Humor 休闲时刻



Teacher: Why are you late for school every morning?

Tom: Every time I come to the corner, a sign says,

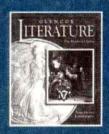
老师: 为什么你每天早晨都迟到?

汤姆: 每当我经过学校的拐角处,就看见一个牌子上写着"学校

一慢行"。

Nature 大自然(节选)

Ralph Waldo Emerson 拉尔夫·沃尔多·爱默生



本文节选自爱默生的代表作《自然》。超验主义在《自然》中有所体现。爱默生的超验主义在美国文学史上的地位是独特的,其直接在文学上产生了浪漫主义文学。



Nature is a setting that fits equally well a comic or a mourning piece. In good health, the air is a cordial of incredible virtue. Crossing a bare

common, in snow puddles², at twilight, under a clouded sky, without having in my thoughts any occurrence³ of special good fortune, I have enjoyed a perfect exhilaration⁴. I am glad to the brink⁵ of fear. In the woods too, a man casts off his years, as the snake his slough, and at what period soever of life, is always a child. In the woods, is perpetual⁶ youth. Within these plantations⁷ of God, a decorum and sanctity⁸ reign, a perennial⁹ festival is dressed, and the guest sees not how he should tire of them in a thousand years. In the woods, we return to

reason and faith. There I feel that nothing can befall me in life, — no disgrace, no calamity¹⁰, (leaving me my eyes,) which nature cannot repair. Standing on the bare ground, - my head bathed by the blithe" air, and uplifted into infinite space, — all mean egotism vanishes. I become a transparent¹² eye-ball; I am nothing; I see all; the currents of the Universal Being circulate through me; I am part or particle of God. The name of the nearest friend sounds then foreign and accidental13: to be brothers, to be acquaintances¹⁴, — master or servant, is then a trifle and a disturbance. I am the lover of uncontained and immortal beauty. In the wilderness, I find something more dear and connate15 than in streets or villages. In the tranquil landscape, and especially in the distant line of the horizon, man beholds somewhat as beautiful as his own nature.

The greatest delight which the fields and

woods minister, is the suggestion of an occult relation between man and the vegetable. I am not alone and unacknowledged. They nod to me, and I to them. The waving of the boughs in the storm, is new to me and old. It takes me by surprise, and yet is not unknown. Its effect is like that of a higher thought or a better emotion coming over me, when I deemed I was thinking justly or doing right.

Yet it is certain that the power to produce this delight, does not reside in nature, but in man, or in a harmony of both. It is necessary to use these pleasures with great temperance. For, nature is not always tricked in holiday attire, but the same scene which yesterday breathed perfume and glittered as for the frolic¹⁶ of the nymphs¹⁷, is overspread with melancholy¹⁸ today. Nature always wears the colors of the spirit. To a man laboring under calamity, the heat of his own fire hath sadness in it. Then, there is a kind of contempt of the landscape felt by him who has just lost by death a dear friend. The sky is less grand as it shuts down over less worth in the population.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. cordial ['kɔ:djəl] n. 兴奋剂, 兴奋性饮料 adj. 热忱的, 诚恳的, 兴奋的
- 2. puddle ['pʌdl] n. 水坑, 胶土, 污水坑
- 3. occurrence [əˈkʌrəns] n. 发生, 出现, 事件, 发生的事情
- 4. exhilaration [ɪg,zɪləˈreɪʃən] n. 令人高兴,愉快
- 5. brink [brɪŋk] n. (峭岸、崖的)边缘
- 6. perpetual [pəˈpetjuəl] adj. 永久的
- 7. plantation [plæn'teɪ∫ən] n. 耕地,种植园,大农场,森林,人造林,殖民地
- 8. sanctity['sæŋktɪtɪ] n. 圣洁
- 9. perennial [pəˈrenjəl] adj. 四季不断的,终年的,长期的,永久的,(植物)多年生的
- 10. calamity [kəˈlæmɪtɪ] n. 灾难,不幸事件
- 11. blithe [blaɪð] adj. 愉快的,高兴的
- 12. transparent [træns'peərənt] adj. 透明的,显然的,明晰的
- 13. accidental [.æksɪ'dentl] adj. 意外的,非主要的,附属的 n. 非本质属性,次要方面
- 14. acquaintance [əˈkweɪntəns] n. 相识, 熟人

- 15. connate['koneɪt] adj. 天生的, 先天的, 同族的
- 16. frolic ['frolik] n. 嬉闹 vi. 嬉戏 adj. 嬉戏的, 欢乐的
- 17. nymph [nɪmf] n. [希腊神话][罗马神话]居于山林水泽的仙女,美丽的少女
- 18. melancholy ['melənkəli] n. 忧郁 adj. 忧郁的



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. be glad to do sth. 乐于, 高兴做某事, 表示荣幸
 - e.g. I am very glad to meet you again.

能再次见到你, 我真的很高兴。

They are glad to visit the Summer Palace.

他们很高兴参观颐和园。

- 2. be certain that... 一定, 肯定
 - e.g. I am not at all certain that he be honest.

我根本不能肯定他是不是诚实的。

It is certain that friendly trade relation would be established through face-to-face talk.

通过面对面的交流,肯定可以建立良好的业务关系。

- 3. It is necessary to do sth. 有必要做 ······
 - e.g. It is necessary to broaden horizon by traveling for teenagers.

青少年有必要通过旅游来开阔自己的视野。

It is necessary to prepare a necklace for friend's wedding.

参加朋友的婚礼有必要准备一条项链。



Exercise 牛刀小试

- I. Write the correct letter in the blank.
- 1. In the woods too, a man casts his years.
 - A. off
- B. of

C. out

2. Standing on the bare ground, — my head by the blithe air.
A. bathe B. bathed C.bath
3. I am the lover of uncontained and beauty.
A. immortal B.mortal C.moral
4. Its effect is like that of a higher thought or a better emotion coming me.
A. on B.in C.over
5. The power to produce that delight, does not reside in nature, but in man, or in a harmony
both.
A.of B.on C. off
6. I was thinking justly or doing
A. rightly B. right C. just
7. It takes me surprise, and yet is not unknown.
A. by B. into C. of
8. The sky is less grand as it shuts over less worth in the population.
A. down B. on C. /
9. Its is like that of a higher thought or a better emotion coming over me.
A. affect B. influence C. effect
II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 Nature always wears the colors of the spirit.
2 Nature is a setting that fits equally well a comic or a mourning piece.
医静脉冲动脉 有一头存在 一一位女子一一人人
III. Complete these sentences.
1. In the woods too, a man casts off his years,the snake his slough.
2. Yet it is certain that the power to produce this delight does not reside nature.
3. To a man laboring under calamity, the heat of his own fire hath (sad) in it.
4. The waving of the boughs in the storm, is new me and old.
5. For, nature is not always tricked in holiday attire, but the same scene which yesterday
breathed perfume and glittered as the frolic of the nymphs, is overspread with
melancholy today.

参考译文

大自然 (节选)

合悲剧。身体健康时, 空气就是让人难以置信的 补剂甜酿。越过坑坑洼洼的雪地、注目晨昏曦微 光芒, 在满布乌云的天空之下, 我并未想到会有 那样一次特殊的运气,实际上却得到了一个极大 的欣喜,这欣喜甚至让我接近恐惧的边缘。同样, 在森林里,一个人抛掉他所经历过的岁月,就如 同一条蛇蜕掉自己的旧皮一样,无论处在生命的 哪个时期,都像是个孩子一样。森林会给人带来 永恒的青春年少之感。在这些上帝的庄园里, 充 溢着气派和圣洁,庆祝着四季衡续的节日、客人 们感到居此千年也不会厌倦。在森林里、我们回 归到理性和信仰。在那里, 我感到生活中没有任 何一种自然无法修复的耻辱或是不幸(除了我眼 睛的不幸),能够降临到我的身上。站在那空旷 的土地上, 我沉浸在无忧无虑而欢乐的海洋之中, 进入了一个无限空间, 所有关于自我的东西通通 一消而散。我变成了一个透明的眼球: 我本身像 没有一样, 却能看到所有事物, 宇宙万物都通过 我穿流而过, 我是上帝的一部分。此时, 连最亲 近朋友的名字也显得陌生而无足轻重: 同样无论 是兄弟, 熟人, 主人还是仆人, 都成了微不足道 且恼人之事。我热爱那不受遏抑的永恒的美。在 荒野中, 我能找到比在街道或城镇中更珍贵而自 然的东西。在静谧的风景中, 尤其是从那遥远的 地平线中,人类看到了和他本性一样美丽的东西。

荒野和森林给人们带来的巨大的愉悦暗示着

自然是一个舞台,适合喜剧的上演,同样适 人与植物之间一种神秘的关联。我并非独处而无剧。身体健康时,空气就是让人难以置信的 人回应的,它们向我点头,我也向它们致意。风甜酿。越过坑坑洼洼的雪地,注目晨昏曦微 雨中树枝的摇曳对我来说既新鲜又熟悉,它既给,在满布乌云的天空之下,我并未想到会有 我带来一种惊喜,又好似并非从未有过。这种感一次特殊的运气,实际上却得到了一个极大 觉就好像当我觉得我自己已经想得或做得很好喜,这欣喜甚至让我接近恐惧的边缘。同样, 时,一个更好的想法或是情绪出现在我脑中一样。

然而,可以肯定地说,这欢悦的力量并不存在于自然本身,而是存在于人,或者说,存在于自然与人的和谐中。对于这些喜悦加以大力节制是十分必要的。因为自然并非总是穿着节日的盛装,昨日还在仙女的嬉戏中散发芳香和闪烁光芒的景象今天就被忧伤笼罩。自然总是折射着观者的精神状态。对于一个遭受灾难的人,他内心的火焰就蕴涵着悲伤。而一个刚刚逝去爱友的人对风景都会感到些许漠然。同样当蓝天落幕于社会底层者眼前,它的壮丽也会减色。

AnswerI. 1.A 2.B 3.A 4.C 5.A 6.B 7.A 8.A 9.C II. 1.T 2.T

III. 1.as 2.in 3. sadness 4.to 5.for



美文背景



爱默生

拉尔夫·瓦尔多·爱默生(Ralph Waldo Emerson, 1803—1882),美国散文作家、思想家、诗人。 1803 年 5 月 6 日出生于马萨诸塞州波士顿附近的康考德村,1882 年 4 月 27 日在波士顿逝世。他的生命几乎横贯 19 世纪的美国,他出生时候的美国热闹却混沌,一些人意识到它代表着某种新力量的崛起,却无人能够清晰地表达出来。美国那时缺乏统一的政体,更没有相对一致的意识形态。在他去世的时候美国不但因为南北战争而统一,而且它的个性也逐渐鲜明起来,除了物质力量引人注目,文化也正在竭力走出欧洲的阴影。1837 年爱默生以《美国学者》为题发表了一篇著名的演讲辞,宣告美国文学已脱离英国文学而独立,告诫美国学者不要让学究习气蔓延,不要盲目地追随传统,不要进行纯粹的模仿。另外,这篇演讲辞还抨击了美国社会的拜金主义,强调人的价值,被誉为美国思想文化领域的"独立宣言"。一年之后,爱默生在《神学院献辞》中批评了基督教唯一神教派死气沉沉的局面,竭力推崇人的至高无上,提倡靠直觉认识真理。"相信你自己的思想,相信你内心深处认为对你合适的东西对一切人都适用……"文学批评家劳伦斯·布尔在《爱默生传》所说,爱默生与他的学说,是美国最重要的世俗宗教。

超验主义

超验主义是一种哲学思潮。它认为,由人的心智形成的观念和概念具有自主存在的性质,并且否认这些观念和概念只是人们对不断变化的经验时间的反映。赋予人的智力以巨大的强力和力量,并且认为经验在很大程度上是由人的思想所构设或产生的观念形成的。他的极端表现形式为:认为宇宙的唯一支柱是人的思想。

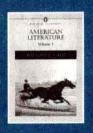
超验主义是由爱默生发起的一次文化运动,当时大部分作家都受到了这个运动的影响。超验主义者们认为人类感官只能感觉到物质的世界。对于超验主义者们来说,生命的基本实质是感官所不能触及的,只有通过直觉才能对它有所理解和领会。这导致了他们信念的中心结论:各种形式的生命体——上帝、自然和人类——都通过一种共同的灵魂,或者说超灵魂,在精神方面联合在一起。

26

Second Inaugural Address

第二次就职演说

Abraham Lincoln 亚伯拉罕·林肯



1864年当林肯再度当选连任总统职位时,美国仍为内战所分裂。当时战争的结果仍不 能确定,而林肯的再度当选,成为北方人民决心作战到底、争取最后胜利的一个令人振奋 的消息。本文是林肯的第二次就职演说。

March 4, 1865

Fellow-Countrymen,

At this second appearing to take the oath of the Presidential office there is less occasion for an extended address than there was at the first. Then a statement somewhat in detail of a course to be pursued seemed fitting and proper. Now, at the expiration of four years, during which public declarations² have been constantly called forth on every point and phase of the great contest which still absorbs the attention and engrosses3 the energies of the nation, little that is new could be presented.

The progress of our arms, upon which all else chiefly depends,

reasonably satisfactory⁴ and encouraging to all. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard to it is ventured5.

On the occasion corresponding to this four years ago all thoughts were anxiously directed to an impending civil war. All dreaded it, all sought to avert it. While the inaugural address was being delivered from this place, devoted altogether to saving the Union without war, insurgent⁶ agents were in the city seeking to destroy it without war—seeking to dissolve the Union and divide effects

by negotiation. Both parties deprecated war, but one of them would make war rather than let the nation survive, and the other would accept war rather than let it perish, and the war came.

One-eighth of the whole population were colored slaves, not distributed9 generally over the Union, but localized in the southern part of it. These slaves constituted¹⁰ a peculiar¹¹ and powerful interest. All knew that this interest was somehow the cause of the war. To strengthen, perpetuate, and extend this interest was the object for which the insurgents would rend the Union even by war, while the Government claimed no right to do more than to restrict the territorial enlargement of it. Neither party expected for the war the magnitude¹² or the duration which it has already attained. Neither anticipated that the cause of the conflict¹³ might cease with or even before the conflict itself should cease. Each looked for an easier triumph¹⁴, and a result less fundamental and astounding¹⁵. Both read the same Bible and pray to the same God, and each invokes His aid against the other. It may seem strange that any men should dare to ask a just God's assistance in wringing their bread from the sweat of other men's faces, but let us judge not, that we be not judged. The prayers of both could not be answered. That of neither has been answered fully. The Almighty has His own purposes. "Woe unto the world because of offenses16; for it must needs be that offenses come, but woe to that man by whom the offense cometh." If we shall suppose that American slavery is one of those offenses which, in the providence of God, must needs come, but which, having continued through His appointed time, He now wills to remove, and that He gives to both North and South this terrible war as the woe due to those by whom the offense came, shall we discern therein any departure¹⁷ from those divine attributes which the believers in a living God always ascribe to Him? Fondly do we hope, fervently do we pray, that this mighty scourge¹⁸ of war may speedily pass away. Yet, if God wills that it continue until all the wealth piled by the bondsman's two hundred and fifty years of unrequited toil shall be sunk, and until every drop of blood drawn with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword, as was said three thousand years ago, so still it must be said "the judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether."

With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and his orphan¹⁹, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. expiration [ˌekspaɪəˈreɪʃən] n. 满期,呼气,<古>终止
- 2. declaration [.deklə'reɪ[ən] n. 宣布, 宣言, 声明
- 3. engross [ɪn'grəus] vt. 用大字体书写, 吸引, 占用, 使全神贯注, 独占
- 4. satisfactory [ˌsætɪsˈfæktərɪ] adj. 满意的, 赎罪的
- **5. venture**['**vent**[**ə**] *n*. 冒险, 投机, 风险 *v*. 冒险, 冒昧, 斗胆, 胆敢(谦语)
- 6. insurgent[ɪn'sɜ:dʒənt] adj. 起义的
- 7. deprecate ['deprikeit] vt. 抗议,不赞成,抨击,反对,藐视,轻视
- 8. perish ['perɪʃ] vi. 毁灭, 死亡, 腐烂, 枯萎 vt. 毁坏, 使麻木
- 9. distribute [dɪs'trɪbju(:)t] vt. 分发, 分配, 散布, 分布, 分类, 分区 v. 分发
- 10. constitute['konstɪtju:t] vt. 制定(法律), 建立(政府), 组成, 任命
- 11. peculiar [pɪˈkjuːljə] adj. 奇特的, 罕见的, 特殊的 n. 特有财产, 特权
- 12. magnitude ['mægnɪtju:d] n. 大小, 数量, 巨大, 广大, 量级
- 13. conflict ['konflikt] n. 斗争, 冲突 vi. 抵触, 冲突
- 14. triumph ['traɪəmf] n. 胜利, 成功 v. 获得胜利
- 15. astounding [əˈstaundɪŋ] adj. 令人惊骇的
- 16. offense [əˈfens] n. 进攻
- 17. departure [dɪˈpɑːt∫ə] n. 启程, 出发, 离开
- **18. scourge** [skə:dʒ] n. 鞭, 笞, 苦难的根源, 灾祸 vt. 鞭打, 痛斥, 蹂躏
- **19. orphan** ['**ɔ:fən**] *n*. 孤儿,失去生母的幼小动物



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1.take the oath 宣誓、发誓

e.g. More than a million people are expected to converge on Washington on January 20 to watch Obama take the oath of office on the steps of the US Capitol and address the nation. 上百万人将于1月20日聚集在华盛顿观看奥巴马在美国国会大厦进行的宣誓就职及发表全国讲话。



Are you willing to take the oath?

你愿不愿意发誓?

- 2. in regard to (with regard to) 对于, 有关, 至于, 就……而论
 - e.g. In regard to teaching method, we have not yet discussed it.

关于教学方法, 我们还没有讨论。

I am quite at sea in regard to his explanation.

他的解释使我犹如坠入云雾中。

- 3. correspond to 相当于……, 符合于……
 - e.g. Their designs, for the most part, correspond to actual needs and regulations on environmental demand.

他们的设计绝大部分符合实际需要和有关环境要求的条例。

It has name corresponding to the facts.

它有着与事实相符的名称。



Exercise 牛刀小试

	Write	the	correct	letter	in	the	blank.

1. At this second appearing to	the oath of the	Presidential	office	there	is less	occasion
for an extended address than there w	as at the first.					

- A. have
- B. take
- C. make
- 2. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard _____ it is ventured.
 - A. to
- B. on
- C. in
- 3. They devoted altogether to _____ the Union without war.
 - A. save
- B. be saved
- C. saving

4. Neither party exp	pected for the war t	the magnitude or the	which it has already attained.
A. duration	B. during	C. due	
5 the occas	sion corresponding	to this four years ago all	thoughts were anxiously directed
to an impending	civil war.		
A. On	B. At	C. During	
6. Now, the	e expiration of fou	r years, little that is new o	could be presented.
A. at	B. with	C. within	
7. The judgments of	f the Lord are true	and altogether.	
A. right	B. rightly	C. righteous	
8. Both parties dep	recated war, but o	one of them would make	war than let the nation
survive.			busined "automeory).
A. other	B. more	C. rather	
9. Let us strive on to	o cherish a just and	d peace among ou	rselves and with all nations.
A. lasted	B. lasting	C. last	
10. That of neither	been answ	vered fully.	
A. have	B. are	C. has	
II. Write true (Γ) or false (F).		
1 One-sixtl	h of the whole pop	ulation were colored slav	es.
2 Insurgent	agents were in the	e city seeking to destroy t	he Union with war.
3The president	dent made an exter	nded address at his first In	augural Address.
III. Complete th	hese sentences.		
1. With high hope _	the future, i	no prediction in regard to	it is ventured.
2. To (stre	ength), perpetuate	, and extend this interes	st was the object for which the
insurgents would	rend the Union ev	en by war.	
3. Neither anticipate	ed that the cause _	the conflict might of	cease.
4. To extend this in	iterest was the obj	ject which the ir	nsurgents would rend the Union
even by war.			
	^		^

参考译文

第二次就职演说

1865年3月4日

各位同胞:

在这第二次的宣誓就职典礼中,不需要像第一次就职演说时那样发表长篇演说。在那个时候,对于当时所要进行的事业作一详细的说明是合适的。现在我的前四年任期已满。在这四年里,由于这场伟大的竞赛仍然吸引着人们的注意并且占据着这个国家的精力,所以它在每个时间点和阶段都不断地引出公开宣言,因为没有什么新的情况可以报告了。我们军备的进步,因为其他各方面都依靠于这一方面,所以公众了解的和我自己了解的也一样多了;而我相信,这种情况对所有人来说都是相当令人满意和鼓舞的。我们对未来抱有很高的期望,但不能冒险做出任何相关的预测。

在四年前的这个时候,所有的思绪都焦虑地指向一场即将来临的内战。所有人都害怕它,想尽了方法去避免它。那次在这里做出的就职演说完全致力于不通过战争来拯救这个国家,然而同时本城的反叛分子却设法不用战争而破坏它——他们设法通过谈判的方法来解散联邦,分裂国家。双方都声称反对战争,可是他们中的一方宁愿打仗而不愿让国家继续存在,另一方却宁可接受这场战争,也不愿国家灭亡。于是战争就来临了。

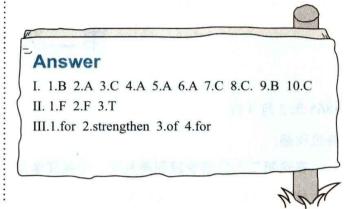
全国人口的八分之一是黑奴,他们并非遍布整个联邦,而是集中于南方地区。这些奴隶形成成了一种特殊而重大的权益。大家都知道这种权

益可以说是这场战争的起因。为了加强、保持及 扩大这种权益, 反叛分子会不惜以战争来分裂联 邦, 而政府只不过要限制这种权益所在地区的扩 张。当初,任何一方都没有想到这场战争会发展 到目前那么大的范围,持续那么长的时间。也没 有料到这场战争的起因会随战争本身的终止而终 止, 甚至会在战争本身终止以前而终止。双方都 在寻求一个较轻易的胜利,期望结局不至于涉及 根本、令人震惊。双方念诵同一本《圣经》、祈 祷同一个上帝,甚至每一方都求助同一上帝的援 助以帮助他们与另一方斗争。人们竟敢求助于上 帝,来帮助夺取他人以血汗得来的财富,这看来 是很奇怪的。可是我们还是不要对别人作出裁判, 免得别人来对我们进行裁判。双方的祈祷都不可 能得到回答、实际上双方的祈祷也都没有完全得 到回应。全能的上帝有他自己的目的。"由于罪恶、 世界承受苦难! 罪恶总是要来的; 让那个作恶的 人受苦难!"假使我们以为美国的奴隶制度是这 种罪恶之一, 而这些罪恶按上帝的意志在所难免, 但已经持续了他所指定的一段时间,他现在便要 消除这些罪恶; 假使我们认为上帝把这场惨烈的 战争加在南北双方的头上,作为对那些招致罪恶 的人的责罚,上帝的信徒们认为他具有神圣的特 性,我们是不是应该看清楚对于那些特性的任何 偏离呢?我们天真地希望着,我们热忱地祈祷着, 希望这场战争的重罚可以很快地过去。可是,假 使上帝要让战争再继续下去,直到 250 年来奴隶

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

无偿劳动所积聚的财富化为乌有,并像 3000 年前所说的那样,等到鞭笞所流的每一滴血,被刀剑之下所流的每一滴血所抵消,那么我们仍然只能说,"主的裁判是完全正确而且公道的"。

我们对任何人都不怀恶意,我们对任何人都 怀抱仁慈,上帝让我们看到正确的事,我们就坚 定地信那正确的事。让我们继续奋斗,以完成我 们正在进行的工作,去抚平国家的创伤,去照顾 艰苦作战的志士和他的孤儿遗孀,尽力实现并维 护公正和持久的和平,包括我们自己之间的和平,以及我国与各国之间的和平。



"美"事一桩



关于演说

演说是一种表达方式,是面向听众发表意见、说明事理的一个过程。演说分为竞选演说、就职演说、练习演说等。

全球十大演说家:

世界第一名潜能激励大师——安东尼·罗宾

世界第一名心理创富学大师——高安明

世界第一名推销训练大师——汤姆·霍普金斯

世界第一名人脉关系专家——哈维·麦凯

世界第一名管理大师——博恩·崔西

世界第一名催眠师——马修·史维

世界第一名汽车销售冠军——乔·吉拉德

世界第一名行销大师——杰·亚伯拉罕

纽约房地产大亨——唐纳·川普

《富爸爸穷爸爸》作者——罗伯特·清崎

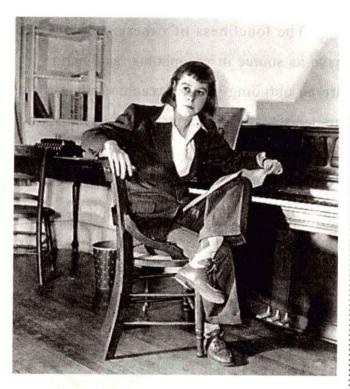
The Mortgaged Heart 做了抵押的心(节选)

Carsom McCullers

卡森·麦卡勒斯



卡森・麦卡勒斯是20世纪美国最重要的作家之一。她的作品多描写孤独的人们、孤独、孤立和疏离的主题始终贯穿在她的所有作品中、并铭刻在她个人生活的各个层面。本文是她的主要代表作之一。



This city, New York—consider the people in it, the eight million of us. An English friend of mine, when asked why he lived in New York City, said that he liked it here because he could be so alone. While it was my friend's desire to be alone, the aloneness of many Americans who live in cities is an involuntary and fearful thing. It has been said that loneliness is the

great American malady². What is the nature of this loneliness? It would seem essentially to be a quest³ for identity.

To the spectator, the amateur philosopher, no motive among the complex ricochets⁴ of our desires and rejections seems stronger or more enduring than the will of the individual to claim his identity and belong. From infancy to death, the human being is obsessed by these dual motives. During our first weeks of life, the question of identity shares urgency with the need for milk. The baby reaches for his toes, then explores the bars of his crib; again and again he compares the difference between his own body and the objects around him, and in the wavering⁵, infant eyes there comes a pristine⁶ wonder.

Consciousness of self is the first abstract problem that the human being solves. Indeed, it is this self-consciousness that removes us from lower animals. This primitive grasp of identity develops with constantly shifting emphasis through all our years. Perhaps maturity simply the history of those mutations⁷ that reveal to the individual the relation between himself and the world in which he finds himself.

After the first establishment of identity there comes the imperative need to lose this newfound⁸ sense of separateness and to belong to something larger and more powerful than the weak, lonely self. The sense of moral isolation is intolerable⁹ to us.

In the *Member of the Wedding* the lonely twelve-year-old girl, Frankie Addams, articulates¹⁰ this universal need: "The trouble with me is that for a long time I have just been an I person. All people belong to a We except me. Not to belong to a We makes you too lonesome."

Love is the bridge that leads from the I sense to the We, and there is a paradox¹¹ about personal love. Love of another individual opens a new relation between the personality and the world. The lover responds a new way to nature and may even write poetry. Love is an affirmation¹²; it motivates the yes responses and the sense of wider communications. Love casts out fear, and in the security of this togetherness we find contentment, courage. We no longer fear the age-old haunting questions: "Who am I?" "Why am I?" "Where am I going?"—and having cast our fear, we can be honest and

charitable.

For fear is a primary source of evil. And when the question "Who am I?" recurs and is unanswered, then fear and frustration project a negative attitude. The bewildered soul can answer only: "Since I do not understand 'Who I am', I only know what I am not." The corollary of this emotion incertitude is snobbism of this emotion incertitude is snobbism, intolerance and racial hate. The xenophobic individual can only reject and destroy, as the xenophobic nation inevitably makes war.

The loneliness of Americans does not have its source in xenophobia; as a nation we are an outgoing people, reaching always for immediate contacts, further experience. But we tend to seek out things as individuals, alone. The European, secure in his family ties and rigid¹⁷ class loyalties, knows little of the moral loneliness that is native to us Americans. While the European artists tend to form groups or aesthetic schools, the American artist is the



eternal maverick—not only from society in the way of all creative minds, but within the orbit of his own art.

Thoreau took to the woods to seek the ultimate meaning of his life. His creed¹⁸ was simplicity and his modus vivendi¹⁹ the deliberate stripping²⁰ of external life to the Spartan necessities in order that his inward life could freely flourish. His objective, as he put it, was to back the world into a corner. And in that way did he discover "What a man thinks of himself, that it is which determines, or rather indicates, his fate."

On the other hand, Thomas Wolfe turned is to the city, and in his wanderings around New

York he continued his frenetic and lifelong search for the lost brother, the magic door. He too backed the world into a corner, and as he passed among the city's millions, returning their stares, he experienced "That silent meeting [that] is the summary of all the meetings of men's lives."

Whether in the pastoral joys of country life or in the labyrinthine city, we Americans are always seeking. We wander, question. But the answer waits in each separate heart—the answer of our own identity and the way by which we can master loneliness and feel that at last we belong.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. involuntary[ɪn'vɒləntərɪ] adj. 自然而然的,无意的,不知不觉的,偶然的,不随意的
- 2. malady['mælədɪ] n. 疾病
- 3. quest[kwest] n. 寻求
- 4. ricochet[ˈrɪkəʃet, -ʃeɪt] n. 跳飞, 跳弹 v. (使)跳飞
- 5. waver['weɪvə] n. 动摇, 开始退让, 踌躇, 挥动者 vi.摇摆, 颤抖, 摆动, 摇曳, 犹豫
- 6. pristine['pristin] adj. 质朴的
- 7. mutation[mju(:)'teɪ∫ən] n. 变化,转变,元音变化,(生物物种的)突变
- 8. newfound['nju:faund] adj. 新发现的,新得到的
- 9. intolerable[ɪnˈtɒlərəbl] adj. 无法忍受的,难耐的
- 10. articulate[a:'tɪkjulɪt] adj. 有关节的, 发音清晰的 vt. 用关节连接,接合,清晰明白地说
- 11. paradox['pærədoks] n. 似非而是的论点,自相矛盾的话
- 12. affirmation[əfə:ˈmeɪ∫ən] n. 断言, 主张, 肯定
- 13. corollary[kəˈrɒlərɪ] n. 必然的结果, 系, 推论

- 14. incertitude[ɪn'sa:tɪtju:d] n. 不肯定,不确定,无把握
- 15. snobbism[snobizəm] n. 势利
- 16. xenophobic[,zenəu`fəubɪk,,zi:-] adj. 恐惧(或憎恨)外国人的, 恐外的
- 17. rigid['rɪdʒɪd] adj. 刚硬的, 刚性的, 严格的
- 18. creed[kri:d] n. 信条
- 19. modus vivendi[məudəs vɪ'vendɪ] n. 生活方式, 暂时妥协
- 20. strip[strip] vt. 剥, 剥去 n. 条, 带



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. reach for 伸手夫拿

e.g. Jane reached for her Chinese book.

简伸手去拿她的中文书。

I reach for some snacks.

我伸手抓点心吃。

2.remove...from 从……转移到

e.g. His family removes from the city to the countryside.

他家从城里搬到了乡下。

Alice removed unwanted records from a file.

爱丽丝把文件中不要的记录去掉了。

3. cast out 逐出, 赶出

e.g. Albert was cast out from his family.

艾伯特从家中被赶了出来。

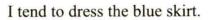
He was cast out from the club.

他被俱乐部开除了。

4.tend to 有……的倾向、往往

e.g. He tends to buy a red car.

他倾向于买一辆红色的车。



我往往穿蓝色的裙子。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I.	Write the correc	et letter in the	blank.
1.	While it was my frie cities is an involunta		be alone, the aloneness of many Americans who live in g.
	A. at	B. to	C. for
2.	It would seem essent	tially to be a quest	identity.
	A. for	B. in	C. to
3.	From infancy to deat	th, the human bein	g is obsessed these dual motives.
	A. of	B. with	C. by
4.	The baby reaches	his toes, then e	explores the bars of his crib.
	A. with	B. in	C. for
5.	This primitive grasp	of identity devel	ops with constantly shifting emphasis all our
	years.		
	A. within	B. in	C. through
6.	But the answer wait	s in each separate	e heart—the answer of our own identity and the way
	which we can r	master loneliness a	and feel that at last we belong.
	A. in	B. by	C. of
7.	While the European	artists tend	form from society in the way of all creative minds, but
	within the orbit of hi	s own art.	
	A. with	B. to	C. at
8.	Indeed, it is this self-	consciousness tha	t removes uslower animals.
	A. at	B. to	C. from

9. Thoreau took	the woods to se	eek the ultimate	e meaning of his life.	
A. for	B. to	C. in		
10. Whether in the	ne pastoral joys of c	ountry life	_ in the labyrinthine of	city, we Americans are
always seekii	ng.			
A. or	B. from	C. for		
II. Write true	(T) or false (F)			200
1 Consc	ciousness of self is	the first abstr	ract problem that the	human being solves.
Indeed, it is th	is self-consciousnes	s that removes	us from lower animals	01 - 17 - 17 - 17 - 17 - 17 - 17 - 17 -
2 Thom	nas Wolfe turned to	o the city, and	l in his wanderings	around New York he
continued his	renetic and lifelong	search for the	lost brother, the magic	door.
3 The lo	oneliness of America	ans does not ha	ive its source in xenor	ohobia; as a nation we
are an outgoin	g people.			deren an excellen
4 Thoreau	took to the city to	seek the ultima	te meaning of his life.	In 7
5 Love c	asts out fear, and i	n the security	of this togetherness	we find contentment,
courage.				
III. Complete	these sentences	· /4 -1		
1. The sense of m	noral isolation is	(tolerate) to us.	
2. While the Euro	ppean artists tend to	form from soci	ety in the way of all _	(create) minds, but
within the orbi	t of his own art.			This primitive
3. Perhaps	(mature)simply t	he history of the	hose mutations that re	eveal to the individual
the relation bet	tween himself and th	ne world in whi	ch he finds himself.	
4. After the first e	establishment of idea	ntity there com-	es the imperative need	to lose this newfound
sense of	(separate)and to	belong to sor	mething larger and me	ore powerful than the
weak, lonely se	elf.			in A.
5. What is the na	ature of this	(lonely)? I	t would seem essenti	ally to be a quest for
identity.				

参考译文

做了抵押的心(节选)

这个城市——纽约,有800万人住在里面。 有人问我的一个英国朋友为什么住在纽约,他说 他喜欢这里,是因为在这里他能以个人独处。我 朋友的愿望是希望一个人独处,然而很多住在城 市里的美国人的独处是一件无意识的、可怕的事 情。有人说孤独是美国最大的弊病。这种孤独的 本质是什么?这似乎是一种对自我的寻求。

在作为旁观者的业余哲学家看来,一个人愿望的反复是不存在什么动机的,而最强烈、最期待的动机似乎就是个体宣称其身份和归属的愿望。从婴儿期到死亡,人类一直被这双重动机困扰着。对自身身份的寻求就好像在生命的最初几周里对乳汁的需要一样急迫。婴儿摸摸自己的脚趾,然后摸索他的小床的栏杆;他一次次地比较着自己的身体和周围物体之间的不同,在他那犹豫的眼中出现了一种纯洁的惊愕。

自我意识是人类解决的第一个抽象问题。 实际上,正是这种自我意识将我们和低等动物 区分开。人对于自身的最初认识在一生中不断 地变化着。成熟的过程很可能就是一些变化的 过程,这些变化使每个人看到了自己和身处的 世界间的关系。

最初的自我意识建立起来之后, 随之而来的就是一种势在必行的需要, 它迫使人们放弃这种新建立的孤立意识, 而归属于某种比这弱小的自我更强大有力的集体。精神上的隔离感是我们无

法忍受的。

在《婚礼的成员》中,那个12岁的孤独女孩弗兰基·亚当姆斯清楚地说出了这个普遍的需要:"我的问题是很长时间以来我只是一个'我'。除了我以外,所有的人都属于一个'我们'。不属于一个'我们'让人感觉太寂寞了。"

爱是从"我"的感觉通往"我们"的桥梁,而个人的爱情中存在着一个矛盾。对另一个人的爱开辟了一种个人和世界之间的新关系。拥有爱情的人对自然有了一种新的反应,甚至可以写诗。爱情就是肯定,它激发了"是"的反应和更宽广交流的感觉。爱情驱逐了恐惧,我们在这种共处的安全感中找到了满足和勇气。我们不再害怕那些久久徘徊在我们心中的问题:"我是谁?""我为什么存在?""我将要去哪里?"——而驱逐了恐惧之后,我们可以变得诚实和博爱。

这种恐惧是罪恶的基本来源。当"我是谁?" 这个问题不断出现但得不到回答时,恐惧和挫 折感就投射出了一种负面的态度。那茫然而不 知所措的灵魂只能回答道:"我不明白'我是谁', 我只知道我不是什么。"这种情感不确定的必然 结果就是势利、不宽容和种族间的仇恨。个别 害怕陌生人或外国人的人只会拒绝和破坏,正 如害怕陌生人或外国人的国家不可避免地进行 战争一样。

但是美国人的孤独感并非来源于他们对陌生

人或外国人的害怕: 作为一个民族, 我们是一个喜欢与外界交流的民族, 我们总是积极发展与外界的直接联系和更广泛的交流。但是我们倾向于把所有物体看成独立的个体。欧洲人在他的家庭关系和坚固的阶级忠诚感中感到很安全, 他们不了解我们美国人与生俱来的那种孤独感。欧洲艺术家喜欢组成小组或美学学派, 而美国艺术家却永远是持不同意见的人——他们不仅像所有的创造性思维那样与整个社会持不同意见, 而且在他自己的艺术轨道中也是如此。

梭罗为了寻求他生命的基本含义而隐居到森林里。他的信条是简单,他的"生活方式"是人为地削减外部生活,直到达到斯巴达式的基本生活需要,这些都是为了它的内在生命能够自由地繁荣发展。正如他所说的,他的目标就是把整个

世界建成一个角落。用那种方法,他确实发现了"一个人只要坚持自己的看法,就决定或者指明了自己的命运"。

托马斯·沃尔夫从另一个方面入手,走向了城市,他在纽约各处漫步的过程中,竭尽一生,不断地狂热搜寻着他那丢失的兄弟和那扇有魔力的门。同样地,他也把世界缩减到了一个角落里,他从城市中上百万人身边经过,与他们互相对视时,他经历了"那种沉默的会面就是人类生命所有会面的总结"。

无论是生活在乡村的田园快乐中,还是在那迷宫般的城市里,我们美国人都一直在寻找。我们游逛,询问。然而那答案却藏在每颗独立的心中——那答案告诉我们自己的身份,并让我们控制孤独感,最终感到有所归属。

美文背景



自我意识

自我意识是一个人对自己的认识和评价,包括对自己心理倾向、个性心理特征和心理过程的认识 与评价。正是由于人具有自我意识,才能对自己的思想和行为进行自我控制和调节,使自己形成完整 的个性。

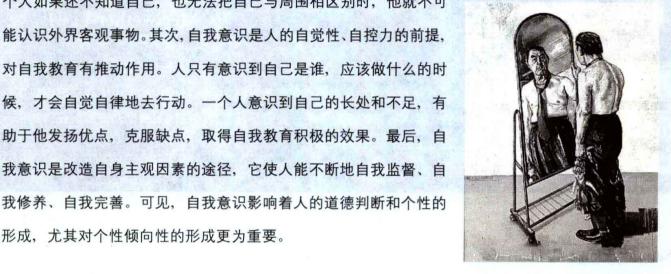
自我意识是人对自己身心状态及自己同客观世界的关系的意识。自我意识包括三个层次:对自己及其状态的认识;对自己肢体活动状态的认识;对自己思维、情感、意志等心理活动的认识。自我意识是人脑对主体自身的意识与反映,人的发展离不开周围环境,特别是人与人之间关系的制约和影响,

所以自我意识也反映人与周围现实之间的关系。自我意识是人类特有的反映形式,是人的心理区别 于动物心理的一大特征。

自我意识在个体发展中起着十分重要的作用。首先,自我意识是认识外界客观事物的条件。

个人如果还不知道自己, 也无法把自己与周围相区别时, 他就不可 能认识外界客观事物。其次,自我意识是人的自觉性、自控力的前提, 对自我教育有推动作用。人只有意识到自己是谁、应该做什么的时 候,才会自觉自律地去行动。一个人意识到自己的长处和不足,有 助于他发扬优点,克服缺点、取得自我教育积极的效果。最后、自 我意识是改造自身主观因素的途径、它使人能不断地自我监督、自

形成, 尤其对个性倾向性的形成更为重要。





I 1.B 2.A 3.C 4.C 5.C 6.B 7.B 8.C 9.B 10.A

II 1.T 2.T 3.T 4.F 5.T

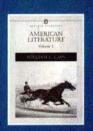
III 1. intolerable 2.creative 3. maturity 4.separateness 5.loneliness



28

Crossing the Great Divide 穿越大裂谷

Meriwether Lewis 麦里韦泽·李维斯



麦里韦泽・李维斯和威廉姆・克拉克带领着一队全心追随他们的退役士兵一起完成了 一次为期两年、全长8000英里的探险考察,他们穿越了美国在购买路易斯安那时获得的未 经勘探的领土。本文记述了这一探险过程。

Saturday, August 17th, 1805

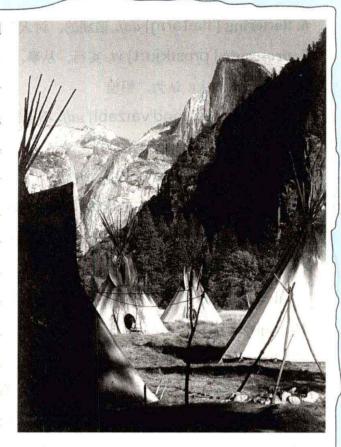
This morning I arose very early and dispatched Drewyer and the Indian down the river. I made McNeal cook the reminder of our meat which afforded a slight breakfast for ourselves and the Chifi Drewyer had been gone about 2 hours when an Indian who had straggled some little distance down the river returned and reported that the white men were coming, that he had seen them just below. They all appeared transported with joy, and the chief repeated his fraternal hug. I felt quite as much gratified at this information as the Indians appeared to be. Shortly after Capt. Clark arrived with the Interpreter Charbono, and the Indian woman, who proved to be a sister of the Chief Cameahwait. The meeting of those was really affecting, particularly between Sah-caga-we-ah and an Indian woman, who had been taken prisoner at the same time with her, and who had afterwards escaped from the Minnetares and rejoined her nation. At noon the canoes arrived,

and we had the satisfaction once more to find ourselves all together, with a flattering⁶ prospect of being able to obtain as many horses shortly as would enable us to prosecute⁷ our voyage by land and should that by water be deemed⁸ unadvisable⁹.

We now formed our camp just below the junction of the forks on the Lard side in a level smooth bottom covered with a fine turf



of greensward¹⁰. Here we unloaded our canoes and arranged our baggage on shore; formed a canopy¹¹ of one of our large sails and planted some willow brush in the ground to form a shade for the Indians to sit under while we spoke to them, which we thought it best to do this evening. Accordingly about 4 P.M. we called them together and through the medium¹² of Labuish, Charbono and Sah-ca-gawe-ah, we communicated to them fully the objects which had brought us into this distant part of the country, in which we took care to make them a conspicuous¹³ object of our own good wishes and the care of our government. We made them sensible of their dependence on the will of our government for every species of merchandise¹⁴ as well for their



defense¹⁵ and comfort, and apprised¹⁶ them of the strength of our government and its friendly dispositions¹⁷ towards them. We also gave them as a reason why we wished to penetrate¹⁸ the country as far as the ocean to the west of them was to examine and find out a more direct way to bring merchandise to them. That as no trade could be carried on with them before our return to our homes that it was mutually advantageous¹⁹ to them as well as to ourselves that they should render²⁰ us such aids as they had it in their power to furnish²¹ in order to hasten²² our voyage and of course our return home.

Vocabulary 新鲜酷词 如 admisque book as H as

- 1. straggle ['strægl] v. 迷路,落伍,蔓生,四散,漫延 n. 散乱
- 2. fraternal [frə'ta:nl] adj. 兄弟的,兄弟般的,友爱的
- 3. gratify [ˈgrætɪfaɪ] vt. 使满足
- 4. particularly [pəˈtɪkjʊləlɪ] adv. 独特地,显著地
- **5. canoe** [kə'nu:] *n*. 独木舟, 轻舟

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

- 6. flattering ['flætərɪŋ] adj. 谄媚的, 讨人欢喜的, 奉承的, (照片等)比真人更美丽的
- 7. prosecute ['prosikju:t] vt. 实行, 从事, 告发, 起诉 vi. 告发, 起诉, 做检察官
- 8. deem [di:m] v. 认为,相信
- 9. unadvisable ['ʌnəd'vaɪzəbl] adj. 不得当的
- 10. greensward ['gri:nswo:d] n. 草皮
- 11. canopy ['kænəpɪ] n. 天篷, 遮篷
- 12. medium ['mi:djəm] n. 媒体,方法,媒介 adj. 中间的,中等的,半生熟的
- 13. conspicuous [kən'spɪkjʊəs] adj. 显著的
- 14. merchandise ['mə:t∫əndaɪz] n. 商品, 货物
- 15. defense [dr'fens] n.(D-)(美国)国防部, 防卫, 防卫物 vt. 谋划抵御
- 16. apprise [əˈpraɪz] vt. 通知
- 17. disposition [dɪspəˈzɪ∫ən] n. 部署
- 18. penetrate['penɪtreɪt] vt. 穿透, 渗透, 看穿, 洞察 vi. 刺入, 看穿, 渗透, 弥漫
- 19. advantageous [ˌædvən'teɪdʒəs] adj. 有利的
- **20. render** ['rendə] *vt.* 呈递, 归还, 着色, 汇报, 致使, 放弃, 表演, 实施 *vi.* 给予补偿 *n.* 缴 纳, 粉刷, 打底
- **21. furnish** [ˈfəːnɪʃ] *vt*.供应,提供,装备,布置 v. 供给
- 22. hasten ['heɪsn] v.催促, 赶紧, 促进, 加速



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. at the same time 与此同时, 然而
 - e.g. He is good at painting; at the same time, he likes swimming very much.

他擅长绘画; 与此同时, 他还十分喜欢游泳。

I feel bound to condemn his action, at the same time I do not think we should be too severe on him.

我觉得要谴责他的行为,不过我认为不应该对他过分严厉。



e.g. Please take care to protect this book.

请精心保护好这本书。

Tina took care to finish her dissertation.

蒂娜十分认真地完成她的毕业论文。

3. find out 找出,发明,查明

e.g. He finally found out that what people had believed for hundreds of years is wrong.

他最终发现人们几百年来一直所相信的是错误的。

He found out the reasons at last.

他终于找出了其中的原因。

4. carry on 继续, 从事, 争吵

e.g. Vivian carried on learning her lessons after a short break.

薇薇安在短暂休息之后继续她的课程。

From the beginning of this month, Robert carried on helping his teacher comprise the book.

自这个月初开始, 罗伯特一直在帮他的老师编书。

5. as well as 同时, 也, 而且

e.g. She is smart, as well as hard-working.

她不但聪明, 而且努力。

China's great civilization attracts attention from the whole world, as well as its long history.

中国的伟大文明以及它的悠久历史引起全世界的瞩目。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. I felt quite as much gratified at this information ____ the Indians appeared to be.

A. as

B. for

C. in

-		
	2.	We made them sensible their dependence on the will of our government for every
		species of merchandise as well for their defense and comfort, and apprised them of the
		strength of our government and its friendly dispositions towards them.
		A. for B. of C. at
	3.	We also gave them as a reason we wished to penetrate the country as far as the ocean
		to the west of them was to examine and find out a more direct way to bring merchandise to
		them.
		A. what B. that C. why
	4.	That as no trade could be carriedwith them before our return to our homes that it was
		mutually advantageous to them as well as to ourselves that they should render us such aids
		as they had it in their power to furnish in order to hasten our voyage and of course our return
		home.
		A. on B. with C. to
	5.	At noon the canoes arrived, and we had the satisfaction once more to find ourselves all
		together, with a flattering prospect of being able to obtain as many horses shortly as would
		enable us our voyage by land and should that by water be deemed unadvisable.
		A. to prosecute B. prosecute C. prosecuting
	6.	I felt quite as much gratified this information as the Indians appeared to be.
		A. in B. at C. on All the state of the state
	7.	We now formed our camp just below the junction of the forks on the Lard side in a level
		smooth bottom covered a fine turf of greensward.
		A. by B. on C. with
	R	Accordingly about 4 p.m. we called them together and through the medium of Labuish,
	0.	Charbono and Sah-ca-ga-we-ah, we communicated to them fully the objects which had
		brought us into this distant part of the country, in which we took care them a conspicuous
		object of our own good wishes and the care of our government.
	0	
	9.	Here we unloaded our canoes and arranged our baggage on shore; formed a canopy of one of
		our large sails and planted some willow brush in the ground to form a shade for the Indians to
		sit under while we spoke them, which we thought it best to do this evening.
		A. with B. to C. at

	1.000	as really affecting, particularly between Sah-ca-ga-we-ah and
an I	ndian woman, who h	ad been taken prisoner at the same time with her, and who had
after	wards escaped ti	he Minnetares and rejoined her nation.
A./	B. to	C. from
II. Wr	ite true (T) or fals	se (F).
1.	This essay was writte	en on August 17th, 1805, a Sunday.
2.	I made McNeal co	ok the reminder of our meat which afforded a slight breakfast
for o	arselves and the Chifi	Drewyer had been gone about 2 hours when an Indian who had
stragg	gled some little distan	ce down the river returned and reported that the white men were
comi	ng, that he had seen the	em just below.
3.	In the evening the	canoes arrived, and we had the satisfaction once more to find
ourse	lves all together, with	a flattering prospect of being able to obtain as many horses shortly
as wo	ould enable us to pros	secute our voyage by land and should that by water be deemed
unady	visable.	
4	Shortly after Capt. C	lark arrived with the Interpreter Charbono, and the Indian woman,
who p	proved to be a sister of	the Chief Cameahwait.
5	We also gave them	as a reason why we wished to penetrate the country as far as the
ocean	to the east of them wa	as to examine and find out a more direct way to bring merchandise
to the	m.	
III. Co	omplete these sent	ences.
1. They	all appeared transporte	ed with joy, and the chief repeated hishug.
2. At no	on the canoes arrive	d, and we had the satisfaction once to find ourselves all
togeth	er.	THE REPORT OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PERSON OF
3. The r	neeting of those was	really(affect), particularly between Sah-ca-ga-we-ah and
an In	dian woman, who ha	d been taken prisoner at the same time with her, and who had
afterv	vards escaped from the	Minnetares and rejoined her nation.
4. Here	we(load) our ca	noes and arranged our baggage on shore.
5. We m	ade them sensible of	their dependence on the will of our government for every species
of me	rchandise asfor	their defense and comfort, and apprised them of the strength of
our go	overnment and its frier	adly dispositions towards them.
	_	

参考译文

穿越大裂谷

1805年8月17日星期六

这天早晨我很早就起了床, 派德鲁叶和那个 印第安人顺河而下、让希尔兹去打猎、让麦克尼 尔把我们剩下的肉煮熟, 为我们和酋长做了点便 饭。在德鲁叶出发了两个小时左右,一个印第安 人沿着河独自闲逛了一段距离之后回来了, 并且 报告说白人们要回来了, 因为他就在下面看到了 他们。他们所有的人都表现出激动和狂喜, 酋长 不停地拥抱着。听到这个消息, 我和那些印第安 人感到同样高兴。过了不久, 克拉克船长就和卡 波诺,随同一个印第安女人一起来了。之后我们 得知那个女人是卡米沃酋长的姐姐。那些人相见 的场面真的很感人, 尤其是萨卡噶为阿和一个印 第安妇女的见面更是令人感动。那个印第安妇女 曾经和她同时被囚禁,后来从米内塔勒斯逃走并 回到了她的族人中间。中午时分,独木舟到了, 我们又感到十分满足, 因为我们聚齐了。舟上的 人还告诉我们,我们很快就会得到很多马来旅行, 这样就不怕水路不可行了。

接着,我们在河左岸分岔路的交叉点下方发现了一块很好的平坦的草地,于是便在此支起了帐篷。我们在这里卸下了独木舟里的东西,并把行李都安放在岸上。我们用一张大帆支起了一个天篷,并在地上插了一些柳树枝,以便让印第安人在和我们谈话的时候能够坐在柳树枝的树荫下。我们认为,最好当天傍晚就和印第安人谈话。

所以,到了下午四点左右,我们便把他们叫到了一起,通过拉布士、卡波诺和萨卡噶为阿的翻译,我们向他们充分地阐述了我们来到这个国家的边远地区的目的。其间我们着重强调了我们的祝福以及政府的关心。通过交流,他们明确认识到,无论是他们的每种货物,还是他们的安全防卫和舒适生活都要依靠我们的政府。我们还将我们政府的强大及其对他们的关心加以告知,同时告诉他们,我们之所以要深入到他们再往西的海岸,就是要勘察并发现一条能更直接地把商品带给他们的通路。为了使我们返回之后能够与他们进行互惠交易,他们需要帮助我们完成我们的旅行和返航。

Answer

- I. 1.A 2.B 3.C 4.A 5.A 6.B 7.C 8.A 9.B 10.C
- II. 1.F 2.T 3.F 4.T 5.F
- III. 1. fraternal 2.more 3.affecting 4. unloaded 5.well



美文背景

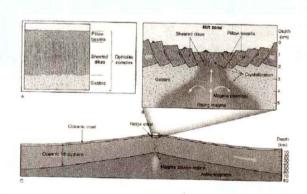
()

裂谷的产生

大陆裂谷有主动式裂谷和被动式裂谷两大类。

主动式裂谷,是因为地下热点的岩浆上涌,岩浆上涌到岩石圈后被阻挡,然后它就像上升气流到达对流层顶部不能再上升一样,只好向四周水平流动,气流水平流动导致形状像打铁的砧子一样的积雨云的出现,而由于岩浆十分黏稠,岩浆的水平流动对上面的岩石有较大的摩擦拖拽作用,导致岩石圈出现分裂趋势。如果有两个或两个以上的热点比较靠近,岩石圈就很可能在这种拖拽作用下沿着热点的连线裂开,成为大陆裂谷。因此主动式大陆裂谷的成因与大洋中脊的成因是相同的。事实上,主动式大陆裂谷如果持续发展,最终都将发展成大洋。除了东非大裂谷以外,著名的主动式大陆裂谷还有红海向北延伸的约旦河谷,其中最低处就是死海。另外还有美国西部的死谷。现在也有人认为贝加尔湖裂谷是主动式大陆裂谷。

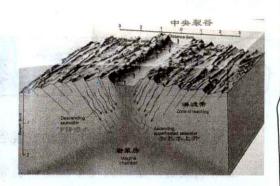
其实主动式大陆裂谷又分为两类,一种是原生性主动式大陆裂谷,也就是像东非大裂谷和死谷这样的,由地下长期活动的原生性热点造成。所谓原生性热点,是由于地幔中下部放射性物质衰变释放的大量热能,熔化了软流圈,并在软流圈局部导致岩浆对流上涌。另外还有一种次生性热点,这种热点不是地幔深处物质被加热



上升形成的,而是某海洋板块俯冲到另一板块下之后,板块前缘冲进软流圈,被高温熔化,并且由于构成板块的地壳物质密度小,因此熔融后会迅速上升形成次生性热点。由次生性热点形成的大陆裂谷,由于板块熔化后形成的岩浆上升很快,因此这种裂谷大多发展很快,迅速地度过了大陆裂谷期,进一步演化成弧后盆地。一些弧后盆地已经具备了大洋地壳,成为大洋的雏形。中国东北的松嫩平原一辽河平原—渤海—华北平原,可以认为是一个超大型的次生性主动大陆裂谷,而东海则是已经扩展成海洋的大陆次生性主动大陆裂谷,南海、日本海的海底已经具备了大洋地壳,是发展到极致的次生性主动大陆裂谷。由于俯冲时板块熔融并不一定在一条线上发生,因此次生性主动大陆裂谷常常不是形成

一条长而窄的线形谷地,而是有相当大的宽度,所以这种裂谷常常不表现为谷地的形状。主动式裂谷的主要特征是伴随有强烈的岩浆活动,常常有火山喷发。

被动式大陆裂谷产生的原因与地下的岩浆活动无关,而是来自水平方向的作用力。 具体地说,当板块之间有水平作用力时,有的地方会发生挤压,有的地方会发生侧向的扭转走滑,而有的地方则发生拉伸张裂。在有张裂的地方,就会形成被动式大陆裂谷。 最典型的例子就是中国的汾渭谷地和银川—河套平原。



青藏高原受印度板块挤压,向东北方向运动,遇到鄂尔多斯地块的阻挡,于是向两侧鄂尔多斯地块挤出,也就是鄂尔多斯地块东南面的秦岭—太行山—带向东运动,西北面的贺兰山—阴山—带向北运动,导致在鄂尔多斯地块与这些山体之间被拉伸张裂,形成被动式大陆裂谷。陕西南部的汉中盆地,一般也认为是将秦岭与四川盆地撕裂的被动式大陆裂谷。前面提到的贝加尔湖,有些科学家认为是主动式大陆裂谷,也有人认为是被动式大陆裂谷。被动式大陆裂谷一般没有或少有岩浆和火山作用,也很难进一步发展成为大的海洋。

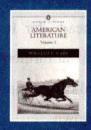
The Earth on Turtle's Back

29

龟背上的土地

Onondaga

昂昂达嘎



神话产生于人类解释生命开端的需要,是人们代代相传的传统故事,大多数是关于神灵精怪的。我们把这些重述早期生命起源的故事称为起源神话。本文为美国土著人的起源 神话。

Retold by Michael J. Caduto and Joseph Bruchac

Before this Earth existed, there was only water. It stretched¹ as far as one could see, and in that water there were birds and animals swimming around. Far above, in the clouds, there was a Skyland. In that Skyland there was a great and beautiful tree. It had four white roots which stretched to each of the sacred² directions, and from its branches all kinds of fruits and flowers grew.

There was an ancient chief in the Skyland. His young wife was expecting³ a child, and one night she dreamed that she saw the Great Tree uprooted⁴. The next day she told her husband the story.

He nodded as she finished telling her dream.

"My wife," he said, "I am sad that you had

this dream. It is clearly a dream of

great power and, as is our

way, when one has

such a powerful

dream we

must do

all



we can do to make it true. The Great Tree must be uprooted."

Then the Ancient Chief called the young men together and told them that they must pull up the tree. But the roots of the tree were so deep, so strong, that they could not budge⁵ it. At last the Ancient Chief himself came to the tree. He wrapped⁶ his arms around it, bent his knees and strained⁷. At last, with one great effort, he uprooted the tree and placed it on its side. Where the tree's roots had gone deep into the Skyland was now a big hole. The wife of the chief came close and leaned over to look down, grasping⁸ the tip of one of the Great Tree's branches to steady her. It seemed as if she saw something down there, far below, glittering⁹ like water. She leaned out further to look and, as she leaned, she lost her balance and fell into the hole. Her grasp slipped off the tip of the branch, leaving her with only a handful of seeds as she fell, down, down, down, down.

Far below, in the waters, some of the birds and animals looked up.

"Someone is falling toward us from the sky," said one of the birds.

"We must do something to help her," said another. Then two Swans flew up. They caught the woman from the sky between their wide wings. Slowly, they began to bring her down toward the water, where the birds and animals were watching.

"She is not like us," said one of the animals. "Look, she doesn't have webbed feet. I don't think she can live in the water."

"What shall we do them?" said another of the water animals.

"I know," said one of the water birds. "I have heard that there is Earth far below the waters. If we dive¹⁰ down and bring up Earth, then she will have a place to stand."

So the birds and animals decided that someone would have to bring up Earth. One by one they tried.

The Duck dove first, some say. He swam down and down, far beneath¹¹ the surface, but could

not reach the bottom12 and floated back up. Then the

Beaver tried. He went even deeper, so deep

that all was dark, but he could not

reach the bottom either.

The Loon tried,

swimming with

his strong

wings.

He



was gone a long, long time, but he, too, failed to bring up Earth. Soon it seemed that all had tried and all had failed. Then a small voice spoke.

"I will bring up Earth or die trying."

They looked to see who it was. It was Tiny Muskrat. She dove down and swam and swam. She was not as strong or as swift as the others, but she determined. She went so deep that it was all dark, but still she swam deeper. She swam so deep that her lungs¹³ felt ready to burst, but she swam deeper still. At last, just as she was becoming unconscious¹⁴, she reached out one small paw¹⁵ and grasped at the bottom, barely touching it before she floated¹⁶ up, almost dead.

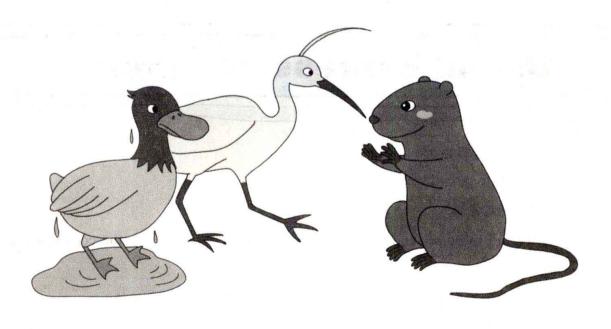
When the other animals saw her break the surface they thought she had failed. Then they saw her right paw was held tightly shut¹⁷.

"She has the Earth," they said. "Now where can we put it?"

"Place it on my back," said a deep voice. It was the Great Turtle, who had come up from the depths.

They brought the Muskrat over to the Great Turtle and placed her paw against his back. To this day there are marks at the back of the Turtle's shell which were made by the Muskrat's paw. The tiny bit of Earth fell on the back of the Turtle. Almost immediately, it began to grow larger and larger and larger until it became the whole world.

Then the two Swans brought the Sky Woman down. She stepped onto the new Earth and opened her hand, letting the seeds fall onto the bare soil. From those seeds the grass sprang up. Life on Earth had begun.





Vocabulary 新鲜酷词 work that the time to the transfer of the time to the time to

- 1. stretch [stret[] v. 伸展, 伸长
- 2. sacred['seɪkrɪd] adj. 神的, 宗教的, 庄严的, 神圣的
- 3. expect [ɪks'pekt] vt. 期待, 预期, 盼望, 指望, <口>(料)想, 认为
- 4. uproot [Ap'ru:t] vt. 连根拔起、根除
- 5. budge [bʌdʒ] v. 移动
- 6. wrap [ræp] vt. 包装, 卷, 缠绕, 包, 覆盖, 裹, 遮蔽, 隐藏
- 7. strain [strein] vt. 扭伤, 损伤 v. 拉紧, 扯紧, (使)紧张, 尽力
- 8. grasp [gra:sp] vt. 抓住, 抓紧, 掌握, 领会
- 9. glitter['glɪtə] vi. 闪闪发光, 闪烁, 闪光
- 10. dive[daɪv] vi. 潜水, 跳水, 下潜, 俯冲
- **11. beneath** [bɪˈni:θ] *adv.* 在······之下 *prep.* 在······之下
- 12. bottom['botəm] n. 底, 底部, 尽头, 末端
- 13. float[flout] vi. 浮动, 飘浮, 散播, 摇摆, 漂浮, 动摇, (计划等)付诸实行
- **14. lung** [lʌη] n. 肺, 呼吸器, 肺脏
- **15. unconscious** [ʌnˈkɒn∫əs] *adj.* 不省人事的,未发觉的,无意识的
- 16. paw[po:] n. 手掌, 手爪
- **17. shut** [∫∧t] ν. 关上, 闭上, 关闭



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. fail to do 做某事失败

e.g. He failed to pass the exam.

他没有通过考试。

If we fail to do so, and allow the disease to overwhelm US, the consequences will be catastrophic.

如果我们做不到这一点而让这种疾病肆虐的话,其结果是灾难性的。



2. reach out 伸出, 触及

eg. Everybody tried to reach out to those affected by the recent earthquake.

人人都努力向最近受到地震灾害的人们伸出援助之手。

They rebuilt the cinemas in an effort to reach out to the young people.

他们重建了电影院, 试图吸引青年人。

3. spring up 涌出, 涌现出

eg. After World War II, new nations spring up like bamboo shoots after spring rain.

第二次世界大战以后,新国家如同雨后春笋似地涌现出来。

In recent years, many new factories have spring up in my home town.

最近几年, 我的家乡涌现出很多新工厂。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the cor	rect letter in the blan	k.
1. It stretched as far around.	r as one could see, and in t	that water there were birds and animals
A. swimming	B. swim	C. swam
2. It had four white	e roots which stretched _	each of the sacred directions, and from its
branches all kind	s of fruits and flowers grew	
A. to	B. with	C./
3. His young wife wuprooted.	wasa child, and one	e night she dreamed that she saw the Great Tree
A. having	B. expecting	C. wanting
4. The next day she	her husband the stor	
A. said	B. told	C. spoke
5. He nodded as she	finished her dream	m.
A. telling	B. to tell	C. in telling

6. It is clearly a dr	eam of great power	er and, as is our way, when one has such a powerful dream
we must do all v	we can do to	
A. make	B. come	C. change
7. Then the Ancie	nt Chief called th	e young men together and told them that they must pul
the tree.		
A. down	B. into	C. up
8. He was gone a l	ong, long time, bu	t he, too, failed to bring Earth.
A. down	B. into	C. up
9. It was the Great	Turtle, who had c	ome from the depths.
A. up	B. in	C. on
10 last, just	as she was beco	oming unconscious, she reached out one small paw and
grasped at the l	bottom, barely tou	ching it before she floated up, almost dead.
A. At	B. In	C. On
II. Write true ((T) or false (F)	
1 It was	Tiny Muskrat that	finally bring up Earth from the bottom of the sea.
2 Some s	say that the Duck	dove first but failed.
3 The Gr	reat Turtle was wit	th other animals there all the time.
4 The ar	nimals brought th	ne Muskrat over to the Great Turtle and placed her pay
against his back		
5 The Ar	ncient Chief called	I the young men together and told them that they must pul
up the tree.		
III. Complete t	these sentences	S.
1. The woman does	sn't have	feet, so that it is necessary to get a place for her to stand.
2. It stretched as t	far as one could s	see, and that water there were birds and animals
swimming arour	nd.	
3. The wife of the	chief came close a	nd leaned over to look, grasping the tip of one of the
Great Tree's bran	nches to steady he	r.
4. She swam so dec	ep her lungs	felt ready to burst, but she swam deeper still.
5. Far below, in the	e waters, some of t	the birds and animals looked
		A. Felling

参考译文

龟背上的土地

由迈克尔 .J. 卡杜托, 约瑟夫·布鲁卡克复述 在土地存在之前,世上只有水。一个人能看 到多远,那水就伸展到多远,鸟儿和动物都在水 里游来游去。在水的上方很远的地方,有一片"天 陆"。在那片"天陆"上,长着一颗巨大美丽的树。 它有四条白色的根,每条伸向一个神圣的方向, 而它的枝条上长着各种果实和花朵。

在那片"天陆"上住着一个老首领。他年轻的妻子怀了孕。一天夜里,她梦见那棵大树被连根拔起。第二天,她把这个梦讲给了她的丈夫。

在她讲完了她的梦以后,他点点头,说:"我的妻子,你做的这个梦让我感到很悲伤。这很显然是个具有巨大力量的梦。按照我们的传统,当有人做了这样一个有力的梦时,我们就要尽力让它实现。大树必须被连根拔起。"

然后老首领就把所有的年轻人叫到一起,告诉他们必须把那棵树拔起来。可是那棵树的根扎得那么深,他们根本就推不动它。最后老首领自己走到树前。他双臂抱着树干,弯下膝盖,身体紧绷着。终于,他猛地用了一下力,把那棵树连根拔了起来,平放在了地上。这棵树原本深深扎根的那块"天陆"现在就变成了一个大洞。首领的妻子走近前来,抓住大树的一根树枝稳住身子。探身向下看,她好像在下面很远的地方看见有什么东西像水一样熠熠生辉,于是又向前探了探身子,想看清楚。就在她向前探身的时候,她失去了平衡,掉进了那个洞里。她的手从那树枝上滑

由迈克尔 .J. 卡杜托, 约瑟夫·布鲁卡克复述 : 下来的时候抓了一把种子, 然后她就一直向下掉, 在土地存在之前, 世上只有水。一个人能看 : 向下, 向下, 向下……

在远远的下方,有些鸟和动物在水中向上望去。

"有人从天上朝我们这儿掉下来了。"有一只 鸟说。

"我们应该帮帮她。"另一只鸟说。然后就有两只天鹅向上飞去,它们把那从天上掉下来的女人架在宽阔的翅膀之间。慢慢地,它们带着她向水面飞来,而鸟儿和动物们都在水中看着。

"她不像我们,"一只动物说,"看,她的脚上没有蹼。我想她不能生活在水里。"

"那我们应该怎么办呢?"另一只水里的动物问道。

"我知道。"有只水鸟说,"我听说在水下很远的地方有泥土,如果我们潜水下去,把泥土拿上来的话,她就可以有个地方站了。"

于是鸟儿和动物们就决定要由谁去把泥土拿 上来,它们一个接一个地尝试。

有的说,是鸭子第一个潜了下去。它向下游啊游,到了水下面很远的地方,但是没碰到底就又浮了上来。然后轮到海狸,它潜得更深,深得周围一片黑暗,但是它也碰不到底。潜鸟开始尝试。它用它那强壮的翅膀努力地游着,可是过了很长很长时间,它仍然没能把泥土拿上来。不久,好像所有的动物都尝试过了,但都失败了。然后有一个小小的声音说话了:"我要是不把泥土拿

上来,就死在水下。"

它们都想看看那是谁,原来是小麝鼠。它潜入水下,游啊游。它不像其他动物那样强壮,也不像它们那样敏捷,可是它有坚定的决心。它潜到周围一片黑暗的深处,仍然向更深处游去。它游得那么深,它的肺都要爆炸了,可它还是向更深处游去。最后,就在它快要失去知觉的时候,它伸出了一只小爪子,抓到了水底。它刚刚碰到底,就向上浮去,那时它几乎已经死了。

当其他动物看见它浮出水面的时候,它们 以为它失败了。然后它们看见它的右爪紧紧攥 在一起。

"它拿到泥土了。"它们说,"现在我们能把 土放在哪儿呢?"

"放在我的背上吧。"一个深沉的声音说。那是大争、它是从水下的深处上来的。

于是它们把麝鼠放在大龟身上,把它的爪子 放在它的背上。直到今天,龟壳上还有麝鼠爪子 留下的痕迹。那一点儿泥土刚一落到龟背上,马 上就开始变得越来越大,越来越大,直到变成了 整个世界。

然后那两只天鹅就带着天上的女人落到了地上。她踏上了新的土地,张开手,让手里的种子掉到光秃秃的地面上,从那些种子里长出了树和草。地上的生命开始了。

美文背景

关于人类起源的五大传说

1. 犹太教和基督教共同的神话:亚当和夏娃

犹太教《旧约》和基督教《圣经》包含了两个神话起源故事,这两个故事被现今的犹太教和基督教所认可信仰。在第一个神话故事中,上帝说:"让这儿出现光芒!"随后光就出现了,在6天的时间里,上帝创造了天空、陆地、行星、太阳和月亮以及包括人类的所有动物。

在第二个神话故事中,上帝在地面上创造了第一个人类——亚当。上帝为亚当创造了一个伊甸园让他无忧无虑地生活,但是禁止他吃伊甸园树上结的果实,这些果实来自善良和邪恶意识之树。亚当的生活太寂寞孤单,





于是上帝从亚当身体上抽出一根肋骨,创造了第一个女人夏娃。一条会说话的大毒蛇诱惑说服夏 娃吃了禁果,之后夏娃又说服亚当也吃下了禁果。上帝发现此事后,驱除亚当和夏娃离开伊甸园, 让他们成为凡人。

2.印度神话: 宇宙论与梵天

在最早的吠陀梵语的吠陀经中描述了古印度神话,无比巨大的神灵普鲁沙 长着数千个头、眼睛和脚,他包裹着整个地面,他的10根手指延伸可以扩展 空间。

当天神们向普鲁沙献出祭品时,普鲁沙身体上生成清澈的黄油,这些黄油 形成了鸟类和动物。后来普鲁沙的身体转变为世界万物的基础,以及形成火神 阿格尼、主管雷雨及战争的天神因陀罗等。同时,在他的身体上建立了印度社 会的四个等级:牧师、武士、平民和仆人。根据之后的历史发展,三位一体的 宇宙最高永恒实体梵天出现了,他是众生之父。此外,三位一体的天神还包括 守护之神毗瑟和破坏神施瓦。



梵天创造了宇宙万物,并持续了 43.2 亿年,之后破坏神施瓦摧残了宇宙秩序,并开启了新的循环,使每个人得到了舒缓,当前的宇宙循环状态还有数 10 亿年才能结束。

3. 中国古代神话:盘古开天,女娲造人

宇宙之卵漂浮在永恒空间之中,它包括两个反作用力: 阴和阳。经过 无数次轮回,盘古诞生了,宇宙之卵中较重的部分——阴下落形成了地面, 较轻的部分——阳上升形成了天空。

盘古担心天和地再次融合在一起,就用手脚支撑着天和地,他每天长高 10 英尺,1.8 万年之后天空已有 3 万英里高,盘古的任务完成后就死了,



他的身体部分变成了宇宙的基本物质。女神女娲非常寂寞,她从黄河水中捞出泥巴来制作泥人,这样第一个人类出现了,随后她用树枝蘸上泥巴向地面上甩,无数个小泥点形成了人类。

4. 远古埃及神灵: 世界开始于混沌状态



在埃及古代神话中,最初世界是混沌无序的。天神阿图姆希望自己具有灵魂和肉体,之后他创造了一座小山,否则在这个混沌的世界里他没有立足之地。

阿图姆是一个没有性别的天神,他的眼睛能看到一切事情。他从嘴里吐出一个儿子舒——空气之神;然后又吐出了一个女儿特夫努特——湿气女神。他们两个天神负责重新改变宇宙混沌状态的任务,舒和特夫努特建立了土地之神格布和天空之神努特。起初格布和努特互相缠绕在一起,后来格布将努特举了起来,新的世界秩序逐渐建立了起来,但是舒和特夫努特消失在了黑暗之中。

阿图姆挖出了自己的眼睛用来寻找舒和特夫努特,最后舒和特夫努特再次返回到阿图姆的身边, 阿图姆十分高兴,眼泪激动得流了下来,一滴滴眼泪落在地面上就形成了人类。

5. 巴比伦神话: 魔力女神死后造就天与地



埃利什与水神阿普苏和蒂马特产卵生育了数代天神。这些晚辈天神中伊阿是长兄,他的身边有许多个弟弟。然而,这些年纪不大的小天神很吵闹,让阿普苏和蒂马特无法入睡,于是阿普苏密谋策划要杀死这些小天神。然而消息不胫而走,伊阿抢先动手首先将阿普苏杀死。

蒂马特得知噩耗后发誓要进行报仇,她创造了许多怪物,其中包括疯狗、蝎人、半牛人和巨龙等。伊拉和女神达姆基娜创造了马杜克(长着四个眼睛和四个耳朵),马杜克成为伊拉和达姆基娜的保护武神,在马杜克和蒂马特的恶战中,马杜克用一支箭射中了蒂马特的心脏。

马杜克将蒂马特的身体撕成两半,创建了天与地,之后马杜克创造了人类,让人类去做天神不 愿做的苦力差事,如耕作和商业买卖等。

名言锦句

The man who has made up his mind to win will never say "Impossible".

-Napoleon

凡是决心取得胜利的人是从来不说"不可能"的。

Answer

- I. 1.A 2.A 3.B 4.B 5.A 6.A 7.C 8.C 9.A 10.A
- II. 1.T 2.T 3.F 4.T 5.T
- III. 1.webbed 2.in 3. down 4. that 5. up



Part 5 American Science 美国自然科学

美国的科学课程教育是整合的教育。从 20 世纪 60 年代的课程改革以来,美国科学课程的整合就已经拉开序幕。在美国,幼儿园至 8 年级(相当于我国的初中二年级)的科学教育早就是综合性的了。科学课程的整合一方面是由于科技的迅猛发展,各门自然科学之间的界限变得越来越模糊,边缘学科异军突起,所以加强学科之间的整合是必然的趋势;另一方面,科学课程进行有效整合也可以部分解决课程日益繁多的问题,为中小学生适当减负。

美国科学课程教科书也有自己的特点。

- (一)图文并茂,编写生动有趣。美国的科学课本可以比得上插图精美的词典。课本生动地介绍目前科技的新发现,向学生提出有趣的问题,为学生提供很有帮助的动手操作的指导语,等等。
- (二)与社会联系紧密,实用性强。在科学教育中渗透职业意识是美国科学课程的一个显著特点。 比如在高中化学教科书中就有专门章节介绍与化学相关的职业。这些介绍让学生了解到学好化学 就可以并且能够从事这些具体职业。在中小学科学教育中加强职业意识的渗透,有助于调动学生 学习科学的积极性,也有助于学生通过科学学习确定未来的职业选择。

《美国国家科学教育标准》号召学生通过参与一些既具有挑战性又适合他们发展水平的设计活动项目,来培养技术设计的能力,包括发现和描述问题的能力,设计解决方案(包括成本与风险、效益分析)、实施解决方案并评价解决方案的能力,针对问题、设计和解决方案进行交流的能力。如设计一个家庭阳台的美化布置方案,设计满足营养标准的食谱,为学校某个区域选择植物,设计一种方法来固定物体或移动物体,设计一个天平用于比较两个物体的重量,设计警报装置的电路,等等。《美国国家科学教育标准》中提供了一个设计的例子:每个小组用两周的时间制作一个乐器,然后与班上其他组同学交流讨论,并为全班同学演奏一下。

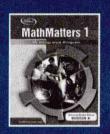
在技术设计活动中,强调引导学生思考系统设计、成本、风险、效益和非常重要的利弊权衡,以及替代方案的问题。

这一标准还强调对日常生活中的技术产品和技术系统加以研究,如拉链、衣帽钩、罐头起子、桥和汽车等。

在培养学生创造能力方面,技术教育所发挥的作用,是其他任何科目所无法替代的。

30

Collect and Interpret Data 收集和解释数据



数据是通过访谈、事件记录或问卷调查取得的信息资料。收集一个团体或所有人口的信息,叫人口普查。为了节省时间,很多人都选择调查或民意测验的形式。

- Goals Choose a procedure to sample a population.
 - Interpret² data from tables, charts, and survey³ results.

In a group, discuss methods you might use to find types of movies that are popular among teenagers.

- 1. Make a list of the methods.
- 2. Which method would be the most time-consuming?
- 3. Which method would be the most expensive?
- 4. Which method would you prefer? Why?



BUILD UNDERSTANDING

Data are pieces of information that can be gathered through interviews, records of events or questionnaires. Collecting information from an entire group, or population, is called a census⁴. To save time and money, many people conduct a survey, or poll⁵.

Surveys and polls provide data about a part, or sample⁶, of the population. Choosing the best method to gather data includes carefully wording the question. Effective surveys ask questions that require a specific⁷ answer, such as yes, no, red or 26.

To make decisions about a population based on a sample, choose an appropriate sampling method.

Random Sampling Each member of the population has an equal chance of being selected. The members are chosen independently of

one another. An example is putting 100 names in a hat, then

drawing 20 of the names.

Convenience Sampling The sample is chosen only because it is easily available. An example is polling ten students who happen to be sitting near you in the cafeteria.

Systematic Sampling After a population is ordered in some way, the sample is chosen according to a pattern. For example, select every tenth item from a long list.

Cluster⁸ Sampling Members of the population are chosen at random from a particular part of the population and then polled in clusters. For example, choose areas of a city at random. Visit the pet shops in these areas, asking every pet owner to name a favorite brand of pet food.

Example 1

FITNESS Which reflects the random sampling method that a health club owner might use to identify the most popular exercise machine in the club?

- A. Ask the first 20 members who enter the club one morning.
- B. Ask the members whose phone numbers end with the digit 7.
- C. Ask members who live on the six busiest streets in town.

Solution

Choice B. Since phone numbers are assigned at random, those members whose phone numbers end in 7 represent a random sample.

Example 2

MANUFACTURING In an assembly line, every twentieth rowing machine out of 500 is quality tested. Two are defective.

- a. What kind of sampling does this situation represent?
- b. What might be an advantage of this kind of sampling?
- c. What might be a disadvantage of this kind of sampling?

Solution

a. This example represents systematic sampling.

- b. An advantage is that the sample comes from the whole population.
- c. Other defective machines may not be in the sample group.

Example 3

Which automobile has faster acceleration?

Solution

Car A accelerates from zero to each measured speed in fewer seconds than Car B. Car A has better acceleration.

Acceleration	Car A	Car B
	(seconds)	(seconds)
Zero to 30 mi/h	1.8	3.2
Zero to 40 mi/h	2.8	4.7
Zero to 50 mi/h	3.9	6.4
Zero to 60 mi/h	5.1	8.8
Zero to 70 mi/h	6.8	11.6
Zero to 80 mi/h	8.6	15.0



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. procedure [prəˈsi:dʒə] n. 程序, 手续
- 2. interpret [ɪn'tɜːprɪt] ν. 解释, 说明, 口译, 翻译, 认为是……的意思
- 3. survey [səː'veɪ] n. 测量, 调查, 俯瞰, 概观, 纵览, 视察
- 4. census ['sensəs] n. 人口普查
- **5. poll** [pəʊl] *n*. 选举之投票,民意测验
- **6. sample** ['sæmpl] n. 标本,样品,例子 vt. 取样,采样,抽取……的样品,试验的一部分,尝试
- 7. specific [spr'sɪfɪk] adj. 详细而精确的,明确的,特殊的,特效的
- 8. cluster [ˈklʌstə] n. 串, 丛



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. happen to 碰巧; 恰好
 - e.g. She happened to be out when we called.

我们打电话时她碰巧不在家。

You don't happen to know his name, do you?

你不会碰巧知道他的名字吧?

2. at random 随意; 随机; 胡乱

e.g. She opened the book at random and started reading.

她随意翻到一页就看了起来。

The terrorists fired into the crowd at random.

恐怖分子胡乱地向人群开枪。



Exercise 牛刀小试

1. To save time and money, many people a survey, or poll. A. conduct B. product C. construct 2. Effective surveys ask questions that require a answer.
2. Effective surveys ask questions that require a answer.
A. special B. epical C. specific
3. Members of the population are chosen from a particular part of
the population and then polled in clusters.
A. by chance B. at random C. by random
4. We need to learn data from tables, charts, and survey results.
A. interpreting B. interbrain C. interlude
II. Complete the sentences.
1. Data are pieces of information that can be gathered through interviews, records of events or
2. Collecting information from an entire group, or population, is called a
3. Choosing the best method to gather data includes carefully the question.

4. To make decisions about a population based on a sample, choose a(n)
sampling method. 5. Put 100 names in a hat, then 20 of the names.
III. Write true (T) or false (F).
1Of random sampling, each member of the population has an equal chance of being
selected.
2Of convenience sampling, after a population is ordered in some way, the sample is
chosen according to a pattern.
3In systematic sampling, the sample is chosen only because it is easily available.
4Members of the population are chosen at random from a particular part of the
population and then polled in clusters. This is called cluster sampling.
5An example of systematic sampling is polling ten students who happen to be sitting
near you in the cafeteria.

参考译文

收集和解释数据

目标:■选择一个步骤做人口抽样调查。

■解析图表和调查结果所显示的数据。

如果你要找出在年轻人当中流行的电影类型,你可能用到的方法有哪些?请以小组讨论。

- 1. 列出可能用到的方法。
- 2. 哪个方法会耗时最多?
- 3. 哪个方法会最耗财力?
- 4. 哪个方法你最喜欢? 为什么?

加深理解

数据是通过访谈、事件记录或问卷调查取得的信息资料。收集一个团体或全体人员的信息,叫

普查。为了节省时间和金钱,很多人都选择使用 调查,或民意测验的形式。

调查和民意测验提供的是一部分或人口抽样的数据。选择最佳的收集数据的方法包括仔细研究问卷中问题的措辞。有效调查中的问题要求一个明确的答案,例如"是"、"否"、"红"或"26"。

为了根据样本对全体人员的情况做出正确判 断,要选择正确的抽样方法。

随机抽样 人口中的每个成员都有同样的被选机会。每个成员被选(的事件)是相互独立的。举个例子,把 100 个名字放在帽子里,然后取出其中的 20 个名字。

任意抽样 样本仅仅因为容易被获取而被选用。举个例子就是在餐厅里选 10 个恰好坐在你附近的学生做民意调查。

系统抽样 先用某种方式将人口排序,再根据 某一模式选取样本。例如,从一个长列表中选出 编号是十的倍数的那些项。

集群抽样 从人口中的某一特定的部分随机抽取人群,然后分组进行民意调查。例如,在一个城市中随机选择调查区域。然后到这些区域的宠物商店去做调查,让每一个宠物拥有者说出一个最喜欢的宠物食品的品牌。

c. 其他不合格的机器可能不在样本组里。

例题3

哪一辆汽车有着更快的加速器?

解答

汽车 A 从 0 加速到其他每个测定的速度需要的时间都比汽车 B 短。因此汽车 A 有着更快的加速器。

例题 1

健身行业 哪一个选项能反映出一家健身俱 乐部的雇主使用随机抽样法来确定俱乐部最 受欢迎的健身器械?

- A. 询问某一天早上来到俱乐部的前 20 名会员。
- B. 询问手机尾数为7的会员。
- C. 询问住在镇上第六繁华的街道的会员。

解答

选项 B。由于手机号码是随机分配的,因此 手机尾数为 7 的会员可代表一个随机抽样。

例题 2

制造行业 在一条流水装配线上,每500个划船机中有20个进行质检,其中有2个不合格。

- a. 这一情景代表什么类型的抽样?
- b. 这种抽样的优点是什么?
- c. 这种抽样的缺点是什么?

解答

- a. 这个例子代表系统性抽样。
- b. 优点是样本来自整个总体中。

加速度	汽车A	汽车 B	
	(所需时间: 秒)	(所需时间: 秒)	
0~30 英里 / 小时	1.8	3.2	
0~40 英里 / 小时	2.8	4.7	
0~50 英里 / 小时	3.9	6.4	
0~60 英里 / 小时	5.1	8.8	
0~70 英里 / 小时	6.8	11.6	
0~80 英里 / 小时	8.6	15.0	

科学生活

0

美国人口普查

自 1790 年以来,美国每 10 年都会进行一次人口普查,每次人口普查均在尾数为 0 的年份进行。这来源于美国宪法的强制规定,同时也需要通过人口普查来确定每个地区在美国众议院中的席位。1790 年,该法案经乔治·华盛顿签署成为法律。虽然美国宪法简单地将人口普查描述为"居民人数调查",但是随着时间的推移,人口普查已经成为一个更加复杂、用途更大的过程。现在,我们可以了解到更多有关美国人口的信息,而不仅仅局限于美国的居民数量。

在第一次全美人口调查中,17位美国联邦司法区执政官任命了200名助手。他们骑马遍历整个美国以统计居民人数,并用鹅毛笔在他们能找到的所有纸片上记录统计结果。此次人口普查项目总耗资45,000美元!

1890年,人口普查开始采用各种科学技术。当时,美国人口普查局研制了一种新的电器设备。 人口普查工作者在合适的位置为每种答案打孔后,该设备可以累计问题的答案。答案卡片随后被送入 这种用于统计结果的设备中。这种设备的体积庞大,但在那个时候却非常先进。

1946年,第一台现代计算机诞生于宾夕法尼亚大学。事实上,这台计算机是由许多协同工作的机器构成的。它占据了整整一个房间。这个系统及时准备就绪,从而在 1950年的人口普查中得到使用。美国人口普查局订购了自己的计算机,其名为 UNIVAC。经过多年的发展,计算机技术已经取得了长足进步。目前,人们可以利用高速超级计算机来辅助完成人口普查工作。

参与人口普查对所有美国公民都极为有利。因为决策者将利用人口普查表上的信息来确定哪些社区、学校、医院和公路需要联邦拨款。完整填写人口普查表是确保类似公民在人口普查中获得代表性的最好方法。

值得一提的是,2010年的美国人口普查还会带来额外的益处。经济学家预计,人口普查工作将帮助美国增加就业人数,并降低失业率,从而刺激经济复苏。

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. C 3.B 4.A
- II. 1. questionnaires 2. census 3. wording4. appropriate 5. draw
- III. 1. T 2.F 3.F 4. T 5. F



Points, Lines, and Planes 点、直线、平面



在几何学中,点、直线和平面是直观的概念,我们无法给出精确的定义。所以它们是 不具定义的术语。

- Goals Define basic terms.
 - Apply postulates¹ about points, lines, and planes².

Work in groups of 2 or 3 students.

You will need three small, flat objects that will not roll when dropped.

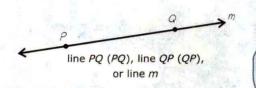
- Drop two of the objects onto a flat surface.
 Determine whether you can place a rod³ on the surface so that it touches both objects. Repeat the experiment ten times and record the result.
- 2. Perform the experiment using three objects. Repeat ten times.
- 3. Compare the results from the two experiments. What generalization⁴ can you make from your results?

BUILD UNDERSTANDING

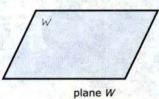
In geometry⁵, point, line, and plane are intuitive⁶ ideas. It is impossible to give a precise definition of these words, so they are undefined terms.

A point indicates a specific location. Although you use a dot to picture a point, it actually has no dimensions⁷.

A line is a set of points that extends without end in two opposite directions. When you picture a line, it appears to have some thickness, but actually it has none.



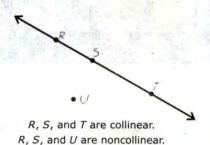
A plane is a set of points that extends without end in all directions along a flat surface. Like a line, it has no thickness. Although a plane has no edges, you usually picture a plane as a four-sided shape.



Using these undefined terms as a base, it is now possible to develop

definitions of other geometric terms. For instance, a figure is defined as any set of points. The set of all points is called space.

Collinear⁸ points are points that lie on the same line. Points that do not lie on the same line are called noncollinear points. Coplanar⁹ points are points that lie in the same plane. Points that do not lie in the same plane are called noncoplanar points.



The intersection¹⁰ of two geometric figures is the set of all points common to both figures.

Just as the meanings of some words are accepted without definition, postulates are accepted as true without proof.

	The Unique Line Postulate Through any two points, there
Postulate 1	is exactly one line. (This is sometimes stated: Two points
	determine a line.)
	The Unique Plane Postulate Through any three noncollinear
Postulate 2	points, there is exactly one plane. (Three noncollinear points
	determine a plane.)
Postulate 3	If two points lie in a plane, then the line joining them lies in that
	plane.
Postulate 4	If two planes intersect, then their intersection is a line.
The state of the s	



- 1. postulate ['postjuleɪt] n. 假定,基本条件,基本原理
- 2. plane [pleɪn] n. 平面、飞机、水平、程度
- 3. rod [rod] n. 杆, 棒
- 4. generalization [,dʒenərəlar'zeɪ[ən] n. 一般化, 普遍化, 概括, 广义性
- 5. geometry [dʒɪˈɒmɪtrɪ] n. 几何学
- 6. intuitive [ɪn'tju(:)ɪtɪv] adj. 直觉的; 直观的; 由直觉得到的(知识、判断等); 富于直觉的
- 7. dimension [dɪˈmenʃən] n. 尺寸, 尺度, 维(数), 度(数), 元
- 8. collinear [kɒˈlɪnjə] adj. 在同一直线上的,同线的
- 9. coplanar [kəu'pleɪnə(r)] adj. [数]共面的
- 10. intersection [.ɪntə(:) sek[ən] n. [数]交集,十字路口,交叉点



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. appear to/that 显得; 看来; 似乎
 - e.g. She appeared to be in her late thirties.

看样子她快40岁了。

They appeared not to know what was happening.

他们似乎不知道正在发生的事。

It appears unlikely that interest rates will fall further.

看来利率不会再降低。

- 2. ...as 作为, 当做
 - e.g. She works as a courier.

她的职业是导游。

You can use that glass as a vase.

你可以把那个玻璃杯当做花瓶用。

The news came as a shock.

消息传来,令人震惊。

She had been there often as a child.

她小时候常去那里。

3. define...(as) 解释(词语)的含义;给(词语)下定义

e.g. The term "mental illness" is difficult to define.

"精神病"这个词很难下定义。

Life imprisonment is defined as 60 years under state law.

按照州法律,终身监禁定义为60年。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the co	rrect answer.	ananta di Indoadi
	can you r	
A. realization	B. visualization	C. generalization
2. In geometry, poin	t, line, and plane are	ideas.
A. instructive	B. intuitive	C. instinctive
3. It is impossible to	give a precise definition	of these words, so they areterm
A. undefined	B. undeveloped	C. undetermined
4. Although you use	a dot to picture a point,	it actually has no
A. divisions	B. dements	C. dimensions
5. A point	a specific location	on.
A. indicates	B. dictates	C. endives
6. If two planes	, then thei	r intersection is a line.
A. interact	B. intellect	C. intersect

II. Write true (T) or false (F).

- 1. _____A plane is a set of points that extends without end in two opposite directions.
- 2. ____A line is a set of points that extends without end in all directions along a flat surface.
- 3. Collinear points are points that lie on the same line.
- 4. ____Coplanar points are points that do not lie in the same plane.
- 5. _____Postulates are accepted as true without proof.
- 6. Through any two points, there is exactly one plane.
- 7. _____Through any three noncollinear points, there is exactly one line.

参考译文

点、直线、平面

目标: 明确基本术语的意义

学会应用点、直线和平面的公理

2至3名学生一组:

实验中,你需要准备三个小的平面物体,确保它们在放置时不会发生滚动。

- 1. 将两个实物放在一个平面上,然后再将一根小棒放在平面上,检验你是否可以使其同时接触到这两个物体。重复实验 10 次并记录结果。
- 2. 改用三个物体, 重复1中的步骤。
- 3. 对比以上两组实验的结果, 你能得出什么结论?

加深理解:

在几何学中,点、直线和平面是直观的概念,我们无法给出精确的定义。所以它们是不具定义的术语。

点表示的是一个具体的位置。尽管你用一个"点"来表示一个点,但它实际上并不具有维度,即 点是没有大小的。

直线是一系列向两个相反方向无限延伸的点的集合。当你画一条直线时,它似乎具有厚度,但实际上却没有。

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

平面是一系列沿平面各个方向无限延伸的点的集合。如同直线,平面没有厚度。虽然平面并没有边缘,但是通常将它画作四边形。

基于这些不具定义的术语,现在我们可以为其他的几何术语进行定义。例如,几何图形是任意一组点集。所有的点的集合称为空间。

共线点是位于同一直线上的点。不在同一直线上的点称为非共线点。共面点是位于同一平面上的点。不在同一平面上的点为非共面点。

两个几何图形的交集是两个图形的公共部分的点的集合。

正如一些词语的意思无须阐明便被人接受,公理是不须加以证明便被公认的正确命题。

公理一(直线唯一性公理): 经过两点有且只有一条直线。(有时也写作: 两点确定一条直线。)

公理二 (平面唯一性公理): 经过三个非共线点有且只有一个平面。(三非共线点确定一个平面。)

公理三: 如果两点在同一平面上,那么通过这两点的直线也在这个平面上。

公理四: 如果两平面相交,那么它们的交线是一条直线。

名人链接



阿基米德



公元前 287 年,阿基米德出生于西西里岛 (Sicilia) 的叙拉古 (Syracuse)(今意大利锡拉库萨)。他出身于贵族,与叙拉古的赫农王有亲戚关系,家庭十分富有。阿基米德的父亲是天文学家兼数学家,学识渊博,为人谦逊。他 11 岁时,借助与王室的关系,被送到古希腊文化中心亚历山大里亚城,跟随欧几里得的学生埃拉托塞和卡农学习。他以后便和亚历山大的学者保持紧密联系,因此也算是亚历山大学派的成员。

亚历山大里亚位于尼罗河口,是当时文化贸易的中心之一。 这里有雄伟的博物馆、图书馆,而且人才荟萃,被世人誉为"智慧之都"。阿基米德在这里学习和生活了许多年,曾跟很多学者 密切交往。他在学习期间对数学、力学和天文学有浓厚的兴趣。在他学习天文学时,发明了用水力推动的星球仪,并用它模拟太阳、行星和月亮的运行及表演日食和月食现象。为解决用尼罗河水灌溉土地的难题,他发明了圆筒状的螺旋扬水器,后人称它为"阿基米德螺旋"。

公元前 240 年,阿基米德回叙拉古,当了赫农王的顾问,帮助国王解决生产实践、军事技术和日常生活中的各种科学技术问题。

公元前 212 年,古罗马军队攻陷叙拉古,正在聚精会神研究科学问题的阿基米德,不幸被蛮横的 罗马士兵杀死,终年 75 岁。阿基米德的遗体葬在西西里岛,墓碑上刻着一个圆柱内切球的图形,以 纪念他在几何学上的卓越贡献。

几何学方面的科学成就

阿基米德的数学成就在于他既继承和发扬了古希腊研究抽象数学的科学方法,使数学的研究和实际应用联系起来。

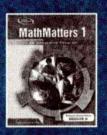
- 1. 阿基米德确定了抛物线弓形、螺线、圆形的面积以及椭球体、抛物面体等各种复杂几何体的表面积和体积的计算方法。在推演这些公式的过程中,他创立了"穷竭法",类似于现代微积分中所说的逐步近似求极限的方法。
- 2. 他是科学地研究圆周率的第一人。他提出用圆内接多边形与外切多边形边数增多、面积逐渐接近的方法求圆周率。他求出了圆周率大小范围为: 223/71<π<22/7。
- 3. 面对古希腊繁冗的数字表示方式,阿基米德还首创了记大数的方法,突破了当时用希腊字母计数不能超过1万的局限,并用它解决了许多数学难题。
- 4. 提出了著名的阿基米德公理,用现代数学语言表述,阿基米德原理是指对于任何自然数(不包括 0) a, b, 如果 a<b, 则必有自然数 n, 使 n × a>b.

Answer

I. 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. C II.1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. F



Tendency¹ and Range² 趋向和极差



平均数、中位数、众数和极差是四个帮助你了解一组数据的统计学量。它们使你能够 分析数据并确定数据的组成。

- Goals Use the measures of central tendency.
 - Find the range of a set of data.

Work in groups of two or three students.

- 1. Count the number of books you brought to school today.
- Record the number of books for each student in the class.
- 3. Is there a number that occurs more frequently than others?
- 4. Arrange the data in numerical3 order. What is the middle number? If the number of data is even, there are two middle numbers.
- 5. What is the difference between the greatest and the least number of books?
- Guess the average number of books for the students in your class.



BUILD UNDERSTANDING

Four statistical measures that help you describe a set of data are the mean⁴, median⁵, mode⁶ and range.

The **mean**, or arithmetic⁷ average, is the sum of the values divided by the number of items of data.

The **median** is the middle value when the data are arranged in numerical order. If the number of items of data is odd, the median is the middle value. If the number of items of data is even, add

the two middle values and divide by 2.

The **mode** is the value that occurs most frequently in the set of data. Some sets of data have no mode. Some have more than one mode.

The range is the difference between the greatest and the least values in a set of data.

Mean, median, mode, and range enable you to analyze data and determine how the data are grouped. Because the mean, median, and mode locate centers of a set of data, these terms are called measures of central tendency.

To analyze a set of data, it usually helps to begin by arranging the data in order from least to greatest.

Example 1

Seven students had the following number of books.

4 3 6 5 5 7 5

Use data given to find each of the following.

a. mean b. median c. mode d. range

Solution

a. Find the sum of the data. Then divide by the number of values.

The mean is 5.

c. The number that occurs most frequently is 5.

The mode is 5.

b. When the data are arranged in order, the middle number is 5.

The median is 5.

d. Find the difference between the greatest and least values.

$$7 - 3 = 4$$

The range is 4.

Example 2

Which measure of central tendency best represents the data?

- a. advertised March temperature in a resort brochure
- b. most popular politician after a debate

Solution

a. The mean of daily temperatures during March gives you an average temperature to use in

the brochure.

b. The mode indicates how many people preferred the politician.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. tendency ['tendənsɪ] n. 趋向, 倾向
- 2. range [reɪndʒ] n. [统计学] 极差: 频率分布上最大值与最小值之间的差别或距离
- 3. numerical [nju(:) merɪkəl] adj. 数字的, 用数表示的
- 4. mean [mi:n, mɪn] n. 平均数, 中间, 中庸
- 5. median ['mi:djən] n. 中部, 当中, 数学中线, 中值
- **6.** mode[moud] n. [统计学] 众数: 在一系列的观测数据或数据资料中出现次数最多的值或项目
- 7. arithmetic [əˈrɪθmətɪk] n. 算术, 算法



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. enable...to 使能够; 使有机会; 使成为可能
 - e.g. The software enables you to access the Internet in seconds.

这种软件使你在几秒钟内便可访问互联网。

Insulin enables the body to use and store sugar.

胰岛素使人体能够利用和贮存糖分。

- 2. (in) order (以) ……顺序; 次序; 条理
 - e.g. The names are listed in alphabetical order.

姓名是按字母顺序排列的。

The results, ranked in descending/ascending order are as follows.

结果按递降/递升的顺序排列如下。

Get your ideas into some sort of order before beginning to write.

落笔之前, 先要理清思路。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Wi	rite the corre	ct letter in the	e blank.
1. The	re are four		measures that help you describe a set of data.
A. s	static	B. statistical	C. tactical
2. If th	ne number of iter	ms of data is	, the median is the middle value.
Α. α	odd	B. even	C. mean
3. Mea	an, median, mod	e, and range	you to analyze data.
Α. α	capable	B. babble	C. enable
4. To a	analyze a set of	data, it usually he	elps to begin by arranging the data
	n least to greates		
A. i	n order	B. with order	C. by order
5. Is th	nere a number th	at	more frequently than others?
Α. α	occurs	B. accuses	C. excuses
	ar.		
II. W	rite true (T)	or false (F).	
1	The mean, o	or arithmetic aver	age, is the sum of the values divided by the number of
item	s of data.		
2	The median	is the middle valu	ne when the data are arranged in numerical order.
3	The range is	the value that occ	curs most frequently in the set of data.
4	The mode is	the difference bet	tween the greatest and the least values in a set of data.
5	Because the	mean, median, ar	nd mode locate centers of a set of data, these terms are
calle	ed measures of c	entral tendency.	

参考译文

趋向和极差

目标:使用集中趋势估计量。 找到一组数据的极差。

二至三名学生一组:

- 1. 数数你今天带几本书到学校。
- 2. 记录班里每位学生所带书的数目。
- 3. 相比之下,有没有哪个更频繁出现的数字?
- 4. 将数据按大小顺序排列。中间的数是什么?如果数据的个数是偶数,则中间的数有两个。
- 5. 书籍数目的最大值与最小值之差是多少?
- 6. 推测班上学生持有书籍的平均数目。

加深理解

平均数、中位数、众数和极差是四个帮助你了解一组数据的统计学量。

平均数、或算术平均数、是数值的总和除以数据项个数。

中位数是数据按大小顺序排列好后中间的数。如果有奇数个数据项,则中间数即为中位数;如果有偶数个数据项,则中位数为两个中间数的平均值。

众数是一组数据中出现次数最多的数。一组数据中可能没有众数,也可能有不止一个众数。

极差是一组数据中最大值与最小值之差。

平均数、中位数、众数和极差能够使你分析数据并确定数据的组成。因为平均数、中位数和众数描述的是数据的集中分布特性,这些量叫攸集中趋势估计量。

为了分析一组数据,通常首先将数据从小到大排列。

例题 1

七个学生分别有以下数目的图书:

4 3 6 5 5 7 5

用下列这组数据找出:

a. 平均值 b. 中位数 c. 众数 d. 极差

解答

数据的数目。

4+3+6+5+5+7+5=35 35/7=5 平均值是5。

c. 出现次数最多的数是 5。

3 4 5 5 5 6 7

众数是5。

- a. 先求出这组数据的和,再用总和除以这组 b. 将这组数据按从小到大的顺序排列,中间 的数是5。
 - 3, 4, 5, 5, 5, 6, 7 中位数是5。
 - d. 求出这组数据中最大数与最小数的差值。 7 - 3 = 4

极差是 4。

例题 2

哪一种集中趋势的测量能最好地描述下面两项中的数据?

- a. 在出行手册上收集的 3 月份的温度
- b. 一场辩论结束后最受欢迎的政治家

解答

- a. 3 月份日常温度的平均值能让你把平均温度写在手册里
- b. 众数能表明有多少人喜欢这位政治家

科学生活



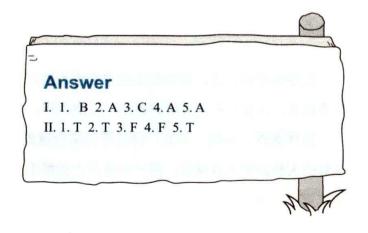
概率

随着科学的发展,数学在生活中的应用越来越广,生活的数学无处不在。而概率作为数学的一个 重要部分,同样也在发挥着越来越广泛的作用。

抽样调查、评估、彩票、保险等经常会遇到计算概率。举个例子,在保险公司里有2500个同一 年龄的人参加了人寿保险,在一年里死亡的概率为0.002,每个人一年付12元保险费,而在死亡的时 候家属可以领取由保险公司支付的 2000 元。问保险公司赢利的概率是多少?公司获利不少于1万 的概率是多少? 乍一看很难知道保险公司是否赢利,但经过概率统计计算就可以得知公司几乎是必定赢利的。 $A = \{2500 \times 12-2000X < 0\} = \{X > 15\}$,由此得知P = 0.999931,而赢利 1 万以上的概率也有 0.98305。以上的结果说明了保险公司那样乐于开展保险业务的原因。

除了保险,概率统计学对彩票也有用。彩票市场越来越火爆。据了解,某地某一期电脑福利彩票有一懂概率统计的彩民一个人中1个一等奖、3个二等奖、33个三等奖,有一期彩票有9注号码中一等奖,从而引发了无数彩民自己预测号码的愿望,概率统计方面的书籍也一下子走俏。许多平时见到符号就头疼的彩民也捧起概率书兴致盎然地啃起来。

然而,概率书上讲的都是理论知识、一大堆数学计算公式,如何把概率书的理论运用到彩票选号中来,才是许多彩民关心的问题。实际上,概率统计学主要有两个方面的应用:一个方面是利用概率公式计算各种数字号码出现的概率值,然后选择最大概率值数字进行选号。举一个简单的例子,类似"1234567"七个数一直连续的彩票号码与非一直连续的号码出现的概率比例为 29:6724491(1:230000)左右,由于出现的概率值极低,因此一般不选这种连续号码。另一方面的应用是统计,即把以前所有中奖号码进行统计,根据统计得到的概率值来预测新的中奖号码。例如五区间选号法,就是根据统计进行选号的。南京的"专业"彩民则介绍一条选号规则——逆向选号法。从摇奖机的构造角度来说,它要保证每个数字中奖的概率都一样。虽然摇一次奖无法保证,摇 100 次奖也无法保证,但摇奖的次数越多,各个数字中奖的概率都一样。虽然摇一次奖无法保证,一开始扔几次可能正反面出现的次数对一样,但随着扔的次数的增加,正反面出现的次数就会越来越接近。从这个角度考虑,在选号时就应该尽量选择前几次没中过奖的数字。这就是逆向选号法,即选择上一次或前几次没中奖的数字……这也说明概率无所不在。



Unit 単位



如今,存在着很多单位制。例如,物理学家使用四套主要的单位;国际单位,厘米克秒制单位,英制单位和自然单位。

1. Introduction

Imagine you had to make curtains and needed to buy material. The shop assistant would need to know how much material was required. Telling her you need material 2 wide and 6 long would be insufficient¹— you have to specify² the unit (i.e. 2 metres wide and 6 metres long). Without the unit the information is incomplete and the shop assistant would have to guess. If you were making curtains for a doll's house the dimensions might be 2 centimetres wide and 6 centimetres long!

It is not just lengths that have units, all physical quantities³ have units (e.g. time and temperature).

Base quantity	Name	Symbol	
length	metre	m	
mass ⁴	kilogram	kg	
time	second	S	
electric current	ampere ⁵	A	
thermodynamic ⁶ temperature	kelvin ⁷	K	
amount of substance	mole ⁸	mol	
luminous9 intensity	candela ¹⁰	cd	

Table 1: SI Base Units

2. Unit Systems

There are many unit systems in use today. Physicists, for example, use 4 main sets of units: SI units, c.g.s units, imperial¹¹ units and natural units.

Depending on where you are in the world or what area of physics you work in, the units will be different. For example, in South Africa road distances are measured in kilometres (SI units), while in England they are measured in miles (imperial units). You could even make up your own system of units if you wished, but you would then have to teach people how to use it!

2.1 SI Units(Système International d'Unités)

These are the internationally agreed upon units and the ones we will use. Historically these units are based on the metric¹² system which was developed in France at the time of the French Revolution.

All physical quantities have units which can be built from the 7 base units listed in Table 1(incidentally the choice of these seven was arbitrary¹³). They are called base units because none of them can be expressed as combinations of the other six. This is similar to breaking a language down into a set of sounds from which all words are made. Another way of viewing the base units is like the three primary¹⁴ colours. All other colours can be made from the primary colours but no primary colour can be made by combining the other two primaries.

Unit names are always written with lowercase¹⁵ initials¹⁶ (e.g. the metre). The symbols (or abbreviations) of units are also written with lowercase initials except if they are named after scientists (e.g. the kelvin (K)

and the ampere (A)).

To make life convenient, particular combinations of the base units are given special names. This makes working with them easier, but it is always correct to reduce everything to the base units.

It is very important that you are able to say the units correctly. For instance, the newton¹⁷ is another name for the kilogram metre per second squared (kg·m·s⁻²), while the kilogram metre squared per second squared (kg·m²·s⁻²) is called the joule¹⁸.

Another important aspect of dealing with units is the prefixes that they sometimes have (prefixes are words or letters written in front that change the meaning). The kilogram (kg) is a simple example. 1kg is 1000g or 1× 10³g. Grouping the 10³ and the g together we can replace the 10³ with the prefix k (kilo). Therefore the k takes the place of the 10³. Incidentally the kilogram is unique in that it is the only SI base unit containing a prefix. Also

there are prefixes for many powers of 10.

2.2 The Other Systems of Units

The remaining sets of units, although not used by us, are also internationally recognised and still in use by others. We will mention them briefly for interest only.

c.g.s Units

In this system the metre is replaced by the centimetre and the kilogram is replaced by the gram. This is a simple change but it means that all units derived from these two are changed. For example, the units of force and work are different. These units are used most often in astrophysics¹⁹ and atomic²⁰ physics.

Imperial Units

These units (as their name suggests) stem from the days when monarchs²¹ decided

measures. Here all the base units are different, except the measure of time. This is the unit system you are most likely to encounter if SI units are not used. These units are used by the Americans and British. As you can imagine, having different units in use from place to place makes scientific communication very difficult. This was the motivation for adopting a set of internationally agreed upon units.

Natural Units

This is the most sophisticated choice of units. Here the most fundamental discovered quantities (such as the speed of light) are set equal to 1. The argument for this choice is that all other quantities should be built from these fundamental units. This system of units is used in high energy physics and quantum²² mechanics.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- insufficient [.ɪnsəˈfɪ∫ənt] adj. 不足的,不够的 n. 不足
- 2. specify ['spesɪfaɪ] vt. 指定,详细说明,列入清单
- 3. quantity ['kwontɪtɪ] n. 量,数量
- **4.** \max [mæs] n. 缩写 m [物] 质量: 物体内所包含的物质的量
- 5. ampere [ˈæmpeə(r); (US) ˈæmpɪər] n. 安培
- **6. thermodynamic** ['θə:məʊdaɪ'næmɪk] *adj*. 热力学的,使用热动力的
- 7. kelvin ['kelvɪn] n. [物] 绝对温标, 开氏温标

- 8. mole [meul] n. 摩尔
- 9. luminous ['lju:mɪnəs] adj. 发光的, 明亮的
- **10. candela** [**k**æn'diːlə] *n*. 堪, 烛光: 亮度单位, 等于一个在铂的凝固点(*K*=2,046) 时进行辐射的黑体每平方厘米发光强度的1/60
- 11. imperial [ɪm'pɪərɪəl] adj. 皇帝的
- 12. metric ['metrik] adj. 米制的, 公制的
- 13. arbitrary ['ɑ:bɪtrərɪ] adj. 任意的, 武断的, 独裁的, 专断的
- 14. primary ['praɪmərɪ] adj. 第一位的,主要的,初步的,初级的,原来的,根源的
- 15. lowercase [ləuə keis] n. 小写字母
- 16. initial [ɪ'nɪ∫əl] adj. 最初的,词首的,初始的 n. 词首大写字母
- **17. newton** ['nju:tn] *n*. [物] 牛顿(力的单位)
- 18. joule [dʒu:l] n. [物] 焦耳
- 19. astrophysics [æstrəʊˈfɪzɪks] n. 天体物理学
- 20. atomic [ə'tomɪk] adj. 原子的,原子能的,微粒子的
- 21. monarch ['monək] n. 君主
- **22.** quantum ['kwontəm] n. 量, 额, [物] 量子, 量子论



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. make up 编造 (故事、谎言等)
 - e.g. He made up some excuse about his daughter being sick.

他编了个借口,说他的女儿病了。

I told the kids a story, making it up as I went along.

我给孩子们讲了个故事, 是现编的。

- 2. base on/upon 以……为基础(或根据)
 - e.g. What are you basing this theory on?

你这种理论的根据是什么?

The report is based on figures from six different European cities.

报告的依据是欧洲六个不同城市的数据。

3. derive from 从……衍生出;起源于;来自;得到;获得;从……中提取

e.g. The word "politics" is derived from a Greek word meaning "city".

Politics-词源自希腊语, 意思是city。

He derived great pleasure from painting.

他从绘画中得到极大的乐趣。

The new drug is derived from fish oil.

这种新药是从鱼油中提炼出来的。

4. stem from 是……的结果; 起源于; 根源是

e.g. customs stemming from the past

来自过去的习俗

Correct decisions stem from correct judgments.

正确的决定来源于正确的判断。



Exercise 牛刀小试

			throillus -
I. Write the corn	rect letter in the bl	anks. discontinuose sinne	
1. Historically SI un	its are based on the	system.	
A. magic	B. metric	C. matrix	
2. In the c.g. s unit s	ystem the metre is	by the centime	eter.
A. replaced	B. instead	C. placed	
3. All units	from these two	unit systems are changed.	The state of
A. deprived	B. defined	C. derived	E E
4. Imperial units	from the days	s when monarchs decided me	asures.
A. step	B. stem	C. stun	
5. Natural system of	units is used in high er	nergy physics and	mechanics.
A. quantum	B. quainter	C. quanta	

II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1Physicists use 4 main sets of units: SI units, c.g.s units, imperial units and natural units.
2C.g.s unit was developed in France at the time of the French Revolution.
3All physical quantities have units which can be built from the 7 base units.
4The symbols of units are also written with lowercase initials even if they are named
after scientists.
5Natural unit is the unit system you are most likely to encounter if SI units are not used.
6Imperial unit is the most sophisticated choice of units.
the second secon
III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words given.
lowercase atom communicate motivate combine quantity
1. It is not just lengths that have units, all physical have units.
2. Unit names are always written with initials.
3. To make life convenient, particular of the base units are given special
names.
4. C.g.s units are used most often in astrophysics and physics.
5. Having different units in use from place to place makes scientific very
difficult.
6. Difficulties in scientific communication was the for adopting a set of
internationally agreed upon units.

参考译文

单位

1. 简介

假设你要制作窗帘,并且需要购买布料。售货员需要知道你想要多少布料。仅仅告诉她你需要的布料是宽2长6是不够的——你必须说明单位(比如宽2米长6米)。没有单位的信息是不完整的,售货员便不得不去猜测你的意思。如果你是为一个洋娃娃的小屋做窗帘的话,这个尺寸就可能会变为宽2厘米长6厘米!

不仅长度有单位, 所有的物理量都有单位 (例如时间和温度)。

Was Fig. Zait i F				
名称	符号			
*	m			
千克	kg			
秒	s			
安培	A			
开尔文	К			
摩尔	mol			
坎德拉	cd			
	名称 米 千克 秒 安培 开尔文 摩尔			

表 1: 国际基本单位

2.单位制

如今,存在着很多单位制。例如,物理学家使用四套主要的单位:国际单位,厘米克秒制单位,英制单位和自然单位。

根据你所处的地域或者你从事的工作所属的物理学领域的不同,你所用到的单位也会有所不同。 例如,南非的道路距离以千米(国际单位)为测量单位,而在英格兰则是以英里为单位(英制单位)。 如果你愿意、你甚至可以制定一套自己的单位制,但是你必须教会别人如何去使用!

2.1 国际单位

国际单位是国际一致认可的单位,也是我们 将要采用的单位。历史上,这些单位是以法国大 革命时期在法国形成的公制系统为基础的。

所有物理量的单位都可以由表 1 中列出的 7 个基本单位构成(并且这 7 个基本单位的选取 是任意的)。它们被称为基本单位是因为其中的 任意一种单位都不能由其余的六种单位的组合表示。这与把一种语言分解为一套可以构成所有词语的语音相似。从另一个角度看,基本单位就像 三原色一样。所有的颜色都能由三原色混合而成,但是没有哪一种原色可以由另外的两种混合而

成。

单位的名称通常以小写字母开头(例如米)。 单位符号(或缩写),也通常以小写字母开头, 除非它们是以科学家的名字命名的[例如开尔文 (K)和安培(A)]。

为了使用方便,人们给予特定的基本单位以 组合特定的名称,这使得它们更便于使用。不过 把每个单位都具体地以基本单位表示,写成基本 单位的组合形式也是正确的。

能否正确地读出单位是很重要的。例如,"牛顿"是千克·米每二次方秒(kg·m·s⁻²)的另一个种

说法,然而千克·二次方米每二次方秒(kg·m²·s-²)则叫做"焦耳"。

在处理单位时,另一个重要的方面就是它们有时会有前缀(前缀是写在词语前面并改变其原意的单词或字母)。千克(kg)是一个简单的例子。1千克(kg)是1000克(g)或1×10³克(g)。将10³和g组合起来,我们可以用前缀千(k)代替10³。所以千(k)代替了10³。顺便提一句,千克(kg)是国际基本单位中唯一一个有前缀的单位。用不同的前缀可以表示10的不同次幂。

2.2 其他的单位制

剩下的这些单位制虽然没有被我们采用,但 也都是被国际认可的,并且有其他一些人在使用 它们。在此,我们仅仅为感兴趣的读者作简要的 介绍。

厘米克秒制单位

在这个单位制中,米被厘米取代,千克被克取代。虽然这只是一个很简单的变化,但是它意味着所有由这两者衍生出的单位都改变了。例如,

力和功的单位就不一样了。这些单位主要应用于天体物理学和原子物理领域。

英制单位

这些单位(如同它们的名字表示的那样)起源于君主制定量度的时期。英制单位里除了时间以外,所有的基本单位都与国际单位不同。如果不使用国际单位,这是你最有可能遇到的单位。这些单位被美国人和英国人使用。正如你能够想象到的那样,不同地方使用不同的单位使得科学交流变得非常困难。这便是人们为什么要积极采用一套国际一致认可的单位的原因。

自然单位

这是单位的最巧妙的选择。自然单位里,一些已发现的最基础的量(例如光速)被设为 1。这一选择的原因在于,人们认为其他所有的量都应该由这些基本单位构成。这一单位制被用于高能物理和量子力学中。

Answer

I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A

II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. F

III. 1. quantities 2. lowercase 3. combinations

4. atomic 5. communication 6. motivation



科学生活

0

被电影"颠覆"的物理学定律

在科学家看来,好莱坞导演和编剧在现实世界的物理定律面前编造了诗一般的故事。细究起来就会发现,有些电影的情节是多么荒谬。美国中学物理教师亚当·维纳在他的新书《好莱坞电影的物理学:千万不要在家里尝试》中对好莱坞电影中违背物理定律的事实予以了抨击。他在书中谈到了好莱坞电影中有悖常理的典型案例以及这些案例背后的科学,提醒别被好莱坞骗了。



在科幻大片《后天》中,让人类感到恐慌的敌人是零摄氏度以下、不断移动的"飓风",能把风暴"眼"底下的一切东西变成冰柱。在影片中,这些风暴的成因令人匪夷所思:通过将零下100摄氏度的冷空气快速从地球对流层(在这个大气层,气温随高度的增加而降低)吸至地球表面,获得冰冻的动力。

导演丹尼斯·奎德没想到的是,对流层上部的大气压只是地表大气压的 1/10。根据波义耳定律(在温度不

变时,一定质量气体的压强跟其体积成反比),空气降至地面,其压力增加,体积减小,由于气团是极佳的绝缘体,在这种体积转换期间,相对少的能量就会产生飓风。按照热力学第一定律,作用于气团的力量因其体积减少而产生能量,因此使温度升高。但升高多少呢?在理想条件下,零下 100 摄氏度的空气在到达地面时,将升至零上 57 摄氏度。问题是,会有 57 摄氏度的"冰飓风"吗?

34

Visualize¹ and Represent Solids² 形象化并描绘立体图形



一些三维图形既有平面又有曲面。这篇文章试图使大家明确三维图形的性质,使几何 三维图形形象化

Goals: ■Identify properties of three-dimensional figures.

■Visualize three-dimensional geometric figures.

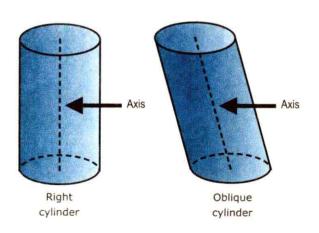
Use a pencil, paper, tape and scissors3.

- 1. Cut a small rectangle⁴, a small right triangle and a small semicircle⁵ out of the paper.
- 2. Tape the rectangle near the top of the pencil. Spin⁶ the pencil on the tip to visualize what solid is created by spinning the rectangle. Describe the solid.
- 3. Repeat Question 2 for the right triangle.
- 4. Repeat Question 2 for the semicircle.

BUILD UNDERSTANDING

Some three-dimensional figures have both flat and curved surfaces.

A cylinder⁷ has a curved surface and two congruent⁸ circular bases that lie in parallel planes. The axis⁹ is a segment¹⁰ that joins the centers of the bases. If the axis forms a right angle with the bases, it is a right cylinder. If not, it is an oblique¹¹ cylinder.

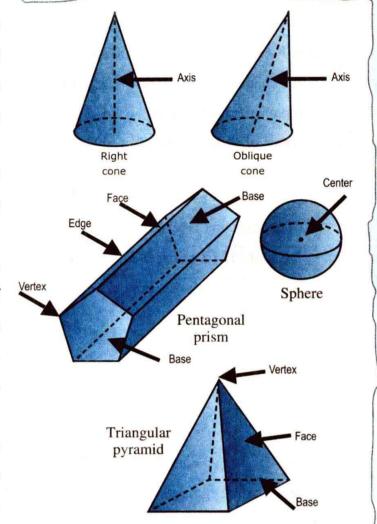


A **cone**¹² has a curved surface and one circular base. The axis is a segment that joins the vertex¹³ to the center of the base. If the axis forms a right angle with the base, it is a right cone. Otherwise, it is an oblique cone.

A **sphere**¹⁴ is the set of all points that are a given distance from a given point, called the center of the sphere.

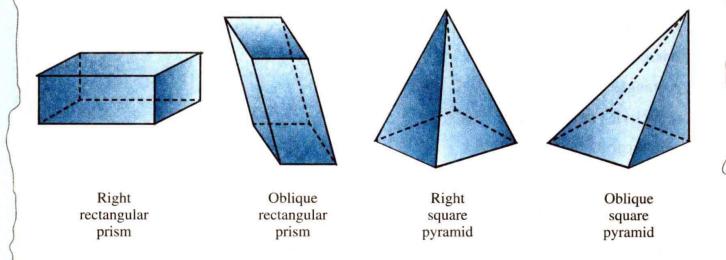
A **polyhedron**¹⁵ (plural: polyhedra) is a closed, three-dimensional figure made up of polygonal¹⁶ surfaces. The polygonal surfaces are faces. Two faces meet, or intersect, at an edge. A point at which three or more edges intersect is a vertex.

A **prism**¹⁷ is a polyhedron with two identical parallel¹⁸ faces called bases. The other faces are parallelograms¹⁹. A prism is named according to the shape of its base.



A **pyramid** is a polyhedron with only one base. The other faces are triangles that meet at a vertex. A pyramid is named by the shape of its base.

In prisms and pyramids, the faces that are not bases are lateral²⁰ faces. The edges of these faces are lateral edges. Lateral faces can be either parallel or intersecting. The lateral edges can be intersecting or parallel. Skew edges are noncoplanar²¹.



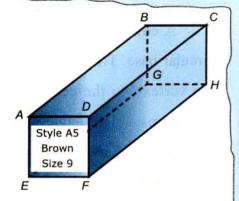
Example 1

PACKAGING Identify each feature of the shoe box.

a. the shape of the shoe box b. a pair of bases

c. a pair of parallel edges d. a pair of intersecting edges

e. a pair of skew edges f. a pair of intersecting faces



Solution

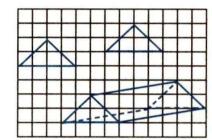
a. The shoe box is a right rectangular prism. b. Two bases and ADFE and BCHG.

c. DC and FH are parallel edges. d. GH and FH are intersecting edges.

e. \overline{AD} and \overline{CH} are skew edges. f. ABCD and CDFH are intersecting faces.

Example 2

Draw a right triangular prism.



Solution

Step 1 Draw two congruent triangles.

Step 2 Draw segments that connect the corresponding vertices of the triangles. Use dashed segments to show the edges that cannot be seen.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. visualize ['Vɪzjʊəlaɪz, 'Vɪʒ-] vt. 形象,形象化,想象 vi. 显现
- 2. solid ['solid] n. 固体, 立体
- 3. scissor ['sɪzə] n. 剪刀
- 4. rectangle [ˈrekˌtæŋgl] n. 长方形, 矩形
- 5. semicircle [ˈsemɪˈsəːkl] n. 半圆形
- 6. spin [spɪn] v. 旋转, 纺, 纺纱
- 7. cylinder [ˈsɪlɪndə] n. 圆筒,圆柱体,汽缸,柱面
- 8. congruent [ˈkoŋgrʊənt] adj. 适合的,全等的

- 9. axis ['æksɪs] n. 轴
- 10. segment ['segment] n. 段, 节, 片断
- 11. oblique [ə'bli:k] adj. 倾斜的,间接的,不坦率的,无诚意的
- 12. cone [kəun] n. [数、物]锥形物、圆锥体、(松树的)球果
- 13. vertex ['və:teks] n. 顶点, 最高点, [解]头顶, [天]天顶
- 14. sphere [sf1ə] n. 球, 球体, 范围, 领域, 方面, 圈子, 半球
- 15. polyhedron [polihedran] n. 多面体
- 16. polygonal [pəˈlɪgənl] adj. 多角形的,多边形的
- 17. prism ['prɪzəm] n. [物]棱镜, [数]棱柱
- 18. parallel ['pærəlel] adj. 平行的,相同的,类似的,并联的
- 19. parallelogram [,pærəˈleləgræm] n. [数]平行四边形
- 20. lateral [ˈlætərəl] n. 侧部, 支线, 边音 adj. 侧面的, 横向的
- 21. noncoplanar ['nonkəu'pleɪnə] adj. 非共面的, 非同面的



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. make up 形成;构成
 - e.g. Women make up 56% of the student number.

女生占学生人数的56%。

They are analyzing the make-up of a TV audience.

他们正在分析电视观众的构成。

- 2. according to 依照;按照;根据
 - e.g. You've been absent six times according to our records.

根据我们的记录,你已经缺席六次了。

The salary will be fixed according to qualifications and experience.

薪金将依资历和经验而定。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corre	ect letter in the blan	nk.	
1. Women	56% of the s	tudent number.	
A. make up	B. make for	C. make out	
2. If the axis does not	form a right angle with	the bases, it is a(n)	cylinder.
A. circular	B. right	C. oblique	
3. In prisms and pyrai	nids, the faces that are i	not bases are	faces.
A. bilateral	B. lateral	C. literal	
4. Two faces meet, or	intersect, at a(n)		
A. surface	B. space	C. edge	
5. A prism is named _	th	e shape of its base.	
A. referring to	B. according to	C. regarding to	
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).		
1A cylinder ha	as a curved surface and	two congruent circular be	ases that lie in parallel
planes.			
2A sphere has	a curved surface and or	ne circular base.	
3A cone is the	set of all points that are	e a given distance from a	given point.
4A polyhedron	n is a closed, three-dime	ensional figure made up o	of polygonal surfaces.
5A pyramid is	a polyhedron with two	identical parallel faces c	alled bases.
6A prism is a	polyhedron with only or	ne base.	
III. Complete the	sentences with the	e right form of the v	vords given.
	circular parallel se	gment intersect curve	e a de
	170	flat and that joins the centers of	
3. A cone has a curve	d surface and one	base.	
4. A point at which th	ree or more edges	is a vertex.	
5. The lateral edges ca	an be intersecting or	· ~	
Distance of the Control of the Contr			

参考译文

形象化并描绘立体图形

目标: 明确三维图形的性质。

使几何三维图形形象化。

使用一支铅笔、纸、胶带和剪刀:

- 1. 剪一个小矩形, 一个小直角三角形和一个小半圆。
- 2. 将矩形粘在靠近铅笔顶端的笔杆处,旋转笔尖观察旋转的矩形产生了什么立体图形。描述这个立体图形。
- 3. 改用直角三角形重复 2 的步骤。
- 4. 改用半圆形重复 2 的步骤。

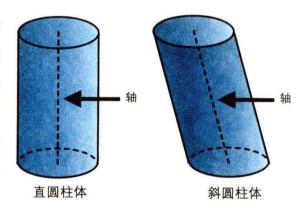
加深理解

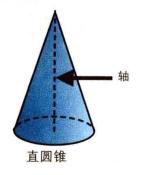
一些三维图形既有平面又有曲面。

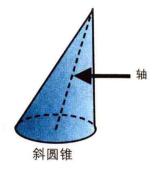
圆柱体由一个曲面和两个全等且相互平行的圆形底面构成。轴是通过上下两底面圆心的线段。如果轴与两底面夹角都为直角,则该圆柱体称为直圆柱体,如果不是,称为斜圆柱体。

圆锥体由一个曲面和一个圆形底面构成。其轴为通过圆锥顶点和底面圆心的线段。如果轴与底面成直角,则该锥体为直圆锥,否则为斜圆锥。

球体是由距定点的距离为定长的一系列点的集合。该定点称为球体的球心。









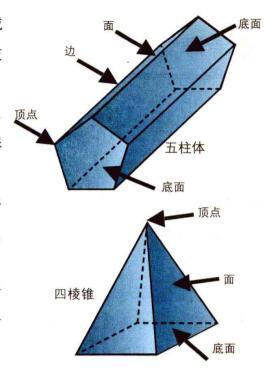
跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

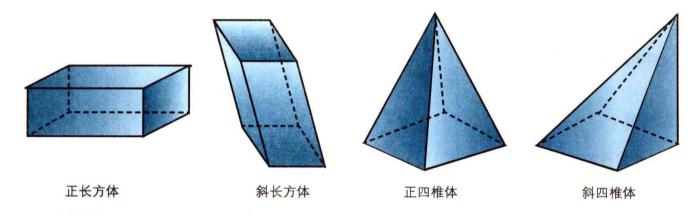
多面体 (复数形式 polyhedra) 是由多边形为面构成 的封闭三维图形。这些多边形为多面体的面。两面相交 于边。三条或三条以上的边的交点为顶点。

棱柱体是具有两个全等且相互平行的底面的多面体。 顶点 棱柱体其余的面为平行四边形。棱柱体是根据底面的形 状来命名的。

棱锥体是只有一个底面的多面体。其他面是相交于 同一顶点的三角形。棱锥体是依据其底面的形状来命名 的。

在棱柱体和棱锥体中, 不是底面的面叫侧面, 侧面 的边叫侧边。侧面既可以相互平行也可以相交。侧边可 以相互平行也可以相交。斜边不共面。





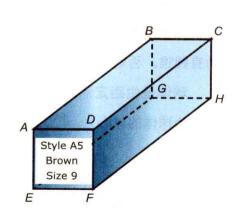
例 1

包装盒 请指出这个鞋盒的各种特征。

- a. 鞋盒的形状
- b. 两个底面
- c. 两条平行边
- d. 两个相交边
- e. 两条既不相交也不平行边 f. 两个相交面

答案

- a. 鞋盒是正长方体 b. ADFE 和 BCHG 是底面
- c. DC 和 FH 平行
- d. GH 和 FH 相交
- e. AD 和 CH 既不相交也不平行 f. ABCD 和 CDFH 是相交面



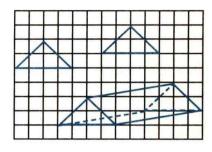
例 2

画一个正确的三棱柱。

答案

第一步 画两个全等三角形。

第二步 画线连接两个三角形相对应的顶点。用这些虚线表示看不到的边。



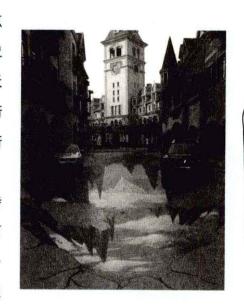
科学生活

C

街头立体画

历史

在二维平面上模拟三维空间效果一直是人类视觉艺术的焦点问题,尤其是自文艺复兴以来,解决该问题成为艺术进步和艺术史书写的重要标准之一。因此,文艺复兴及其之后的教堂壁画、天顶画、市政大厅、贵族寓所和别墅都成为极好的模拟场所。3D街头地画可看做这一艺术逻辑在当代的重要发展和延伸。所谓3D街头地画,顾名思义就是将画作展示于地上以求得立体的艺术效果,或直接以地面为载体进行绘画创作。3D街头地画将"艺术效果特殊化"的理念进一步发扬光大,它以室外地面为媒介,利用平面透视的原理,制造出视觉上的虚拟立体效果,令参观者有一种身临其境的感觉。3D街头地画中的景物立体、细腻、逼真,往往能达到以假乱真的艺术效果。



地画在国外的产生与发展

严格意义上的 3D 街头地画发源于国外,有着长达二十多年的历史,已经发展成为一种成熟的艺术表现形式。它秉承后现代绘画理念,诞生于西方大众文化的语境中,最初是西方先锋街头艺术家表达自我、彰显个性的一种方式,因创作成本低廉,受场地限制程度低,发挥的自由度大,因此从诞生

之日起就成为一些西方草根艺术家所钟爱的艺术形式;又因为它颇具娱乐精神与诙谐效果,易于与流行文化元素相关联,加之场地开放,创作与展示过程都是露天完成的,打破了民众与传统绘画艺术殿堂的隔阂感,因此很容易受到参观者的认同、喜爱与欢迎。近年来涌现出一些致力于3D街头地画创作的艺术家,如吉利安·毕瓦尔(Julian Beever)就是其中的佼佼者。

有英国"毕加索"之称的艺术家吉利安·毕瓦尔在圣诞来临之际,特意在比利时的布鲁塞尔街头创造了一幅以圣诞雪景为主题的街头 3D 画作。在这幅立体图片上,手中拿着一个红萝卜的是他两岁大的女儿,而在较远处,一名正在推雪球的男孩则是他五岁大的儿子。毕瓦尔称:"我最担心的事情是,如果真的下雪,那这幅画就会被雪冲掉。但是,我还是希望能够把圣诞的祝福心意传达到欧洲。我认为这个雪人是能够做到这点的。"

Answer

I. 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B

II. 1. T 2. F 3.F 4. T 5. F 6. F

III. 1. curved 2. segment 3. circular

4. intersect 5. parallel



Concentrated¹ Light

能量集中的光束



普通的光,比如手电筒的光,由许多不同波长的光波组成。与普通光不同,激光只有几种固定统一的波长。激光产生出一束高度集中的纯光柱,所有的光波都在同一水平向同一方向同时振动。

Ordinary light, like light from a flashlight, consists of many different wavelengths that travel randomly². Unlike ordinary light, a laser's light contains only a few wavelengths and a very uniform pattern. Lasers produce a highly concentrated beam of pure light in which all the waves vibrate³ together on a single plane and travel in the same direction. In addition, the waves are all of the same frequency⁴ and color. This makes them very strong and very focused. LASER is an acronym for light amplification⁵ by stimulated⁶ emission⁷ of radiation.

Light produced by lasers can be used in many different ways. For example, you probably have a compact disc player. The surface of a CD is touched only by the light produced by a tiny laser that is focused by a lens system to a tiny pinpoint. This tiny beam of light reflects from tiny pits⁸ on the mirrored surface of a disc. The reflected light is converted into an electrical signal which is then amplified and sent to the speakers.

Since lasers can be concentrated into a tiny point, they are frequently used in the medical field. They are as precise as a

rd-to-reach areas of the human

scalpel⁹, they reduce bleeding, and they can be used to work in hard-to-reach areas of the human body.

Concentrated light can also be made to travel through long, tiny fibers¹⁰ of glass to carry images or sounds. This is known as fiber optics¹¹. Fiber optic devices depend upon internal

reflection that allows laser light to pass along a narrow glass fiber. Light bounces from side to side within the fiber and cannot escape. When you talk on the telephone, your voice is converted into an electric signal. At a local telephone station, this signal is changed into a digital code, like the code used on a CD. A laser codes your voice as a series of flashes of infrared¹² light which travel through an underground fiber-optic cable. A fiber-optic cable can carry thousands of signals at the same time at a high speed without fading.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. concentrated ['konsentreɪtɪd] adj. 集中的, 浓缩的
- 2. randomly ['rændəmlɪ]adv. 随便地, 未加计划地
- 3. vibrate [var'breɪt] v. (使)振动, (使)摇摆
- 4. frequency ['fri:kwənsɪ] n. 频率, 周率, 发生次数
- 5. amplification [æmplɪfɪˈkeɪ∫ən] v. 扩大, 增强
- 6. stimulate ['stɪmjuleɪt] vt. 刺激, 激励
- 7. emission [ɪˈmɪʃən] n. (光、热等的)散发,发射,喷射
- 8. pit [pɪt] n. 深坑,深渊,陷阱,(物体或人体表面上的)凹陷
- 9. scalpel ['skælpəl] n. 解剖刀
- 10. fiber [ˈfaɪbə] n. 光纤, 纤维
- 11. optics ['optiks] n. 光学
- 12. infrared ['ɪnfrə'red] adj. 红外线的 n. 红外线



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

convert into/to (使) 转变, 转换, 转化

e.g. What rate will I get if I convert my dollars into euros? 如果我把美元兑换成欧元,汇率是多少?

I've converted to organic food.

我改吃有机食物了。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Fi	ll in the blan	ks with the exact w	vords.		
1. The	reflected light i	s into an	electrical signal.		
Α. α	consisted	B. converted	C. vibrate		
2. Las	ers produce a high	ghly bear	n of pure light.		
Α. α	concentrated	B. focused	C. reflected		
3. The	tiny beam of lig	ght from t	iny pits.		
A. 1	oounces	B. produces	C. reflects		
4. Ligl	nt produced by_	can be used in	many different way	7S.	
A. 1	asers	B. wavelengths	C. flashes		
5. At a	local telephone	station, the signal is ch	anged into a	code.	
Α. α	optics	B. fiber	C. digital		
II. W	rite True (T	or False (F).		Section 1	
1	LASER i	s an acronym for light a	mplification by stin	nulated emission	n of radiation.
2	Ordinary	light consists of many of	different wavelength	is that travel reg	gularly.
3	A fiber-op	otic cable can carry thou	sands of signals at t	the same time.	
4	The wave	es of lasers are of differe	ent frequencies and	colors.	
5	Lasers ca	n hardly be used to wor	k in hard-to-reach a	reas of the hum	an body.
	Anna Carlotte				
III. C	omplete the	sentences.			
1. Ordinary light, like light from a flashlight, many different wavelengths.					
2. The	waves of lasers	are very strong and very	y		
		~	THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE	~	

3. Fiber optic	devices depend upon	that allows laser light to pass
along a nam	row glass fiber.	from Caugue of Instrumentary L
4. A laser	your voice as a series of fla	shes of infrared light.
5	light can also be made t	o travel through long, tiny fibers of glass.

参考译文

能量集中的光束

普通的光,比如手电筒的光,由许多不同波 长的光波组成。与普通光不同,激光只有几种固 定统一的波长。激光产生出一束高度集中的纯光 柱,所有的光波都在同一水平向同一方向同时振 动。此外,所有的光波都有相同的频率和颜色, 这就使得它们的强度很大并且很集中。激光是"受 激辐射式光频放大器"的缩写。

激光产生的光可以运用到很多方面。例如,你可能会有一台光碟播放器。光碟的表面仅由通过透镜系统集中起来的极微小的一小束激光产生的光来读取。这一小束光由光盘镜面的小凹点反射出来,反射的光被转化成电信号,然后被放大,并传送到扬声器。

由于激光可以被集中成很小的一个点,因此 它们经常被运用到医疗领域。它们就像解剖刀一 样精密,可以减少流血量,而且还可以深入到其 他手段很难达到的人体部位。

能量集中的光束还可以通过长且细小的玻璃 纤维来传送声音影像。这就是我们所知道的光纤 维。光纤装置依靠内部反射使得激光可以沿狭窄 的玻璃纤维传播。光线在光纤内部来回反射,但不会溢出光纤。当你打电话的时候,你的声音被转化成电信号。在当地的电话站点,这个信号又被转换成数字编码,就像光碟中运用的编码一样。激光把你的声音编码成一系列的红外光线通过地下光纤管道传播。一条光缆可以同时高速地传输上千个这样的信号,并且没有衰减。

Answer

I. 1.B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

II. 1.T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F

III. 1. consists of 2. focused 3. internal reflection 4. codes 5. Concentrated



名人链接

7)

高锟

2009 年 12 月 6 日,瑞典皇家科学院宣布,将 2009 年诺贝尔物理学奖授予英国华裔科学家高锟以及两位美国科学家。高锟获奖,是因为他在"有关光在纤维中的传输以用于光学通信方面"做出了突破性成就。

高锟被誉为"光纤之父"。早在 1966 年,高锟就在一篇论文中首次提出用玻璃纤维作为光波导用于通信的理论。简单地说,就是提出以玻璃制造比头发丝更细的光纤,取代铜导线作为长距离的通信线路。这个理论引起了世界通信技术的一次革命。随着第一个光纤系统于 1981 年成功问世,高锟的"光纤之父"美誉传遍世界。



高锟还开发了实现光纤通信所需的辅助性子系统。他在单

模纤维的构造、纤维的强度和耐久性、纤维连接器和耦合器以及扩散均衡特性等多个领域都进行了大量的研究,而这些研究成果都是使信号在无放大的条件下,以每秒亿兆位元成功传送至距离以万米为单位的地方的关键。

高锟 1933 年在上海出生,1949 年随家前往香港,1954 年赴英国伦敦大学攻读电机工程,并于1957 年及 1965 年获学士和哲学博士学位。从 1957 年开始,高锟即从事光导纤维在通信领域运用的研究。1987 年 10 月,高锟从英国回到香港,并出任香港中文大学第三任校长。在 1987 年到 1996 年任职期间,他为香港中文大学网罗了大批人才,使"中大"的学术结构和知识结构更加合理。在与内地科技界的交流合作中,他主张"一步一步把双方的联系实际化"。高锟于 1996 年当选为中国科学院外籍院士。

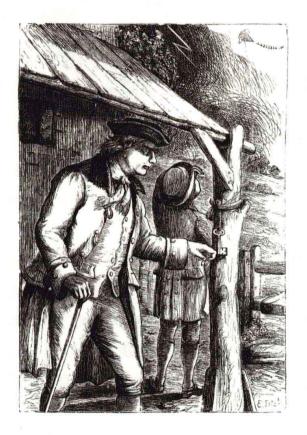
由于他的杰出贡献,1996年,中国科学院紫金山天文台将一颗于1981年12月3日发现的国际编号为"3463"的小行星命名为"高锟星"。

36

Franklin's Folly¹ 富兰克林的荒唐事



1752年,本杰明・富兰克林进行了一个危险并且一直闻名至今的实验。在一个雷雨 天,他放飞了一个一头连接着一把黄铜钥匙的特殊风筝。



In 1752 Benjamin Franklin performed a very dangerous and now-famous experiment. During a thunderstorm, he flew a special kite with a brass² key attached to it. During the experiment, electricity flowed down the string and caused a spark³ on the metal key. This experiment proved that lightning⁴ carries an electrical charge⁵.

Through his experiments, Franklin learned that there are positive (+) and negative (-) electrical charges. He also noted that like electrical charges repel⁶ and opposite electrical charges attract.

The flow of electrical charges from one object to another is called **electric current**. The force that causes electricity to flow is called **voltage**⁷ and is measured in units called **volts**. A single bolt⁸ of

lightning carries 100 million volts of electrical energy.

Electricity is a powerful force. Today homes are equipped with special features to keep people safe from its power. You may have noticed that some plugs⁹ on electrical cords¹⁰ have three prongs¹¹, or terminals¹². Electrical power passes from your house into the cord through the two similar prongs. The third, larger prong is a safety feature. It directs any accidentally short-

circuited electricity (electricity that doesn't flow in the path it should) into the **ground wire** so that if you touch that metal most of the misdirected electricity passes through the ground wire and very little reaches you. Some smaller appliances¹³ that are coated in plastic do not need three terminals because the plastic does not conduct¹⁴ electricity and cannot pass it on to you.

A **fuse**¹⁵ is a safety device that contains a short strip of metal with a low melting point. If too much electric current passes through the fuse at one time, the metal in the fuse melts or "blows". This breaks the circuit and prevents additional electricity from flowing through. The lack of electricity signals that there is an overload¹⁶ problem that needs to be corrected. The burned fuse must be replaced with a new fuse.

A circuit ¹⁷ breaker ¹⁸ is a safety device that protects people from a very large and dangerous amount of electric current. When an overload occurs, a **circuit breaker** "trips" the circuit switch, shuts if off, and stops the flow of electricity. Once the overload is corrected, the switch can be turned back on, and the flow of electricity begins again.

Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. folly ['foli] n. 愚蠢, 荒唐事, 轻松歌舞剧, 讽刺剧; 傻念头, 傻话, 耗费巨大而又无益的事
- 2. brass [bra:s] n. 黄铜, 黄铜制品
- 3. spark [spa:k] n. 火花,火星,闪光,瞬间放电
- 4. lightning [ˈlaɪtnɪŋ] n. 闪电
- 5. charge [t∫a:dʒ] n. 负荷, 电荷
- 6. repel [rr'pel] vt. 排斥;显示相反的力量;用力推回或推开
- 7. voltage ['vəʊltɪdʒ] n. [电工] 电压, 伏特数
- 8. bolt [bəʊlt] n. 门闩, 螺钉, 闪电
- 9. plug [plʌg] n. 塞子, 插头, 插销
- 10. cord [kɔːd] n. 绳索
- **11. prong** [pron] *n.* 叉子, 干草耙, 尖头
- 12. terminal ['tə:mɪnl] n. 终点站,终端,接线端
- 13. appliance [əˈplaɪəns] n. 用具,器具

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

- 14. conduct ['kondʌkt, -dəkt] v. 引导, 管理, 为人, 传导
- 15. fuse [fju:z] n. 保险丝,熔丝
- 16. overload ['əuvə'ləud] vt. 使超载, 超过负荷 n. 超载, 负荷过多
- 17. circuit ['sə:kɪt] n. 电路, 一圈, 周游, 巡回
- 18. breaker ['breɪkə] n. 断路器



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. attach to 与……有联系; 与……有关联
 - e.g. No one is suggesting that any health risks attach to this product.

没有人指出这个产品可能会危害健康。

This does not attach any blame to you.

这事你一点责任也没有。

- 2. replace (with) (用……)替换; (以……) 接替
 - e.g. He will be difficult to replace when he leaves.

他的位置很难有人接替。

It is not a good idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks.

不吃正餐, 改吃点心, 这不是什么好主意。

- 3. shut off 关闭; 关上; 停止运转
 - e.g. The engines shut off automatically in an emergency.

遇到紧急情况发动机便自动停止工作。

A valve immediately shuts off the gas when the lid is closed.

当盖子合上时, 立刻会有一个阀门切断煤气。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the cor	rect letter in the	blank.	
1. During a thunderstorm, Benjamin Franklin flew a special kite with a brass key to it.			
A. attached	B. connected	C. ached	
2. Today homes are	equipped	_ special features to keep people safe from its power.	
A. to	B. with	C. in	
3. The burned fuse	must be	with a new fuse.	
A. replaced	B. placed	C. emplaced	
	ricity signals that the	ere is a(n) problem that needs to be	
corrected.			
A. download		C. overload	
5. The plastic does	not	electricity and cannot pass it on to you.	
A. product	B. conduct	C. induct	
2The flow o	ical charges repel and f electrical charges fi	d opposite electrical charges attract. rom one object to another is called electric current. y to flow is called volts and is measured in units called	
voltage.			
4A single bo	olt of lightning carries	s 10,000,000 volts of electrical energy.	
5. Some small	er appliances that are	e coated in plastic do not need three terminals.	
6A fuse is a	safety device that co	ntains a short strip of metal with a low melting point.	
III. Complete tl	hese sentences w	ith the right form of the words given.	
	carry terminal	perform occur correct melt	
1. In 1752 Benjan experiment.	nin Franklin	a very dangerous and now-famous	

跟美国学生一起学英语·高级版

2. This experiment proved that	lightning an electrical charge.
3. Some plugs on electrical con	rds have three prongs, or
4. If too much electric curre	nt passes through the fuse at one time, the metal in the fuse
or "blows"	
5. When an overload	, a circuit breaker "trips" the circuit switch.
6. Once the overload is	, the switch can be turned back on.

参考译文

富兰克林的荒唐事

1752年,本杰明·富兰克林进行了一个危险并且一直闻名至今的实验。在一个雷雨天,他放飞了一个一头连接着一把黄铜钥匙的特殊风筝。在这个实验中,电沿着线传导,金属钥匙迸出了火花。这个实验证明闪电是载有电荷的。

通过这个实验,富兰克林了解到电是有正极(+)和负极(-)之分的。他同时还注意到,相似电极互相排斥,相反电极互相吸引。

从一个物体传导到另一个物体的电荷叫做电流。使电进行传导的外力叫做电压,它的测量单位为 伏特。一道闪电载有一亿伏特电压。

电是一种非常强大的力量。今天,家家户户都安装了特殊的设备以保证人们的用电安全。你可能已经注意到了,一些电线的插销有三个头,或有三个接线端。电能通过其中两个相似的端口从你家传到电线。第三个较大的端口就是安全装置。它将任何意外发生的短路电流(指那些没有按照预定路线传导的电流)传导到地线,那样的话,即使你不小心碰到了,短路的电流都会通过电线传走,只有一点点会传到你。一些小一点儿的用电器用塑料包裹就不需要有三个接线端,因为塑料不导电,不会有电传到你。

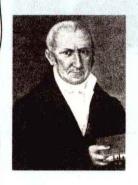
保险丝是一种安全装置,包含一个熔点很低的短金属片。如果在同一时间有太多的电流同时通过, 保险丝里的金属就会熔化或者"烧断"。这就使电路中断,阻止了额外电流的通过。电流中断显示出 电路中有超载问题需要纠正。熔化的保险丝需要用新的代替。

电路断路器是一个安全装置,保护人身免受强大危险电流的伤害。当超载发生时,电路断路器就会切断电路开关,以致切断电流。当超载被排除,电路开关重新开启,电路恢复。

名人链接

0

著名电学家



伏特 (Alessandro Volta, 1745—1827),意大利物理学家, 1745年2月18日出生于意大利科莫一个富有的天主教家庭里。他是电池的发明人。他对科学的爱好似乎是自然而然发生的。伏特在青年时期就开始了电学实验, 他读了许多书, 他的好友加托尼送给他一些仪器, 并在家里让出了一间房子来支持他的研究。伏特16岁时开始与一些著名的电学家通信, 其中有巴黎的诺莱和都灵的贝卡里亚(贝卡里亚是一位很有成就的国际知名的电学家)。伏特最伟大的成就——伏特电

堆,是在他 55 岁时研究所得,它立即引起所有物理学家的欢呼。为了纪念他,人们将电动势(电势)单位取名伏特。



安德烈·玛丽·安培(André-Marie Ampère, 1775—1836),法国化学家,在电磁作用方面的研究成就卓著,对数学和物理也有贡献。电流的国际单位安培即以其姓氏命名。



乔治·西蒙·欧姆 (Georg Simon Ohm, 1787—1854), 生于巴伐利亚埃尔兰根城。1805年, 欧姆进入埃尔兰根大学学习, 后来由于家庭经济困难,于 1806年被迫退学, 在瑞士的一所私立学校执教。通过自学, 他于 1811年又重新回到埃尔兰根大学,以光和色的主题顺利地取得了博士学位,并获得了教授资格。大学毕业后, 欧姆靠教书维持生活。从 1820年起, 他开始研究电磁学。

他最主要的贡献是通过实验发现了电流公式,后来被称为欧姆定律。为了 纪念他,人们把电阻的单位命名为欧姆。



迈克尔·法拉第 (Michael Faraday, 1791—1867), 英国著名物理学家、化学家。在化学、电化学、电磁学等领域都做出过杰出贡献。他家境贫寒, 未受过系统的正规教育, 但却在众多领域中做出惊人成就, 堪称刻苦勤奋、探索真理、不计个人名利的典范, 对于青少年具有教育意义。

詹姆斯·克拉克·麦克斯韦 (James Clerk Maxwell, 1831—1879),是继法拉第之后集电磁学大成的伟大科学家。1831年11月13日生于苏格兰的爱丁堡。10岁时进入爱丁堡中学学习。1847年进入爱丁堡大学学习数学和物理。1850年转入剑桥大学三一学院数学系学习,1856年在苏格兰阿伯丁的马里沙耳任自然哲学教授。1860年到伦敦国王学院任自然哲学和天文学教授。于1873年出版了电磁场理论的经典巨著《电磁学通论》,1871年受聘为剑桥大学新设立的卡文迪什实验物理学教授,负责筹建卡文迪什实验室,1874年建成后担任这个实验室的第一任主任,直到1879年11月5日在剑桥逝世。



Answer

I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. T

III. 1. performed 2. carries 3. terminals

4. melts 5. occurs 6. corrected



Effects of Global Warming on the Arctic 全球变暖对北极的影响

37



在过去的30年里,北极部分地区的气温已经上升了2°C。由于冻土的解冻和海冰变薄,房子正在不断倒塌,道路正在不断下沉,洪水和海水侵蚀的危害也与日俱增。气温的变化还对因纽特人的传统文化产生了冲击。冻土中大量的有机物会在冻土解冻时释放出大量二氧化碳,对大气造成威胁。

Air temperatures in some areas of the Arctic have risen about 2°C in the past 30 years. As permafrost thaws and sea ice thins, houses are collapsing¹, roads are sinking, and flooding and erosion² are increasing.

Thawing³ permafrost⁴ About 85 percent of the ground in Alaska lies above permafrost, which is a layer⁵ of soil that remains frozen for two or more years and has a temperature of at least 0°C. Recent data show that the temperature of permafrost across the Arctic has risen anywhere from 0.1°C to 2.8°C, resulting in thawing of the frozen soil in some areas. In areas where permafrost has thawed, the ground has dropped as much as 5m, affecting roads, airport runways, homes, and businesses.

Buildings, such as hospitals and schools, are unusable due to the sinking effect, and roads in Fairbanks, Alaska, have needed costly⁶ repairs.

Thinning sea ice People in the village of Shishmaref, on the northwestern coast of Alaska, moved houses to higher ground to avoid having them collapse into the surrounding sea. As the sea ice that helps protect the village from strong waves thins, the land is more vulnerable to erosion. The nearby village of Kivalina, Alaska, is in a similar situation. Engineers estimated that the cost of moving the village's 380 residents to more stable ground is between \$100 and \$400 million.



Disrupting traditions Changes in temperature also affect hunting practices of people native to the Arctic. Ice-fishing seasons used to begin in October but now do not start until December, when the sea finally freezes.

Native languages have also been affected by the changing temperatures and seasonal⁹ conditions.

The Inuit word qiqsuqqaqtug is used to refer to the month of June. The word describes specific¹⁰ snow conditions that occur in June — when a thin layer of melted¹¹ snow sits on the surface and refreezes at night, forming a crust.

With changing temperatures, this condition now occurs¹² in May. As a result, some Inuit think that the word no longer accurately¹³ describes the month of June.

Releasing carbon dioxide Permafrost consists of soil that contains high amounts of organic ¹⁴ material. As thawing occurs, the organic material in the soil decomposes ¹⁵, releasing carbon dioxide. With more than 1 million km² of soil in the Arctic, scientists think that thawing could release large amounts of carbon dioxide into the atmosphere ¹⁶.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. collapse [kəˈlæps] v. (突然) 倒塌, 坍塌
- 2. erosion [ɪ'rəuʒən] n. 侵蚀, 腐蚀
- 3. thaw [θo:] ν. (结冰后) 解冻, 融化, 融解
- 4. permafrost ['pə:məfrɔ(:)st] n. (寒带) 永冻土层; 永冻层
- 5. layer ['leɪə] n. 层, 阶层
- **6. costly** ['kostli] *adj*. 花钱多的; 昂贵的; 价钱高的; 引起困难的; 造成损失的
- **7. vulnerable** ['vʌlnərəb(ə)l] *adj*. (身体上或感情上) 脆弱的,易受⋯⋯伤害的
- 8. estimate ['estimeit] v. 估价; 估算
- 9. seasonal ['si:zənl] adj. 季节性的; 节令性的; 适应节日需要的; (尤指) 圣诞节的
- 10. specific [spr'sɪfɪk] adj. 明确的; 具体的; 特定的
- 11. melt [melt] v./vt. (使) 熔化, 融化, (使) 软化, 变得温柔
- 12. occur [ə'kə:] v. 发生; 出现; 存在于; 出现在
- 13. accurately ['ækjurɪtlɪ] adv. 准确地; 精确地; 正确无误地

- 14. organic [o:'gænɪk] adj. 有机的, 有机物的
- 15. decompose [ˌdi:kəm'pəuz] v. 腐烂; v./vt. (使) 分解
- 16. atmosphere [ˈætməsfɪə] n. 大气, 大气层, 大气圈



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. anywhere from A to B 在A和B之间

e.g. It will take anywhere from one to two hours to drive there.

开车到那需一至两小时。

The store owner replied, "Anywhere from \$30 to \$50."

"怎么也要30到50美元。"店主回答。

2. protect sth. from sth. 保护……免于……

e.g. The greenhouses protect vegetable from cold.

温室保护蔬菜免受冻害。

Protect children from violence.

保护儿童免遭暴力侵犯。

3. no longer 不再

e.g. He no longer indulged himself in smoking.

他不再过度吸烟了。

That style of dress is no longer fashionable.

这种风格的衣服已不再流行。

4. consist of 由……构成

e.g. How many players does a handball team consist of?

手球队由几名队员组成?

The atmosphere consists of more than 70% of nitrogen.

大气中含有70%以上的氮气。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the correct answer.				
1. Roads in Fairbanks, Alaska, have needed repairs due to the sinking effect.				
A. costing	B. costly	C. costless		
2. As the sea ice that	t helps protect the	e village from strong waves thins,	the land is more	
vulnerable to				
A. erosion	B. eroded	C. eroding		
3. Some Inuit think	that the word qiqs	suqqaqtug no longer	describes the	
month of June.				
A. exactly	B. correctly	C. accurately) malwork !	
4. Permafrost	soil	that contains high amounts of organic	material.	
A. consists of	B. composes of	C. makes up of	MER.	
5. Scientists think that	at thawing could _	large amounts of ca	arbon dioxide into	
the atmosphere.				
A. relieve	B. realize	C. release		
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).			
1Air temperat	ures in some areas	of the Arctic have risen about 3°C in	the past 20 years.	
2People in th	e village of Shish	imaref, on the northwestern coast of	of Alaska, moved	
houses to higher gr	ound to avoid havi	ng them collapse into the surrounding	g sea.	
3Ice-fishing s	easons used to be	gin in October but now do not start	until November,	
when the sea finally	y freezes.			
4The Inuit wo	rd qiqsuqqaqtug is	used to refer to the month of June.		
5As thawing	occurs, the organi	ic material in the soil decomposes,	releasing carbon	
monoxide.				
	~ ~		and here in a	

About 85 percent of the ground in Alaska lies ____1___ permafrost, which is a _____ of soil that remains frozen for two or more years and has a temperature of at least 0°C. Recent data show that the temperature of permafrost _____ 3___ the Arctic has risen anywhere from 0.1°C to 2.8°C, resulting in _____ 4___ of the frozen soil in some areas. In areas where permafrost has thawed, the ground has __5____ as much as 5 m, _____ 6____ roads, airport runways, homes, and businesses.

参考译文

全球变暖对北极的影响

在过去的 30 年里,北极部分地区的气温已经上升了 2℃。由于永久冻土的解冻和海冰变薄,房子正在不断倒塌,道路正在不断下沉,洪水和海水侵蚀的危害也与日俱增。

正在解冻的永久冻土 在阿拉斯加,约85%的土地是在永久冻土之上的。永久冻土是持续冻结超过两年,温度不超过0°C的土壤层。最近的数据显示,北极地区永久冻土的温度已经上升了0.1°C至2.8°C不等,这导致了一些地区冻土的解冻。在永久冻土已经解冻的地区,地面下沉了多达5米,这影响到公路、机场跑道、家庭和企业。

由于下沉效应,像医院和学校这样的建筑被 废弃,阿拉斯加州费尔班克斯的公路需要很高的 维护成本。

正在变薄的海冰 为了避免自己的房子被周围的海水淹没,阿拉斯加西北海岸希什马廖夫村的人们把他们的房子搬到了更高的地方。由于可

以帮助保护村庄、使其免于强烈海浪袭击的海冰变薄,这里的土地更加容易遭到海水的侵蚀。附近同样在阿拉斯加州的基瓦利纳村也处在相似的境况之下。工程师们预计,把村里的 380 户居民迁移到更加稳固的土地上的开销将会是 100 万到400 万美元。

正在混乱的传统 温度的变化也影响到了北极地区土著居民的捕猎活动。在过去,冰上捕鱼的季节往往从 10 月开始,但现在直到 12 月海面才最终冻结,冰上捕鱼的季节才到。当地的语言也同样受到了气温和季节条件变化的影响。

在因纽特语中,"qiqsuqqaqtug"是用来指代6月的。这个词描述的是6月出现的一种特殊的雪景——那时,一层薄薄的融化的积雪覆盖在表面,并在夜里重新结冰,形成了一层冰壳。随着温度的变化,这样的情形现在却出现在5月。所以,一些因纽特人认为"qiqsuqqaqtug"这个词已经

不再能准确地描述 6月了。

正在释放的二氧化碳 永久冻土由含有大量有机物的土壤组成。当永久冻土开始解冻时,土壤里的那些有机物质就会分解,并释放出二氧化碳。北极地区有一百万多平方公里的土地,科学家们认为,北极地区的永久冻土解冻会向大气中释放大量的二氧化碳。

Answer

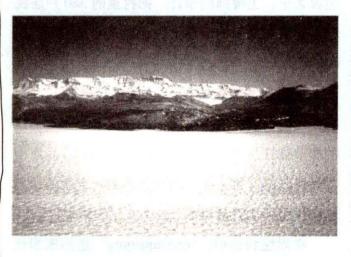
- I. 1. B 2. A 3.C 4. A 5.C
- II. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
- III. 1.above 2.layer 3.across 4.thawing 5.dropped 6.affecting



科学生活

北极海底释放大量甲烷加剧全球变暖

据美国国家地理网站报道,美国科学家表示,北极海底正在释放大量甲烷气体,他们由此得出结论,海底永久冻土是一个庞大但很大程度上被忽视的温室气体来源。温室气体与全球气候变暖有着直接联系。



以前的研究发现,北极湿地和湖泊永久冻土融化释放出甲烷气体。不过,科学家们当时认为,遍布冰冷深海的永久冻土仍将继续保持冰冻固体状态,令数量不明的甲烷气体释放不出去。领导实施最新研究的美国阿拉斯加州费尔班克斯大学(University of Alaska Fairbanks)的生物地球化学家 Natalia Shakhova 表示: "如今,情况已经变了,永久冻土保存这种气体的能力确实在下降。"

事实上,根据 Natalia Shakhova 和同事的估计,东西伯利亚海每年大概将有 800 万吨甲烷释放到大气中,这加剧了人们对全球变暖趋势加速的担心。2003 年至 2008 年,Natalia Shakhova 的研究小组先后六次远赴西伯利亚北极大陆架实地考察,仔细测算水体中的甲烷含量。

西伯利亚北极大陆架面积为77,204平方英里(约合200万平方公里),表面存在多处深度不足

164 英尺(约合 50 米)的浅海,而永久冻土层遍布整个大陆架。研究人员发现,海拔高于大陆架的部分水体充满了甲烷,这种气体正释放到大气中。此外,Natalia Shakhova 的研究小组还发现,当前北极大气中的甲烷含量是最早可追溯至 40 万年前的几个气候循环所记录的甲烷含量的三倍。

研究人员指出,这种现象极有可能并不限于东西伯利亚海。如果东西伯利亚海的永久冻土正在融化,那么北极大陆架沿线的所有浅海应该也会受同样的影响。为寻找答案,Natalia Shakhova和同事计划在海底永久冻土钻孔,建立一个区域性监控网。目前尚不清楚人为诱发的气候变化是否是引起北极大陆架水体释放甲烷的原因。

Natalia Shakhova 指出,全球气候变暖可能正在加速本应是自然进程的气候循环的步伐,产生一个反馈环路:永久冻土释放的甲烷令地球温度进一步上升,地球温度上升使得更多的永久冻土融化,进而释放出更多的甲烷,整个过程往复循环。

American Society 美国社会

美国接纳了来自全世界各地的移民,这些移民有着不同的文化背景、宗教信仰和价值观,正因如此,我们经常说美国是个"大熔炉"。然而,美国究竟是怎样的一个"大熔炉"?美国这个多种文化的"大熔炉"并不是没有倾向性的各种各样的文化、信仰和价值观"均匀"地融合在一起,美国的核心文化实际上并没有因为不同移民的到来而发生变化。当新移民踏上美国领土之后,他融入美国主流社会的过程实际上就是他不断承认美国核心文化并不断接受改造的过程。之所以说"改造",是因为这个成为"美国人"的变化过程并不完全是出于主动的、自发的。然而,随着新移民的不断增加,美国这个"大熔炉"的消化能力也开始出现问题。本章选取的文章为读者更多地了解美国社会提供了帮助。

美国梦熄灭了吗?



美国人长久以来都梦想着比他们的父辈生活得更好。然而,20世纪80年代和90年代,就业、薪酬大幅缩水,由此引来的愤怒、疑惑和恐慌冲淡了先前的乐观情绪。

Americans have long expected to achieve a higher standard of living than their parents. Instead, according to Katherine Newman, social and economic changes are placing the American Dream in jeopardy¹. The downscaling² of jobs and pay that occurred during the 1980s and 1990s has replaced earlier optimism with anger, doubt, and fear.

Newman spent two years conducting personal interviews with 150 Americans living in "Pleasanton," a suburban³ community representative of much of America. Pleasanton is a mix of skilled blue-collar workers and white-collar professionals from a variety of ethnic⁴ and religious origins. Her respondents were schoolteachers, guidance⁵ counselors⁶, and sixty families whose children were then grown.

The residents of Pleasanton believed that the promise of America had taken an

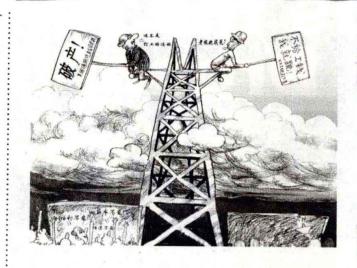
unexpected wrong turn, and they were trying to make sense of it. Newman attempted to understand the residents' view of this downward mobility⁷. The stresses associated with changing economic conditions, she believed, would bring cultural expectations, disappointments, and conflicts close enough to the surface for a trained social scientist to see. As the study progressed, she did, in fact, see conflict between parents and grown children, disagreements along lines of race and ethnicity, and unhappy marriages. The following statement reveals a baby boomer's⁸ shattered⁹ confidence in the American Dream.

I'll never have what my parents had. I can't even dream of that. I'm living a lifestyle that's way lower than it was when I was growing up and it's depressing. You know it's a rude awakening when you're out in the world on your own.... I took what was given to me

and tried to use it the best way I could. Even if you are a hard worker and you never skipped a beat, you followed all the rules, did everything they told you were supposed to do, it's still horrendous. They lied to me. You don't get where you were supposed to wind up. At the end of the road it isn't there. I worked all those years and then I didn't get to candy land. The prize wasn't there....

After a detailed and often personal exploration of what Newman calls the "withering" American Dream," she turns to the larger social and political implications for society. She explores the transition12 from a society of upward mobility based on effort and merit to a society in which social classes of birth increasingly dictate13 future social and economic positions. According to Newman, the soul of America is at stake. She raises these questions: Will Americans turn to exclusive self-interest, or will they care for others as well as themselves? Will suburbanites 14 turn a blind eye to the rapidly deteriorating¹⁵ inner cities? Will the generational, racial, and ethnic groups turn inward, or will they attempt to bridge the divides that threaten to separate them further?

A partial answer to these questions is reflected in public opinion about federal, state, and local tax revenues¹⁶. If the residents of Pleasanton are any guide, Americans do not wish to invest in the common good. Public schools, colleges, universities, and inner



cities, for example, are receiving a rapidly declining share of public economic support. In conclusion, Newman states: This does not augur¹⁷ well for the soul of the country in the twenty-first century. Every great nation draws its strength from a social contract, an unspoken agreement to provide for one another, to reach across the narrow self-interests of generations, ethnic groups, races, classes, and genders toward some vision of the common good. Taxes and budgets—the mundane18 preoccupations19 of city hall-express this commitment, or lack of it, in the bluntest20 fashion. Through these mechanistic21 devices, we are forced to confront some of the most searching philosophical questions that face any country: What do we owe one another as members of a society? Can we sustain²² a collective sense of purpose in the face of the declining fortunes that are tearing us apart, leaving those who are able to scramble23 for advantage and those who are not to suffer out of sight?



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. jeopardy ['dʒepədɪ] n. 危险
- 2. downscale ['daunskerl] v. 缩减……规模
- 3. suburban [sə'bə:bən] adj. 郊外的, 偏远的
- **4. ethnic** ['eθnɪk] *adj*. 人种的、种族的、异教徒的
- 5. guidance ['gardəns] n. 指导, 领导
- 6. counselor [ˈkaʊnsələ] n. 顾问, 法律顾问
- 7. mobility [məu'bɪlɪtɪ] n. 活动性, 灵活性, 迁移率, 机动性
- 8. boomer ['bu:mə] n. 赶往新兴地区安家的人
- 9. shatter ['[ætə] vt. 打碎, 使散开, 粉碎, 破坏
- 10. horrendous [ho'rendəs] adj. 可怕的
- 11. withering [ˈwɪðərɪŋ] adj. 使干枯的,摧毁的,进行干燥处理的
- 12. transition [trænˈzɪʒən, -ˈsɪ∫ən] n. 转变, 转换, 跃迁, 过渡, 变调
- 13. dictate [dɪk'teɪt] v. 口述, 口授, 使听写, 指令, 指示, 命令
- 14. suburbanite [səˈbəːbənaɪt] n. 郊区居民
- 15. deteriorate [dɪ'tɪərɪəreɪt] v. (使)恶化
- 16. revenue ['revɪnju:] n. 收入, 国家的收入, 税收
- **17. augur** ['**ɔ**:ɡə] *n*. (古罗马用观察飞鸟行动等方法预ト未来的)占兆官,占ト师,预言者 ν.占ト,预言
- 18. mundane ['mʌndeɪn] adj. 世界的, 世俗的, 平凡的
- 19. preoccupation [pri(:),okju'peɪ∫ən] n. 当务之急
- 20. blunt [blʌnt] adj. 钝的, 生硬的
- 21. mechanistic [,mekə'nɪstɪk] adj. 机械论学说的, 机械论的
- 22. sustain [səs'teɪn] vt. 支撑, 撑住, 维持, 持续
- 23. scramble ['skræmbl] vi. 攀缘, 杂乱蔓延, 争夺



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

1. wind up 结束

e.g. It's time for him to wind up his speech.

现在是他结束演说的时候了。

He wound up by declaring that his efforts would be continued.

他最后宣称他的努力将继续下去。

2. at stake 得失攸关; 处于危险境地

e.g. His reputation itself was at stake.

他面临身败名裂的危险。

My whole future was at stake.

我的未来吉凶未卜。

3. scramble (for) 争取; 争夺

e.g. The players scrambled for /to get possession of the ball.

球员们抢球。

The children scrambled for the coins that were thrown to them.

孩子们争夺扔给他们的硬币。

4. out of sight 看不见

e.g. We are not yet out of sight of land.

我们仍可看见陆地。

Out of sight, out of mind.

眼不见, 心不烦。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the correct answer.

1. Social and economic changes are placing the American Dream in ____

A. jeanery

B. jealousy

C. jeopardy

	~ ~	
2. The	of jobs and pay occurred	during the 1980s and 1990s.
A. downscaling	B. downsizing	C. downshifting
3. The residents of Ple	easanton believed that the	promise of America had taken an unexpected
wrong		
A. wind	B. turn	C. wing
4. Public schools, coll	eges, universities, and inn	er cities, for example, are receiving a rapidly
sh	nare of public economic sup	pport.
A. declaiming	B. declaring	C. declining
5. "Pleasanton" is a su	burban community	of much of America.
A. representative	B. preventative	C. recitative
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).	
1Newman's re	spondents were schooltead	chers, guidance counselors, and fifty families
whose children were	e then grown.	
2The stresses	associated with changing	g economic conditions would bring cultural
expectations, disapp	pointments, and conflicts.	7
3According to	Newman, the soul of Amer	ica is at stake.
III. Complete the	sentences with the co	rrect form of the words given.
su	burb bridge ethnic ex	clusive threat deteriorate
		lf-interest, or will they care for others as well
		blind eye to the rapidly3
		4 groups turn inward, or will they
attempt to5	the divides that	6 to separate them further?
owe co		ble sustain philosophy decline
		we are forced to8 some of the
		at face any country: What do we10
		11 a collective sense of purpose in
		re tearing us apart, leaving those who are able
		o are not to suffer out of sight?
	~ -	

参考译文

美国梦熄灭了吗?

美国人长久以来都梦想着比他们的父辈生活得更好。然而,凯瑟琳·纽曼却表示,社会经济的变化正在一步步熄灭着这个美国梦。20世纪80年代和90年代,就业、薪酬大幅缩水,由此引来的愤怒、疑惑和恐慌冲淡了先前的乐观情绪。

纽曼花了两年时间,对居住在普莱辛顿—— 一个能代表大部分美国人生活状态的郊区社 区——的 150 名美国人进行了私人访谈。普莱辛 顿是一个混居地,这里不仅有蓝领技工,还有专 业白领,他们有着不同的道德观和宗教信仰。在 她的被访谈者中有学校教师、咨询师和 60 个孩 子已经长大成人的家庭。

普莱辛顿的居民认为,美国梦已经转向了一个人们并不期望的错误方向,而且他们也在试着探究其中的原因。纽曼设法努力去理解人们这种认为社会在向下发展的趋势。她认为,伴随变化的经济条件所带来的压力会产生寄托在文化上的期望、失望和足够引起社会学家重视的冲突。随着研究的进行,事实上她也确实看到了父母和已经长大成人的孩子之间在对种族、道德和不幸婚姻这些问题上的冲突、不和。下面的这段话可以揭示一位青年对美国之梦的心灰意冷。

"我将永远不会拥有我的爸妈已经拥有的一切。我甚至不敢去想这些。我现在的生活水平比小时候要低,这很郁闷。你明白当你不再拥有你的世界时,那是多么的恶心……我拿走了给予我

的东西,并力所能及地把它们用到最好。但即使你工作努力,从不翘班,遵守所有的规章制度,做完他们让你做的一切,结果还是不尽如人意。他们骗了我。你并没有到达你应该到达的地方。路的尽头一无所有。这些年我一直都在工作,可我却始终没能到达那个'成功的彼岸'。根本什么得都不到……"

在对纽曼称之为"遭人鄙夷的美国梦"进行详尽和通常是个人的探究之后,她将视野转向了更多的社会和政治内涵。她研究了一个社会的变迁,这个社会从建立在努力和成绩的向上发展到出生时的社会等级越来越能决定将来的社会地位。纽曼表示,美国人的灵魂正面临着危机。她这样发问:美国人会变成严重排斥他人、只关心自我利益的人?还是会变成关爱他人如同关爱自己的人?那些生活在郊区的人会对日渐恶化的中心城市保持缄默吗?各个年龄段、种族和道德信仰的群体会越来越封闭吗?还是他们会在这些逐渐割裂他们的分歧上构建沟通的桥梁呢?

对这些问题的回答有一些已经在公众对待联 邦政府、州政府和当地税收的态度上有所体现。 如果普莱辛顿的居民可以称为向导的话,可以看 出美国人已经不愿意再去投资公益事业。例如公 立中小学、学院、大学和中心城市接受的社会经 济援助正在大幅减少。总而言之,纽曼认为,这 对一个 21 世纪国家的灵魂来说不是一个吉兆。 每一个伟大的民族都能从一个社会契约中汲取力量,这个社会契约是一种大家都有为他人付出的约定俗成、超越狭隘的以年龄段、种族、道德、等级和针对一些特定公益事业的性别为界限的自我利益。税收和预算——市政府平常的当务之急——恰巧显示了这种契约,或者说是以最生硬的方式缺失了这种契约。通过这些机械的机制,我们被迫正视一些所有国家都在面临的尖锐而深刻的哲学问题:我们怎么才能将别人归为社会成员?在面对财富的减少,而这些财富正将我们割

裂,并留下一些争名夺利者和哗众取宠者,我们 能否使整个社会都保持同样的心态?

Answer

- I. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A
- II. 1. F 2. T 3. T
- III. 1.exclusive 2.suburbanites 3.deteriorating
 4. ethnic 5.bridge 6.threaten 7.mechanistic
 8.confront 9.philosophical 10.owe
 11.sustain 12.declining 13. scramble



"美"事一桩

美国梦

所谓的美国梦(American Dream),是一种相信只要在美国经过努力不懈的奋斗便能获得更好生活的理想,亦即人们必须通过自己的勤奋工作、勇气、创意和决心迈向繁荣,而非依赖于特定的社会阶级和他人的援助。它通常代表了人们在经济上的成功或是企业家精神。许多欧洲移民都是抱持着美国梦的理想前往美国的。尽管有些人批评美国梦过度强调了物质财富在衡量胜利和快乐上扮演的角色,但许多美国人的确认为,这种获得成功的机会在世界上其他国家是找不到也并不存在的。因为与其他大多数国家不同的是,在美国人们拥有的经济自由相当多,政府扮演的角色相当有限,这使得美国的社会流动性极大,任何人都有可能通过自己的努力迈向巅峰。从美国独立直至19世纪末期,广大的土地都无人居住和拥有,任何有心人都可以加以占据并投资和开垦。而到了工业革命时期,美国庞大的自然资源和先进的工业技术则使得快速的社会流动变得可能,而且这种趋势仍在一天一天地增加中。

依据历史学家的说法,美国快速的经济发展和工业扩张并非只是因为美国的自然资源丰富,更是因为所有人都有机会藉由自己的奋斗获取财富。美国梦成为吸引世界各地人民移民美国的主要原因——无论过去或现在。如今,每年有超过 100 万的人成为美国公民,美国是世界上最受欢迎的移民国家。

39

Basic Values in the United States 美国人的基本价值观



美国是许多不同群体共同的家园,整个国家没有一套普遍适用的价值观。尽管如此, 社会学家罗宾·威廉姆斯还是发现了指导大部分美国人日常生活的重要价值观。

The United States is home to many different groups. No single set of values is likely to hold across the entire country. Despite this problem, sociologist Robin Williams identified important values that guide the daily lives of most people in the U.S. A partial¹ list includes:



- Achievement and success. People emphasize achievement, especially in the world of work. Success is supposed to be based on effort and competition and is viewed as a reward for performance. Wealth is viewed as a symbol of success and personal worth.
- Activity and work. People tend to prefer action over inaction² in almost every case. For most Americans, continuous and regular work is a goal in itself. Promotion should be for merit³ rather than favoritism⁴. Finally, all citizens should have the opportunity to perform at their best.
- Efficiency and practicality⁵. People pride themselves on getting things done by the most rational⁶ means. We search for better (faster) ways of doing things, praise good workmanship⁷, and judge performance by the results. We love to rely on science and technology.
- Equality. From the very beginning of our history as a nation, we have declared a belief in equality for all citizens. As minority groups and women achieved citizenship, our concept of equality grew. We tend to treat one another as equals, defend everyone's legal

rights, and favor equal opportunity—if not equal results—for everyone.

- Democracy. People emphasize that all citizens are entitled to equal rights and equal opportunity under the law. In a democracy, the people elect their government officials. Power is not in the hands of an elite⁸ few.
- Group superiority⁹. Despite their concern for equality of opportunity, people in the U.S. tend to place a greater value on people of their own race, ethnic¹⁰ group, social class, or religious group.

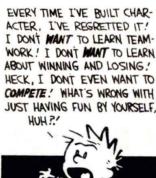
These values are clearly interrelated¹¹. Achievement and success affect and are affected by efficiency and practicality, for example. But we can also see conflicts among some values. For instance, people in the U.S. value group superiority while at the same time stressing equality and democracy.

Do these values still prevail¹² in the United States today? Williams identified these major values approximately thirty years ago—about the time many of your parents were teenagers. Although these values have remained remarkably¹³ stable over the years, some have changed. Today there is less emphasis on group superiority in America than in the past. This can be seen in the decline¹⁴ of openly racist attitudes and behaviors. In reality, however, it is usually norms¹⁵ and behavior rather than underlying values that change radically¹⁶. It is probably because of the passage of civil rights laws that many Americans are now less likely to make overt¹⁷ racist statements. Racism¹⁸ (group superiority) remains part of the fabric¹⁹ of American culture.

The norms related to hard work and activity have also changed in recent years. Many Americans now work as hard at their leisure activities (for example, long-distance running and mountain climbing) as they do at their jobs.









Although Williams's analysis of major American values remains basically sound today, some sociologists believe that his list is incomplete. They would add, for example, optimism²⁰, honesty, and friendliness to the list of major values in the United States.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. partial** ['pɑ:∫əl] *adj*. 部分的,局部的,偏袒的,偏爱的
- 2. inaction [ɪnˈæk∫ən] n. 无行动,不活动,无为,怠惰,迟钝
- 3. merit ['merɪt] n. 优点, 价值 v. 有益于
- 4. favoritism ['feɪvərɪtɪzəm] n. 偏爱, 得宠, 偏袒
- 5. practicality [,præktɪˈkælɪtɪ] n. 实用性
- 6. rational ['ræ[ənl] adj. 理性的, 合理的, 推理的
- 7. workmanship ['wə:kmən[ɪp] n. 手艺, 技艺, 做工, 技巧
- 8. elite [eɪ'li:t] n. <法>[集合名词]精华,精锐,中坚分子
- 9. superiority [sju(:)pɪərɪˈɒrɪtɪ] n. 优越, 高傲
- 10. ethnic ['e θ nɪk] adj. 人种的,种族的,异教徒的
- 11. interrelate [,ɪntə(:)rɪˈleɪt] v. (使)相互关连
- 12. prevail [pri'veɪl] vi. 流行,盛行,获胜,成功
- 13. remarkably [rɪˈmɑːkəb(ə)lɪ] adv. 非常地, 显著地, 引人注目地
- 14. decline [dɪˈklaɪn]n. 下倾, 下降, 下垂, 斜面, 斜坡, 衰败, 衰落
- 15. norm [no:m] n. 标准、规范
- 16. radically [rædɪkəlɪ] adv. 根本上, 以激进的方式
- 17. overt ['əʊvə:t] adj. 明显的, 公然的
- 18. racism ['reɪsɪzəm] n. 种族主义, 人种偏见, 种族歧视
- 19. fabric [ˈfæbrɪk] n. 结构, 建筑物, 构造
- 20. optimism ['optimizəm] n. 乐观, 乐观主义



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. despite sth./yourself 即使;尽管(自己)不愿意
 - e.g. Her voice was shaking despite all her efforts to control it.

尽管她竭尽全力控制自己,声音仍然在颤抖。



She was good at physics despite the fact that she found it boring.

尽管她认为物理枯燥无味,她却学得很好。

He had to laugh despite himself.

他不想笑, 但还是忍不住笑了出来。

2. at one's best 在最出色的状态下; (演员)达到个人最高水平; (花等)在盛开期 e.g. I don't really feel at my best today.

我今天不太舒服。

The garden is at its best this month, looking most beautiful.

本月那花园看起来最漂亮(百花盛开时期)。

He was at his best yesterday evening and kept us all amused, talked in his most amusing way.

他昨天晚上表现出了最佳的谈吐、使我们大家一直都很开心。

- 3. pride oneself on 引以为荣; 为……而骄傲
 - e.g. She had always prided herself on her appearance.

她总是对自己的外貌感到得意。

He prides himself upon his skill as a pianist.

他对于自己的钢琴技艺感到很得意。



Exercise 牛刀小试

	I. Choose the co	orrect answer.	14 A-41.
1. No single set of values is likely to hold the entire country.			old the entire country.
	A. on	B. over	C. across
	2. Sociologist Robin	n Williams	important values that guide the daily lives of
	most people in the	e U.S.	
	A. concluded	B. identified	C. included
12	3. People pride them	nselves ge	tting things done by the most rational means.
	A. on	B. over	C. in

4. People emphasize that all citizens are to equal rights and equal opportunity
under the law.
A. engaged B. entitled C. entailed
5. People in the U.S. tend to place a greater value on people of their own race,
group, social class, or religious group.
A. racial B. minority C. ethnic
6. In reality, it is usually norms and behavior rather than values that change
radically.
A. underlying B. underplaying C. underpaying
II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1Wealth is viewed as a symbol of success and personal worth.
2As minority groups and women achieved citizenship, American's concept of equality
grew.
3Power is in the hands of an elite few.
4Today there is more emphasis on group superiority in America than in the past.
5Racism (group superiority) remains part of the fabric of American culture.
6The norms related to hard work and activity have also changed in recent years.
III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words given.
regular merit favoritism perform action
People tend to prefer action over1 in almost every case. For most Americans,
continuous and2 work is a goal in itself. Promotion should be for3_
rather than4 Finally, all citizens should have the opportunity to
5 at their best.
practical superior interrelate conflict democracy
These values are clearly6 Achievement and success affect and are affected
by efficiency and7, for example. But we can also see8
among some values. For instance, people in the U.S. value group9 while at
the same time stressing equality and10

参考译文

美国人的基本价值观

美国是许多不同群体共同的家园,整个国家没有一套普遍适用的价值观。尽管如此,社会学家罗宾·威廉姆斯还是发现了指导大部分美国人日常生活的重要价值观。这里是列表的一部分,包括:

- ◇ 成就和成功。人们强调成就,特别是在工作领域。成功建立在努力和竞争的基础上,并作 为绩效的奖励。财富被视为成功和个人价值的象 征。
- ◇ 活动和工作。在几乎所有情况下,人们偏向于采取行动而非无动于衷。对于大多数美国人来说,持续而有规律的工作本身就是一个目标。提升是因为成绩而不是偏袒。最终,所有人应该有机会做出最好的表现。
- ◇ 效率和实用性。让人们引以自豪的是用最合理的方法把事情做好。我们寻求更好(更快)的工作方式,推崇精湛的技术,根据结果判断表现。我们乐意依仗科学技术。
- ◇ 平等。从我们作为一个国家的历史开始, 我们就宣布所有公民一律平等的信念。随着少数 民族和妇女群体取得公民身份,我们平等的信念 渐入人心。我们倾向于平等地对待每个人,尊 重每个人的合法权益,倡导人人拥有平等的机 会——但不是每个人都拥有平等的结果。
- ◇ 民主。人们强调,在法律之下所有公民都有权享有平等的权利和均等的机会。在一个民主国家中,人民选出自己的政府官员。权力并不是

掌握在少数精英人士手中。

◇ 集团优势。尽管美国人对机会平等很关 注,但他们倾向于最大化和自己拥有相同种族、 民族、社会阶层或宗教的人群的价值。

这些价值观显然相互关联。例如,成就和成功在影响效率和实用性的同时也受其影响。但我们也看到在一些价值观间的冲突。例如,美国人在发扬集团优势的同时强调平等和民主。

这些价值观至今仍在美国盛行吗? 威廉姆斯指出,这些重要的价值观大约在 30 年前盛行,那时你们的父母中很多还是青少年。虽然这些价值观多年来维持稳定,但有些已经改变。如今,美国对于集团优势的强调较过去有所减弱。从公开宣扬种族主义的态度和行为呈下降之趋势中可以看出这一点。但在实际中,通常是规范和行为,而不是基本价值观的彻底转变。这可能是因为有关公民权利的法律通过之后,许多美国人不太可能公开做出种族主义言论。种族主义(集团优势)仍然是美国文化结构的一部分。

关于努力工作和活动的标准近几年也发生了 改变。现在许多美国人在其休闲活动时(例如长 跑和登山)也像在工作时一样努力。

虽然威廉姆斯对于美国主要价值观的分析基本正确,但今天的一些社会学家认为他的列表并不完整。例如,他们想把乐观、诚实和友善增加到美国主要价值观的列表中。

"美"事一桩

美国电影中的文化

美国人有着强烈的自我中心观念,信奉个人主义,并使追求个人幸福成为一种社会的共识。因此,美国电影中极力宣扬以自我为中心的个人主义和英雄主义。这是好莱坞电影长盛不衰的重要秘诀,也是美国电影蕴藏各种文化价值观的根源。

美国电影中的英雄人物无论面对何种危机、困难,无论受到何种致命的打击、毁灭性的创伤,从来都不相信失败,因而也没有任何胆怯心理,英雄们总是临危不惧,一往无前。从 20 世纪 30 年代的《大篷车》、《铁骑》、《壮志千秋》开始,到 1939 年的《关山飞渡》,都是好莱坞电影中牛仔英雄片的标志性作品,1952 年的《正午》、1953 年的《原野奇侠》、1959 年的《赤胆屠龙》、1960 年的《七侠荡寇志》等西部片,仍旧讲述传奇般的个人英雄故事,并逐步表



现出极端个人英雄主义倾向。比如,由史泰龙主演的《第一滴血》系列影片,塑造了特种兵兰博这个典型的个人英雄主义形象。除此之外,在美国科幻电影中,一般都有一个全能的超级英雄:《黑客帝国》中的尼奥天生就具备常人所不及的敏捷和睿智,关键时刻总能化险为夷。越是科幻电影,英雄主义越容易展现——《独立日》里无处不在的"美国万岁"情结,《星球大战》里一个个俊朗魁伟的绝地武士,《骇客帝国》那位漂亮的救世主,以及《终结者》系列、《异形》系列塑造的两位女强人,都不难看出英雄崇拜在科幻片里的垄断地位。

美国电影中打造的个人英雄主义形象有着共同特征,那就是将个人英雄无限神化,从而表现出极

Answer

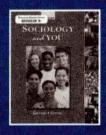
- I. 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. A
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. T
- III. 1.inaction 2.regular 3.merit 4.favoritism5.perform 6.interrelated 7.practicality8.conflicts 9.superiority 10.democracy

端个人英雄主义的价值取向。美国电影中广泛制造完美英雄个体的虚幻假象,尤其是极力渲染英雄个体控制整个矛盾冲突的巨大力量,极力夸大英雄个体力量战胜群体敌对势力的决定性作用,将个体力量无限夸大、神化,从而赋予了这些英雄人物以极端个人英雄主义的价值取向。



Choosing to Be Alcohol Free

远离酒精



对于很多人来说,他们都很熟悉这样的情景。充满活力的年轻人在做运动、做饭、过着无比充实的生活。这个吸引人的广告的目的在于推销一种毒品——酒精。

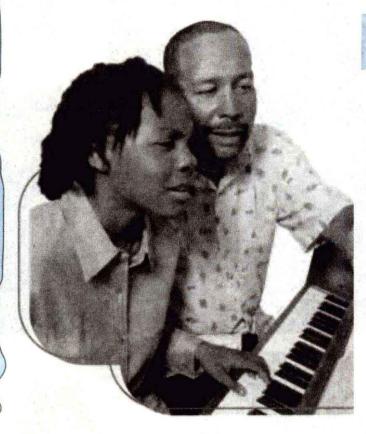
For many people the image is a familiar one: energetic young adults playing sports, cooking out, living life to the fullest. The purpose of this attractive advertisement scene¹ is to promote and sell a drug—alcohol—that is addictive², physically damaging, and often an entry into the use of other drugs. In reality, alcohol is a lethal³ drug with harmful effects that include physical, mental/emotional, social, and legal consequences, including serious health problems to the drinker and those around him



or her and even death caused by disease, violence, and motor vehicle accidents.

The Facts about Alcohol

Alcohol, or more accurately, ethanol⁴—the type of alcohol in alcoholic beverages⁵—is a powerful and addictive drug. Ethanol can be produced synthetically⁶ and naturally through the fermentation⁷ of fruits, vegetables, and grains. Fermentation is the chemical action of yeast⁸ on sugars. Water, flavoring⁹, and minerals are mixed with ethanol to produce a variety of beverages, such as beer and wine. Alcohol also can be processed to create spirits, or liquors¹⁰, such as whiskey, rye, and vodka.



Immediate Effects of Alcohol Consumption

At first drinking alcohol may provide a kind of energy "rush¹¹." This initial reaction masks alcohol's true effects as a depressant¹², a drug that slows the central nervous system. Alcohol quickly affects a person's motor skills by slowing reaction time and impairing¹³ vision. Clear thinking and good judgment also diminish. A variety of factors, including a person's body size and stomach contents, determines alcohol's effect. For this reason, the amount of alcohol that leads to intoxication¹⁴ varies from person to person. Intoxication is

the state in which the body is poisoned by alcohol or another substance and the person's physical and mental control is significantly reduced.

Factors That Influence Alcohol Use

Despite the many problems associated with alcohol use, many teenagers still choose to drink.

Why? Several reasons influence teens in their choice to use—or not use—alcohol:

- ▶ Peer¹⁵ pressure. It's normal for teens to want to feel accepted within a group. The desire to fit in is strong. Teens who choose friends who avoid alcohol use are more likely to be alcohol free than teens whose friends accept alcohol use.
- ▶ Family. Family members can help teens be alcohol free. Parents who discourage and avoid the use of alcohol are more likely to have teens who do the same. In fact, teens cite parental disapproval as the number one reason for not using alcohol.
- ▶ Media messages. Many media messages on TV and radio and in movies make alcohol use appear exciting, attractive, and fun. Many of these messages feature elements targeted to a teen audience, such as young, attractive people engaging in problem-free drinking in a party like atmosphere. The message of many ads is "To fit in, drink alcohol." However, teens who recognize these messages and their meanings are more likely to resist negative influences.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. scene [si:n] n. 现场,场面,情景,景色,发生地点
- 2. addictive [ə'dɪktɪv] adj. 上瘾的
- 3. lethal [ˈliːθəl] adj. 致命的 n. 致死因子
- 4. ethanol ['eθənɔːl, -nəʊl] n. 乙醇, 酒精
- 5. beverage ['bevərɪdʒ] n. 饮料
- 6. synthetically [sɪn'θetɪkəlɪ] adv. 综合地, 合成地
- 7. fermentation [.fa:men'teɪ[ən] n. 发酵
- 8. yeast [ji:st] n. 酵母, 发酵粉
- 9. flavoring ['fleɪvərɪŋ] n. 调味品, 调味料
- 10. liquor ['lɪkə] n. 液体, 汁, 酒精饮料, [药]溶液
- 11. rush [rʌ[] n. 匆促, 紧急, 急流, 灯芯草
- 12. depressant [dɪˈpresənt] adj. 有镇静作用的 n. 镇静剂
- 13. impair [ɪmˈpeə] v. 削弱
- 14. intoxication [ɪnˌtɒksɪˈkeɪ∫ən] n. 陶醉
- 15. peer [pɪə] n. 同等的人, 贵族



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. fit in (with sb/sth) (与……)合得来; 适应
 - e.g. He's never done this type of work before; I'm not sure how he'll fit in with the other people.

他过去从未做过这种工作,很难说他是否会与其他人配合得好。

Do these plans fit in with your arrangements?

这些计划和你的安排冲突吗?



2. cite ... as 提及 (原因), 举出 (事例)

e.g. He cited his heavy workload as the reason for his breakdown.

他说繁重的工作负荷是导致他累垮的原因。

His name has been cited as a future MP.

有人提到他, 认为他将来可以当国会议员。

3. target (at) 把……作为攻击目标; 把……作为批评的对象

e.g. The missiles were mainly targeted at the United States.

导弹主要瞄准的是美国。

The company has been targeted by animal rights groups for its use of dogs in drugs trials. 这家公司因用狗做药物试验而成为动物保护团体批评的对象。

4. engage in 使从事,参加

e.g. Even in prison, he continued to engage in criminal activities.

他甚至在监狱里还继续从事犯罪活动。

She tried desperately to engage him in conversation.

她用尽办法去跟他谈话。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the	correct answe	
1. In reality, alcoh	nol is a	drug with harmful effects.
A. legal	B. lethal	C. lentil
2. Alcohol also c vodka.	an be processed t	
A. spirits	B. sprites	C. springs
3. Teens	parental disar	proval as the number one reason for not using alcohol.
A. cues	B. cost	C. cite

4. The message of man	y ads is "To	, drink ald	cohol."	女具美锋
A. fit in		C. fit with		
	affects a perso	on's motor skil	ls by slowing	g reaction time and
A. imprinting	B. impairing	C. impearling		
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).			
Ethanol can be vegetables, and grain		etically and natura	ally through the	fermentation of fruits,
2Fermentation is	the chemical act	tion of yeast on sa	lts.	
3Water, flavoring	g, and minerals a	re mixed with etha	anol to produce	a variety of beverages,
such as beer and win	e.			
4Intoxication is a	drug that slows	the central nervou	is system.	
5Depressant is th	e state in which	the body is poison	ed by alcohol.	
6 The amount of	alcohol that lead	s to intoxication v	aries from person	on to person.
III. Complete the	sentences wit	h the words gi	ven.	
en	ergetic attractive	e image addictive	damaging ent	ry
For many people the	he1	is a familiar	one:2	young adults
playing sports, cookin	g out, living life	e to the fullest. The	he purpose of t	his3
advertisement scene is	to promote and s	ell a drug—alcoho	ol—that is	_4, physically
5, and or	ften an	6 into the	use of other dru	igs.
(1) 1 · 1 · 1 · 1 · 1 · 1 · 1 · 1 · 1 · 1	nal lethal cons	sequences harmf	ul vehicle v	iolence : effects that include
physical, mental/	9,	social, and legal	10	, including
serious health problem				
disease,11	, and motor	12	_accidents.	10000000000000000000000000000000000000
可是是			~	

参考译文

远离酒精

对于很多人来说,他们都很熟悉这样的情景: 充满活力的年轻人在做运动、做饭、过着无比充实的生活。这个吸引人的广告的目的是推销一种毒品——酒精——它容易使人上瘾,对人体有害,并且往往是人们开始使用其他毒品的起点。事实上,酒精是一种致命的毒品。它对我们的危害包括身体上的、心理/情绪上的、社交上的以及法律后果。它们包括酗酒者和他们身边的人的严重的健康问题,甚至是由疾病、暴力和机动车事故所引起的死亡。

有关酒精的一些事实

酒精,或者更准确地说,乙醇——酒精饮料中的酒精种类——是一种强效的并且容易上瘾的毒品。乙醇可以通过水果、蔬菜、谷物发酵物的合成或者其自然的发酵而产生。发酵是一种酵母和糖的化学反应。人们将水、调料和矿物质与乙醇混合,从而生产出了各种各样的饮料,如啤酒和葡萄酒。人们还可以通过对酒精的加工制造烈酒或酒精饮料,如威士忌、黑麦威士忌和伏特加。

酒精消费直接的影响

第一次饮酒可能会给你带来一种能量"高峰"。这种最初的反应掩盖了酒精作为一种抑制剂,一种延缓中枢神经反应的毒品的事实。酒精可以通过减缓反应时间和损坏视觉来迅速影响一个人的控制能力,清晰的思维和良好的判断能力

对于很多人来说,他们都很熟悉这样的情景: 也会被削减。酒精对一个人的影响由很多因素决活力的年轻人在做运动、做饭、过着无比充 定,包括这个人的体格和其胃里所储存的东西。 生活。这个吸引人的广告的目的是推销一种 因此,导致酒精中毒的饮酒量因人而异。酒精中一酒精——它容易使人上瘾,对人体有害, 毒是指: 人体被酒精或者另一种物质毒害,并且往往是人们开始使用其他毒品的起点。事实 其对机体和心理控制能力明显降低。

影响酒精使用的因素

尽管很多问题的产生与饮酒有关,许多青少年还是会选择喝酒。为什么?有很多原因影响着青少年们对饮酒或者不饮酒的选择。

同龄人的压力 作为青少年,希望自己能被一个群体所接受是很正常的。他们想融合到群体中去的愿望是强烈的。那些选择了不饮酒的人做朋友的青少年,比那些有着接受饮酒的朋友的人更可能会远离酒精。

家庭 家庭成员可以帮助青少年远离酒精。 那些不鼓励并且避免饮酒的家长,其孩子很可能 会和他们一样远离酒精。事实上,"家长不赞成" 是青少年们举出的不饮酒的首要原因。

媒体信息 许多电视、广播和电影里的媒体信息把饮酒刻画成了一种刺激的、有诱惑力的并且有趣的行为。这些信息中的许多特性是针对青少年观众的。比如年轻的有吸引力的人们在一个类似派对的场合毫无顾忌地饮酒。很多广告的信息是"想合群,就得喝酒"。但是,那些看懂这些信息及其含义的青少年,很可能会抵制这些负面的影响。

"美"事一桩



酒后驾车在美国

美国国家公路交通安全管理局 2008 年报告,美国交通事故死亡人数连续 8 年减少,今年更降至 1994 年以来的最低点。美国运输部部长彼得斯认为,这主要归功于执法严格。

作为"车轮上的国家",美国在防止交通事故方面确实积累了不少经验,其中尤其以汽车保费的调节最为重要。美国全国联网的事故记录体系和完善的保费计价制度,把开车安全和每个人的经济利益紧密挂钩。夫妻俩共开一辆记录良好的车,每年只需花不到 500 美元的汽车保费。而一个有轻微违章记录的单身汉,每年很可能要为擦伤他人车辆等小事故支付几千美元保费。

另一重要经验是严惩酒后驾驶。除当场吊销执照和入狱一年,对造成生命伤害的酒后驾驶员可以以二级谋杀罪起诉,最高可适用死刑。近年来认定酒后开车的血液酒精浓度标准更是日趋严格,从 0.08% 降到 0.05%,由于年轻人酒后开车的比例较高,针对 21 岁以下的驾驶者,血液酒精浓度 0.01% 就算酒后开车。严厉的交通执法甚至让美国人聚会时都很少喝烈酒。



Answer

- I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T
- III. 1.image 2.energetic 3.attractive 4.addictive5.damaging 6.entry 7. lethal 8.harmful9.emotional 10.consequences 11.violence12.vehicle



41

Sports and Social Mobility

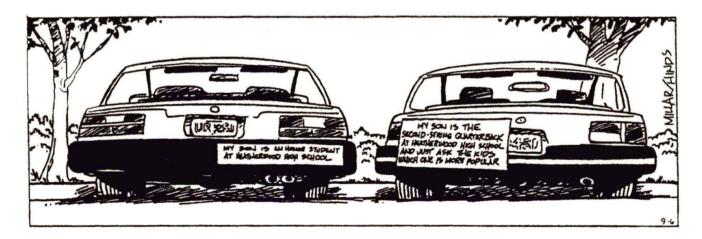
体育与社会流动



体育明星往往在自传中指出,体育是自己摆脱贫困的方式。专业体育运动员的平均工 资确实相当高。即便如此,让我们来看看体育和社会流动之间所谓的联系。

The autobiographies¹ of star athletes often point to sport as their way out of poverty². One educator once predicted that "football would enable a whole generation of young men in the coal fields of Pennsylvania to turn their backs on the mines that employed their fathers". Many athletes do use sport as a means out of their equivalent³ "coal fields," and many minority⁴ members work their way out of poverty through sport. It is also true that the average salaries of professionals are very high. Even so, let's examine this alleged⁵ relationship between sport and social mobility.

Does sport really promote social mobility? Participating in sport increases the likelihood of improving a person's place in the stratification⁶ structure. Whatever sport they play, college athletes tend to be better educated, earn more money, and have higher occupational⁷ prestige⁸ than their fathers.



This is the very definition of upward social mobility. And in these terms, college athletes as a whole are more successful than college students who do not participate in sports. Although

this finding is meaningful, it has not settled the debate regarding how much sport promotes upward mobility for

minorities.

Does sport promote upward mobility for minorities? Some people argue that sport is a social class escalator for minorities. They point to Michael Jordan, Deion Sanders, and Sammy Sosa, among others. A different viewpoint argues that the emphasis on sport is harmful because it diverts attention away from learning the academic and business-related skills necessary for success in mainstream American society.

Because of the lure9 of high salaries and prestige,

many aspiring¹⁰ minority athletes fail to develop alternative career plans. Minority members who spend their youth sharpening their athletic skills at the expense of their general education will very likely be casualties¹¹ of an unrealizable dream of wealth and glory¹².

Some convincing evidence supports those who see sport as a barrier to upward mobility for minorities. It is said that there are over one million high school football players. Just under 60,000 of these players become college football players. And 1,600 of these college players become professional players. Thus, the probability that a high school football player will make it to the pros is less than two-tenths of one percent. Similarly, a high school baseball player has a 0.2 percent chance of becoming a major leaguer¹³. The odds¹⁴ are even worse for a high school basketball player, who has a 0.1 percent probability of making it to the National Basketball Association. Moreover, those who become professional athletes have short careers on the average: one to seven years for baseball players, four to six years for basketball players, and four and one-half years for football players.

Of course, this does not mean minority athletes should not enjoy the benefits of a collegiate¹⁵ sport. To be sure, some athletes have received good college educations who may otherwise not have had the chance. It does argue, however, that no high school athlete—minority or white, for that matter—should rely solely¹⁶ on sport as a ticket up the stratification structure.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. autobiography [,o:təbaɪ'ɒgrəfɪ] n. 自传
- 2. poverty ['povətɪ] n. 贫穷, 贫困, 贫乏, 缺少
- **3. equivalent** [ɪˈkwɪvələnt] *adj.* 相等的, 相当的, 同意义的 *n.* 等价物, 相等物
- 4. minority [mai'noriti, mi-] n. 少数, 少数民族
- 5. alleged [əˈledʒd] adj. 声称的,所谓的
- **6. stratification** [.strætɪfɪˈkeɪ[ən] n. 层化, 成层, 阶层的形成
- 7. occupational [ˌɒkjʊˈpeɪ[ənəl] adj. 职业的, 占领的
- 8. prestige [pres'ti:3, -'ti:d3] n. 声望, 威望, 威信
- 9. lure [ljuə] v. / n. 引诱
- **10. aspiring** [əsˈpaɪərɪη] *adj.* 热心的,积极的,有抱负的
- 11. casualty ['kæʒjʊəltɪ] n. 伤亡
- 12. glory ['glo:ri] n. 荣誉, 光荣
- 13. leaguer ['li:gə] n. (联盟、联合会等的)盟员, 会员, 成员, 围攻
- 14. odd [pd] adj. 余下的
- 15. collegiate [kəˈliːdʒɪɪt] adj. 学院的
- 16. solely ['səu(l)lɪ] adv. 独自地, 单独地



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. turn one's back on 掉头不理睬某人;避开某人
 - e.g. He always turn his back on his mom.

他总是躲着他妈妈。

He turned his back on his girl friend when he went abroad.

他出国后就背弃了自己的女朋友。

- 2. divert (from) 改道; 娱乐; 使转变注意力
 - e.g. The farmers diverted water from a river into the fields.

农民们将河水导入田间。

How can we divert her thoughts from her sad loss?

我们如果使她不再想她的可悲的损失?

3. at the expense of 牺牲; 以……作代价

e.g. He became a brilliant scholar, but only at the expense of his health.

他成为一个卓越的学者, 但却牺牲了健康。

She completed the work at the expense of her personality integrity.

她以自己的尊严为代价完成了工作。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the co	rrect answer.	
1. Let's examine this	s relation	ship between sport and social mobility.
A. alleged	B. supposed	C claimed
2. College athletes t	end to be better educat	ed, earn more money, and have higher occupational
th	an their fathers.	
A. privilege	B. prestige	C. priority
3. The are	even worse for a high s	chool basketball player.
A. odds	B. odes	C. orders
4. Minority athletes	should enjoy the benefit	ts of asport.
A. collective	B. collegiate	C. collected
5. No high school at the stratification s		ite—should rely solely on sport as a up
A. lable	B. pass	C. ticket
II. Write true (7	Γ) or false (F).	
1The autobio	ographies of star athlete	s often point to sport as their way out of poverty.
College at participate in sport		more successful than college students who do not

3The emphasis on sport is harmful because it diverts attention away from learning the
academic and business-related skills.
4 The probability that a high school football player will make it to the pros is less than
one percent.
5 Those who become professional athletes have long careers on the average.
A PORT OF THE PROPERTY OF THE
III. Complete the sentences with correct form of the words given.
mobility escalator poverty aspire likely alternative stratify
1. Many minority members work their way out of through sport.
2. Participating in sport increases the of improving a person's place in the
structure.
3. How much does sport promote upward for minorities?
4. Sport is a social class for minorities.
5. Because of the lure of high salaries and prestige, many minority athletes fail to
develop career plans.

参考译文

体育与社会流动

体育明星往往在自传中指出,体育是自己摆脱贫困的方式。一位教育家曾经预测,足球将能使宾夕法尼亚煤田整整一代的年轻人离开他们父亲工作过的煤田。许多运动员把体育作为他们离开所在"煤田"的方式,许多少数民族成员通过体育摆脱贫困。专业体育运动员的平均工资确实相当高。即便如此,让我们来看看体育和社会流动之间所谓的联系。

体育真的能促进社会流动吗?参与体育运动 增加了一个人提升社会层次的可能性。无论从事

哪项体育运动,大学运动员往往受到更好的教育, 赚取更多的钱,并获得比他们父亲更高的职业声望。

这是典型的社会向上流动的定义。在这样的 条件下,大学运动员整体而言比不参加体育运 动的大学生更成功。虽然这个发现很有意义,但 是它并没有从根本上解决关于体育运动对促进少 数民族向社会上层流动有多大作用的争论。

体育是否能促进少数民族成员向社会上层流动?有些人认为对少数民族群体来说,体育是社

会阶层的自动扶梯,他们以迈克尔·乔丹,桑德斯和萨米·索萨等为例。另一种不同的观点认为,强调体育的重要性是有害的,因为它分散了学生对学术知识和商业技能的注意力,而这些知识和技能对于在美国主流社会取得成功是必不可少的。在高工资和高声望的诱惑下,许多有抱负的少数民族运动员放弃了发展其他事业的计划。在青年时期以失去系统教育为代价来完善体育技能的少数民族成员,很可能成为财富和荣耀之梦破灭的受难者。

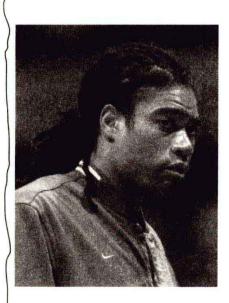
那些把体育看做是少数民族成员向上流动障碍的人找到了一些令人信服的证据。目前高中足球运动员超过100万。其中不足6万人成为大学足球运动员,而大学运动员中仅1600人成为职

业球员。因此,高中足球运动员成为职业球员的概率低于 0.2%。同样地,高中棒球选手入选大联盟的机会是 0.2%。 更糟糕的是高中篮球运动员,他们拥有 0.1% 的可能性进入美国职业篮球协会。此外,专业运动员的平均职业寿命都很短:棒球选手 1~7 年,篮球运动员 4~6 年,足球运动员 4.5 年。

当然,这并不意味着少数运动员不应享有大学体育所带来的益处。可以肯定的是,一些运动员接受过良好的大学教育,否则他们不可能有进一步发展的机会。然而,无论是少数民族还是白种人,没有一个高中运动员能完全依靠体育获得提升社会层次的通行证。

名人链接

萨米・索萨 (Sammy Sosa)



萨米·索萨是前美国职棒大联盟选手,主要担任外场手,目前为自由球员。

索萨(萨穆埃尔·佩拉尔塔·索萨)(Samuel Peralta Sosa)于 1968年11月12日生于多米尼亚共和国的圣佩得罗德马科里斯。他是棒球史上最令人激动的本垒打击球员之一。1998年,当时芝加哥小熊队的外场手索萨及当时圣路易斯红雀队的第一守垒员马可·迈克维尔,打破了1961年创造的一个赛季本垒打61次的纪录。索萨打了66个本垒打,马可·迈克维尔打了70个本垒打。次年,索萨打了63个本垒打。他的大联盟生涯开始于1989年的德州游骑兵队,之后陆

续在芝加哥白袜队、芝加哥小熊队和巴尔的摩金莺队打球。1998年6月,他创造了大联盟单月本垒打20个的记录。同年,他被授予"国家联盟最有价值选手"的称号。在2003年赛季,由于在一次比赛中非法使用软木球棒,索萨被中止参加7场比赛。2005年赛季前,索萨被交换至巴尔的摩金莺队。2005年结束,他累积了生涯588支本垒打,暂居生涯本垒打第4名。2006年,他没有参加大联盟棒球比赛。2006年休息一年后,索萨和游骑兵队签约并在2007年回到大联盟,担任该队的指定打击。2007年6月20日对小熊队的比赛,击出生涯第600支本垒打,成为史上第5位达成此记录的球员。

1998年,索萨建立了萨米·索萨基金会,致力于帮助贫困儿童。索萨穿的 21 号球衣,来自他少年时的英雄罗伯托·克莱门特。2008年 5 月 28 日,索萨宣布他的大联盟退休计划。

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
- III. 1. poverty 2. likelihood; stratification
 - 3. mobility 4. escalator 5. aspiring; alternative



建立良好的人际关系



要想建立成功的人际关系,运用一些可以促进积极发展的技巧是非常重要的。要想实现这点,人们需要一些技巧,其中包括沟通、合作和妥协——良好人际关系三技巧。

For a relationship to succeed, it is important to implement¹ skills which develop positive relationships. For that to happen, the people involved need certain skills. Three of these skills are communication, cooperation, and compromise²—the three Cs of healthy relationships.



Communication

Communication refers to your ways of sending and receiving messages. These messages may be exchanged in words or through gestures³, facial expressions, and behaviors. You communicate to let others know your feelings, thoughts, and expectations. Communication also lets you discover the feelings, needs, wants, and knowledge of others.

Cooperation

Have you ever helped someone move a heavy object, such as a large piece of furniture? Such activities are almost impossible without cooperation, working together for the good of all. Working together through cooperation helps build strong relationships. For example, Susan helps prepare dinner each evening because her parents don't get home from work until 6 p.m. Because of her help, Susan's family is able to eat together and enjoy one another's company. Her contribution benefits the entire family.

Compromise

Three friends can't agree on how they'll spend the afternoon: Thomas and Elise want to go biking, but Serena wants to play miniature⁴ golf. Have you ever been in a similar situation? If so, you probably used compromise to solve the problem. Compromise is a problem-solving method that involves each participant's giving up something to reach a solution that satisfies everyone. It can be used to create a win-win situation for everyone involved. The "give and take" of effective compromise strengthens relationships. By your willingness to give up something in order to reach a solution, you practice socially acceptable ways of resolving⁵ interpersonal conflict by practicing non-abusive⁶ behavior. Remember, however, that compromise involves seeking a solution that is acceptable to all persons involved. Therefore, it should not lead to a decision that goes against your values or beliefs. Learning when—and when not—to compromise is a vital⁷ relationship skill.

Characteristics of Healthy Relationships

By practicing the three Cs, you make positive contributions to healthy relationships. In addition, all good relationships—whether with family members, friends, or other members of your community—have certain recognizable characteristics. Some of these characteristics are described below.

- ► Mutual⁸ Respect and Consideration. In healthy relationships, people show mutual respect even when they disagree. This involves accepting one another's tastes and opinions and being tolerant⁹ of different viewpoints. Furthermore, each person shows consideration by being thoughtful about the rights and feelings of others.
- ► Honesty. Because of their mutual respect and consideration, participants in a healthy relationship have the confidence to be open and honest about their actions, thoughts, and feelings. Dishonesty can seriously weaken or even destroy a relationship.
- ▶ **Dependability**¹⁰. Participants in a healthy relationship are dependable. They are trustworthy¹¹ and reliable. Each is there for the others when needed.
- ► Commitment¹². Healthy relationships require commitment. The participants are willing to work together and make sacrifices¹³ that benefit everyone involved. They are loyal¹⁴ to each other, and they are committed to strengthening the relationship.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1.implement ['impliment] vt. 贯彻, 实现 v. 执行
- **2.compromise** ['komprəmaɪz] *n*. 妥协, 折中 *v*. 妥协, 折中, 危及……的安全
- **3.gesture** ['dʒest∫ə] *n.* 姿态, 手势, 表示 ν. 作手势, 以手势表示
- **4.miniature** ['mɪnɪət∫ə] n. 缩小的模型, 缩图, 缩影 adj. 微型的, 缩小的
- 5.resolve [rɪ'zolv] vt. 解决
- 6.abusive [ə'bju:sɪv] adj. 辱骂的, 滥用的
- 7. vital[vart] adj. 生死攸关的, 重大的, 生命的, 生机的, 至关重要的, 所必需的
- 8.mutual ['mju:tjvəl, 'mju:t[vəl] adj. 相互的, 共有的
- 9.tolerant ['tolərənt] adj. 容忍的, 宽恕的, 有耐药力的
- 10.dependability [de,pendə'bɪlɪtɪ] n. 可信任,可靠性
- 11.trustworthy ['trʌstˌwə:ðɪ] adj. 可信赖的
- 12.commitment [kəˈmɪtmənt] n. 委托事项, 许诺, 承担义务
- 13.sacrifice ['sækrɪfaɪs] n. 牺牲, 献身, 祭品, 供奉 v. 牺牲, 献出, 献祭, 供奉
- 14.loyal [ˈlɒɪəl] adj. 忠诚的,忠心的



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. refer to 提到; 谈起; 说起; 涉及; 描述; 参考
 - e.g. The victims were not referred to by name.
 - 没有提到受害人的姓名。
 - She always referred to Ben as "that nice man".
 - 她总是称本为"那个大好人"。
 - The star refers to items which are intended for the advanced learners.
 - 标有星号的项目是给高阶学习者的。
 - You may refer to your notes if you want.
 - 如果需要,可以查阅笔记。



- 2. for the good of 为……的好处; 益处
 - e.g. Cuts have been made for the good of the company.

实行裁减是为了公司的利益。

I'm only telling you this for your own good.

我把这事告诉你只是为你好。

What's the good of earning all that money if you don't have time to enjoy it?

要是没时间去享受,赚这么多钱有什么用?

- 3. commit sb./yourself to sth./doing sth. 承诺; 保证; (公开地)表示意见
 - e.g. The president is committed to reforming health care.

总统承诺要改革卫生保健制度。

Borrowers should think carefully before committing themselves to taking out a loan.

借款人应当慎重考虑之后再行借贷。

You don't have to commit yourself now, just think about it.

你不必现在表态,只需考虑一下这件事。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the corre	ect answer.	
1. For a relationship to	o succeed, it is importan	t to skills which develop
positive relationships		
A. supplement	B. implement	C. imply
2. Communication	to your ways of s	ending and receiving messages.
A. refers	B. infers	C. resolves
3. All good relationship	os—whether with family	members, friends, or other members of your
community—have ce	rtain	characteristics.
A. recognizing	B. recognized	C. recognizable
4. In healthy relationshi	ps, people show	respect even when they disagree.
A. mutual	B. bilateral	C. manual
A. mutual	B. bilateral	C. manual

5. Participants in a healthy	relationship are	to strengthening the relationship.
A. commuted	B. commented	C. committed
II. Write true (T) or	false (F).	
1The three Cs of he	ealthy relationships are com-	munication, cooperation, and compromise.
2Working together	through cooperation helps l	build strong relationships.
3Compromise lead	to a decision that goes agai	nst your values or beliefs.
4Learning when—	and when not—to comprom	ise is a vital relationship skill.
5. Participants in a h	nealthy relationship are unde	ependable.
	resolve participate win-wir	ct form of the words given.
1 is a	problem-solving method th	nat involves each2giving up
something to reach a solut	ion that satisfies everyone. I	t can be used to create a3
situation for everyone invo	olved. The "give and take" o	f effective compromise4
relationships. By your w	rillingness to give up some	ething in order to reach a solution, you
practice socially accepta		interpersonal conflict by practicing

参考译文

建立良好的人际关系

要想建立成功的人际关系,运用一些可以:沟通 促进积极发展的技巧是非常重要的。要想实现这 点,人们需要一些技巧,其中包括沟通、合作和 妥协——良好人际关系三技巧。

沟通是指你发送和接收信息的方式。这些信 息可能是通过语言, 也可能是通过手势、面部表 情和行为来传递的。沟通的目的是为了让别人了

解你的感受、想法和期望。沟通当然也会让你去 发现别人的感受、需求和见闻。

合作

你曾经帮助过别人搬大件家具之类的重东 西么?这类行为如果没有合作基本是不可能实现 的,这种合作是指大家齐心协力、创造属于所有 人的利益。通过合作可以帮助建立起强有力的人 际关系。例如,苏珊的父母每天下午都要工作到 6点才能回家,所以她一直在帮家里准备晚餐。 正是由于她的付出,一家人才能够享受坐在一起 吃饭、相互陪伴的天伦之乐。她的奉献使全家人 受益。

妥协

三个朋友在一起,永远也商量不出下午要去干什么。托马斯和爱丽丝想去骑车,但萨莉娜却想玩迷你高尔夫游戏。你遇到过相似的情形么?如果遇到过,可能你就需要以妥协来解决这个问题了。妥协是一个解决问题的方法,它需要每个人都放弃一些东西来达成一个所有人基本满意的解决方案。这为每个当事人都开创了一个双赢的局面。有效妥协的"舍而后得"加强了人际关系。由于你愿意为了解决问题而放弃一些东西,你就通过不伤害别人的行为将人与人之间的问题以一种社会可以接受的方式解决了。但是要记住,妥协需要找到一种所有当事人都能接受的解决方法。因此,这种方法的确定是不能与你的价值观和信仰相违背的。学会什么时候应该妥协和什么时候不应该妥协是一个很关键的人际关系技巧。

良好人际关系的特征

通过运用这三个良好人际关系技巧,你已经为建立良好的人际关系做了很多积极的工作。此外,所有良好的人际关系——无论是与你的家人、朋友还是社区成员——都有一些特定的可识别的特征。下面就描述一下其中的一些特征。

相互尊重与体谅 在良好的人际关系中,人们即使是彼此意见相左时仍然可以表现出相互之间的尊重。这需要去接受别人的品味和想法,接纳不同的意见。另外,每个人都要顾及他人的权利与感受、体谅他人。

诚实 由于相互的尊重与体谅,一个良好人际关系中的所有参与者都有信心坦诚相待,对自己的行动、想法和感受开诚布公。虚伪会严重削弱甚至摧毁一个健康的人际关系。

可靠 一个良好人际关系中的所有参与者都是可以信赖的。他们值得信任,放心可靠。哪里需要,他们就会出现在哪里。

承诺 良好的人际关系需要承诺。人们愿意 齐心协力,同舟共济。他们彼此忠诚,承诺会让 这段关系更加牢固。

Answer

I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

III. 1.Compromise 2.participan's 3.win-win4.strengthens 5.resolving 6.non-abusive

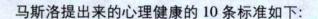


"美"事一桩



马斯洛

马斯洛(Abraham H Maslow,1908—1970),美国心理学家,智商高达 194 的天才,第三代心理学的开创者,伟大的先知,犹太人。主要著作是《动机与人格》、《存在心理学探索》、《人性能达的境界》等。

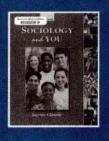


- (1) 有充分的自我安全感;
- (2) 能充分了解自己,并能恰当估价自己的能力;
- (3) 生活理想切合实际;
- (4) 不脱离周围现实环境;
- (5) 能保持人格的完整与和谐;
- (6) 善于从经验中学习;
- (7) 能保持良好的人际关系;
- (8) 能适度地宣泄情绪和控制情绪;
- (9) 在符合团体要求的前提下,能有限度地发挥个性;
- (10) 在不违背社会规范的前提下,能适当地满足个人的基本需求。



43

Cultural Diversity¹ 文化多样性

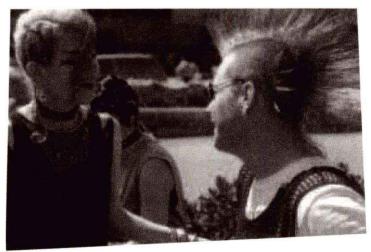


文化多样性存在于所有社会之中。有些多样性归因于社会类别,即群体共享的社会特征。某些行为与特定的年龄、性别或宗教相联系。

Cultural diversity exists in all societies. Some diversity is a result of social categories²—groups that share a social characteristic such as age, gender, or religion. Certain behaviors are associated with particular ages, genders, or religions. For example, devout³ Catholics⁴ are expected to attend Mass⁵ regularly.

What are subcultures6 and countercultures7?

Cultural diversity also comes from groups that differ in particular ways from the larger culture. These groups participate in the larger culture. They may speak the language, work regular jobs, eat and dress like most others, and attend recognized houses of worship⁸. But despite sharing in the broader culture, these groups have some ways of thinking, feeling, and behaving that set them apart. Such groups—known as subcultures and countercultures—are usually found in large, complex⁹ societies.



Subculture is part of the dominant¹⁰ culture but differs from it in some important respects. The subculture of San Francisco's Chinatown is a good example. Early Chinese immigrants brought much of their native culture with them to America and have attempted¹¹ to retain¹² it by passing it from generation to generation. Although Chinese residents of

Chinatown have been greatly affected by American culture, they have kept many cultural patterns of their own, such as language, diet, and family structure. Other examples of subcultures are those formed by circus¹³ people, musicians, and mental patients.

Counterculture is a subculture deliberately¹⁴ and consciously opposed to certain central beliefs or attitudes of the dominant culture. A counterculture can be understood only within the context of this opposition¹⁵. Examples of primarily teenage countercultures include the "goth" and the "punk" scenes. Goth is a shortening of the term gothic¹⁶, meaning dark, strangely mysterious, and remote. Punk is a philosophy of rebellion and sexual revolution popularized by the lyrics¹⁷ and music of punk-rock bands. Prison counterculture surfaced at the trial¹⁸ of John King, a man convicted¹⁹ of the gruesome²⁰ truck-dragging murder of James Byrd, Jr. During an earlier prison stretch, King had become a member of a white supremacist²¹ gang that promoted many forms of violence. The gang's motto was "blood in, blood out," meaning that entry into the gang demanded a violent act, and leaving the gang would result in violence as well. Delinquent²² gangs, motorcycle gangs, certain types of drug groups, and revolutionary or religious groups may also form countercultures.

Ethnocentrism²³

Once people learn their culture, they tend to become strongly committed to it. In fact, they often cannot imagine any other way of life. They may judge others in terms of their own cultural standards—a practice referred to as ethnocentrism.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. diversity [dar'və:sɪtɪ] n. 差异, 多样性
- 2. category [ˈkætɪgərɪ] n. 种类,别,[逻]范畴
- 3. devout [dɪˈvaʊt] adj. 虔敬的, 诚恳的
- **4. catholic** [ˈkæθəlɪk] *n*. 天主教徒 *adj*. 天主教的
- 5. Mass $[m \approx s] n$. 弥撒: 罗马天主教教堂和一些新教教堂举行的领取圣餐的公共庆祝活动
- **6.** subculture ['sʌbˌkʌltʃə] n. 亚文化群: 在一个社会或一种文化内具有其独特性的一群人

- **7. counterculture** ['kaʊntəkʌltʃə] *n*. 反传统(主流)文化(20世纪60和70年代在美国青少年中盛行的一种思潮)
- **8. worship** [ˈwəːʃɪp] *n.* 崇拜,礼拜,尊敬
- 9. complex ['kompleks] adj. 复杂的, 合成的, 综合的 n. 联合体
- 10. dominant ['dominant] adj. 有统治权的, 占优势的, 支配的
- 11. attempt [ə'tempt] n. 努力, 尝试, 企图 vt. 尝试, 企图
- 12. retain [rɪ'teɪn] vt. 保持, 保留
- **13. circus** ['sə:kəs] *n.* 马戏团, 杂技团, 马戏场, 杂技场
- 14. deliberately [dɪˈlɪbərətlɪ] adv. 故意地
- **15. opposition** [**opə**'zɪ∫ən] *n.* 反对, 敌对, 相反, 反对派, [天]冲, [逻]对当法
- **16.** Gothic ['go θ ɪk] n. 哥特式 adj. 哥特式的,野蛮的
- 17. lyric ['lɪrɪk] n. 抒情诗, 歌词 adj. (供)吟唱的, 抒情的
- 18. trial ['traɪəl] n. 试验, 考验, 审讯, 审判
- **19. convict** ['konvɪkt] vt. 证明……有罪, 宣告……有罪 n. 罪犯
- **20.** gruesome ['gru:səm] adj. 可怕的,可憎的,令人厌恶的
- 21. supremacist [sə'preməsɪst, sju-] n. 至上主义者
- **22. delinquent** [dɪˈlɪŋkwənt] *n.* 失职者,违法者,少年犯 *adj.* 失职的,有过失的,违法的,拖欠债务的
- **23.** ethnocentrism [,eθnəυ'sentrɪzəm] n. 民族优越感



Useful Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. set apart (from/for sb./sth.) 使与众不同; 使突出; 留出; 拨出 (专用)
 - e.g. Her elegant style sets her apart from other journalists.

她的典雅风格使她与其他记者截然不同。

Two rooms were set apart for use as libraries.

留出两个房间作为图书室。



2. attempt to do sth. (at sth./ doing sth.)(on sb./sb.'s life) 企图; 试图; 尝试; 杀人企图

e.g. Two factories were closed in an attempt to cut costs.

为削减费用,关闭了两家工厂。

The couple made an unsuccessful attempt at a compromise.

这对夫妇试图和解但未成功。

Someone has made an attempt on the President's life.

有人企图刺杀总统。

- 3. opposed (to) 强烈反对; 截然不同
 - e.g. She remained bitterly opposed to the idea of moving abroad.

她仍然强烈反对移居国外。

Our views are diametrically opposed on this issue.

在这个问题上, 我们的观点截然不同。

- 4. convict sb. of 定罪; 宣判……有罪; 使确信自己有罪或有错
 - e.g. He was convicted of fraud.

他被判犯有诈骗罪。

His mother tried every possible means to convict him of his errors.

他妈妈想尽一切办法使他相信他自己所犯之错。



Exercise 牛刀小试

1.	Catholics are expected to	attend Mass regularly
		attend was regularly.
A. Devout	B. Devoted	C. Dedicated
2	sharing in the broader	culture, some groups have some ways of thinking,
feeling, and bel	aving that set them apart	
A. In spite	B. Despite	C. Although

The state of the s		
3. A counterculture ca	in be understood only w	ithin the context of this
A. deposition	B. supposition	C. opposition
4. Examples ofscenes.		untercultures include the "goth" and the "punk"
A. primarily		C. essentially
		o become strongly to it.
A. commanded		
		ne trial of John King.
A. surfaced		C. surfact
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).	
1Cultural diver	sity exists in all societie	S.
2Countercultur	re is part of the domina	ant culture but differs from it in some important
respects.		
3Subculture is	a subculture deliberately	and consciously opposed to certain central beliefs
or attitudes of the d	lominant culture.	
4Goth is a shor	tening of the term gothic	c, meaning dark, strangely mysterious, and remote.
5King had become	ome a member of a whi	te supremacist gang that promoted many forms of
violence.		
6A practice that	t people judge others in	terms of their own cultural standards is referred to
as ethnocentrism.		
III. Complete the	sentences with the	correct form of the words given.
cu	lture immigrant patter	n attempt retain native affect
Early Chinese	1 brought	much of their2 culture with them to
America and have	3 to4	it by passing it from generation to generation.
Although Chinese re	sidents of Chinatown	have been greatly5 by American
culture, they have kep	ot many cultural	_6 of their own, such as language, diet, and
		are those formed by circus people,
musicians, and mental	l patients.	
	~~~	

### 参考译文

# 文化多样性

文化多样性存在于所有社会之中。有些多样 性归因于社会类别,即群体共享的社会特征,如 年龄,性别或宗教。某些行为与特定的年龄、性 别或宗教相联系。例如,虔诚的天主教徒会定期 参加弥撒。

### 什么是亚文化和反主流文化?

文化多样性也来自于以特别的方式不同于主流文化的群体。这些群体参与主流文化。他们可能说英语,从事普通的工作,像大多数其他人那样吃饭和穿着,并出入公认的宗教场所。但是,尽管有广泛的文化共享,这些群体某些方面的思想、感觉和行为使他们与众不同。这些群体作为亚文化和反主流文化而闻名,它们经常在大型、复杂的社交界被发现。

亚文化是主流文化的一部分,但在一些重要方面与之有所不同。旧金山唐人街的亚文化是一个很好的例子。早期的华人移民带着他们祖国的许多文化来到美国,并代代相传。虽然唐人街的中国居民已经深受美国文化的影响,但是他们留有自己的许多文化形态,如语言、饮食和家庭结构。另外一些亚文化的例子是在马戏团演员、音乐家和精神病人中形成的文化。

反主流文化是一种刻意反对某些中心信仰或主流文化态度的亚文化。反主流文化只有在这种对立的背景下才能被理解。早期青少年反主流文化的主要例子包括"goth"和"punk"流派。goth是gothic的缩写,它意味着黑暗、怪异和遥远。

punk 是一种反叛和性革命的哲学,通过朋克,摇滚乐队的歌词和音乐广为流传。监狱反主流文化在对约翰·金的审判中初露端倪,他被指控通过用卡车残忍地拖拽小詹姆斯·伯德的方式将其谋杀。在较早的监狱史中,金是白人激进帮派的成员,这个组织推动各种形式的暴力。它的座右铭是"红刀子进,红刀子出",这意味着进入该组织要求有暴力行为,同样离开该组织会导致暴力活动。少年犯罪团伙、摩托车团伙、某些类型的贩毒集团、革命或宗教群体也可能形成反主流文化。

### 民族优越感

一旦人们了解了自己的文化,他们往往会坚决拥护它。事实上,他们常常不能想象其他任何的生活方式。他们会根据自己的文化标准评价其他文化,这种行为被称为民族优越感。

### Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3.C 4. A 5. B 6. A
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. T
- III. 1.immigrants 2.native 3.attempted 4.retain 5.affected 6.patterns 7.subcultures



### "美"事一桩

 $\bigcap$ 

# 美国语言

在美国这块移民之地上,一直居住着来自不同国籍、说不同语言的人们。1990年的人口普查显示,几乎14%的美国人在家里不讲英语,而只有3%的人宣称他们英语"说得不好"或"根本不会说"。这表示超过1%的美国人可视为双语。此外,许多中学生、大学生甚至小学生在校的学科都必须加修一门外语。除了西班牙语、德语与法语等常选的第二语言外,愈来愈多的学生选修东欧和亚洲语言。虽然并非所有学生都能够学以致用,但仍有愈来愈多的美国人已经开始意识到会说多种语言的好处。

在主要大城市里,有不同族群聚居的社区,那里都还保存着移民的文化传统和语言。有些当地人在生活上只讲母语就够了,根本不需要学英语。 佛罗里达州南部以及美国西南部等区,有许多说西班牙语的社区。事实上,在美国,说西班牙语的人口超过 1700 万,是美国最大的非英语系族群。此外,还有中国、越南、意大利、波兰及其他很多种族的族群,他们各自使用着自己的语言,使美国语言更加多样化。在许多外来民族的聚居区里,由于外语的广泛使用,人们仿佛到了"国中国"。

虽然有些美国人欢迎这种语言与文化多元化,但也有些人担心英语已经受到威胁。从 20 世纪 80 年代以来,"英语唯一"(English Only)运动即试着开始推动立法,将英语定为官方语言,并限制其他语言的使用。但有些团体,如"对说其他语言人的英语教学组织"(简称 TESOL),就反对这种语言限制主义。他们提倡"英语与外语"(English Plus),建议美国人应尊重其他族群的母语以及文化,同时也推广英语教学,帮助其他族群融入社会主流。但是到目前为止,已有 19 个州通过了"英语唯一"这一立法,该议题也一直是辩论的焦点。

# 附录一、美国教育制度概况

美国的教育体系是高度分权的。根据 1791 年通过的美国宪法第十修正案,宪法不授予联邦而又不禁止给州的权力属于各州。联邦政府因而无权确定国家教育制度,教育政策以及课程设置等均由各州与地方学区决定。但是,由于美国各州在社会经济、政治与文化诸方面所具备的共性,以及美国国家教育评审、鉴定机构的指导作用等,全美各州的教育体制虽有所差别,但总的来看大同小异。

美国的教育大致可分为初等教育、中等教育、高等教育三个层次。

### (一)初等教育与中等教育

美国的初等教育包括一至两年的学前幼儿教育,一年的幼儿园教育,五至八年的小学教育。中等教育包括七年级开始的初级中学教育,以及九至十二或十至十二年级的高级中学教育。美国大多数州实施从幼儿园到高中十二年级公立学校的免费义务教育。美国公立中小学的教育经费主要来源于州和地方政府。美国所有州都允许举办私立中小学教育,但必须经州政府许可,取得办学执照,并接受政府的监督。美国各州和地方政府对初、中等教育的管理模式为:绝大多数州设有教育委员会,该委员会根据有关法规制定公立中小学教育政策,由州教育厅长及其下属的专业教育工作者和辅助人员贯彻执行。

美国法律规定,任何学龄儿童均应进入学校就读,并接受义务(免费的)中小学教育,当然,进入私立学校就读的话,便要缴付相当昂贵的学费。有些公立中学也录取外国学生就读,并会发给留学生签证,但这些外国留学生却要缴纳学费,情况与其他进入私立中学的学生大致相同。至于小学与中学的学制,在配合上也有几个不同的形式,因各州、各城市或乡镇的情况而异(例如,有些是六年小学及六年中学制,亦有些是学分为二或三年制的初中及四年制的高中等形式),但无论如何,原则上在学生18岁时,应该念完中等教育。由于美国的义务教育普及,大约有93%的适龄儿童接受中等教育,70%可完成学业,其中大部分再进入大学或专上学院继续升学,开始他们的专上教育。

Kind	lergo	arten 幼儿园
Elen	nent	ary School 小学 (共5年)
K1	<b>→</b>	1st grade 一年级
K2	->	2nd grade 二年級
K3	$\rightarrow$	3rd grade 三年級
K4	-	4th grade 四年级
K5	$\rightarrow$	5th grade 五年级
Juni	or H	igh/Middle School 初中 (共3年)
K6	-	6th grade 六年级
K7	$\rightarrow$	7th grade 七年级
K8	-	8th grade 八年级
High	Sch	1001 高中 (共4年)
K9	<b>→</b>	9th grade 九年级
K10	-	10th grade 十年級
K11	$\rightarrow$	11th grade 十一年級
V12	_	12th grade 十二年級

加州各年级表

### (二)高等教育

美国高等教育从1636年建立的哈佛学院开始,至今有374年的历史。美国高等教育的运行和管理体制比较复杂,其中联邦政府、州政府和高等院校的全国性组织作为三个关键性的机构,发挥着不同的作用。美国各州政府对州内公立高等学校的规划、运行和体制等均有规范性的文件。但总的来讲,州政府只是为高等院校的运行提供法律框架,而各类高校自发形成的各种全国性、区域性或行业性组织,对高等学校运行和体制规范起着非常重要的作用。

美国各州政府对高等教育经费的拨款没有统一的模式,但大部分州还是根据惯例 来确定分配方案,即在州政府每年的高教预算确定之后,根据州内每个公立大学每年 的招生情况、学校性质和需要、教学设施状况等确定具体分配方案。一般情况下,每个 州立大学每年所分到的教育经费数目变化不大。对经费的使用,州政府通常也只是制 定一些指导性的政策。

美国高等教育对"专才"的培训,主要是在研究院与高等专科学院的教育及训练上,而也是在这个层次上每年吸引了千万以上的留学生到美国接受高深的训练,其中不乏从中国大陆、香港、台湾三地而来的华人学生。

1. 研究院及高等专科学院开设的课程及学科,种类繁多,从核子工程到中国文学,从商业行政到法学与医学,林林总总,不一而足。念完研究院课程的学生,经校方核定,会颁发以下的学位:

### A. 硕士学位 (Master's Degree)

根据学科的性质来决定是文科硕士(MA)或理科硕士(MS),通常需两年时间,亦有一些学校设有公共行政学硕士(Master of Public Administration)、法学硕士(Master of Law)、神学硕士(Master of Divinity)等学位课程。学生通常需要通过 GRE 考试(Graduate Record Examination) 才会被录取。

### B. 工商管理学硕士 (MBA,即 Master of Business Administration)

由于近年的工商发展迅速,对工商管理人才的需求迫切。为配合市场需求,攻读 MBA 学位的人士日渐增多。MBA 课程又可再分为会计、管理、市场学等专业,但通常入学的条件之一是要学生通过 GMAT (Graduate Management Admission Test),成绩优良才会被录取。考试内容分为英语能力 (verbal ability) 及数学思考力 (mathematical ability)。留学生当然还要通过托福 (TOEFL) 英语考试才会被考虑。

#### C. 博士学位 (Doctoral Degree)

博士学位课程通常需要先修毕硕士课程,但亦有例外。最普遍的博士学位就是哲学博士(Ph.D.,即 Doctor in Philosophy),但绝大部分文、理科博士大都是授予 Ph.D. 学位,而不单限于哲学这个学

科。通常完成博士学位课程需要三年或以上时间,理科时间较短,文科时间大多较长。念教育学科的博士学位则称为Ed.D.(Doctor in Education)。博士学位是美国高等教育制度下的最高学位。

### D. 法学博士 (J.D.) 与医学博士 (M.D.)

这是美国社会的律师与医生必须具备的专业学位。由于这两个行业的执业者社会地位很高,不少大学毕业生申请就读,以致获得入学录取的机会相当难,但学生毕业后能学以致用,直接地为社会服务。这也是高等教育的主要目的之一,即培养为社会服务的人才。

# 2. 美国大学的类别。美国的高等教育在世界上一直处于领先地位,而大学教育的普及程度,亦鲜有其他国家可与之相比。

根据权威性的统计资料(《高等教育纪事》, The Chronicle of Higher Education, Almanac Issue,1995年9月1日出版)显示,全美国的各类大学已达3632所,而就读的大学本科生(undergraduate)人数高达1200多万人,研究院学生人数也将近170万,加上专科(例如医学院及法律学院)的30万学生,足以看出美国高等教育的普及。这3600多所大学如何分类?分别在什么地方?重要性如何呢?

### A. 初级(或社区) 学院 (Junior or Community College)

全美国现有公立和私立的初级学院(亦有人称之为社区大学或短期大学) 共 1422 所。在两年制的学院就读,学生毕业后可得副学士(Associate Degree) 学位,再可转学到四年制的大学(Bachelor Degree)。初级社区学院主要是由社区支持,其目标是推广普及教育,因此对学生入学的要求较低,学费比较低,以鼓励更多学生就读。

### B. 文理学院 (College of Liberal Arts and Sciences 或简称 Liberal Arts College)

这是四年制的大学,但重点是大学本科教育(undergraduate education)而非研究生教育,虽然有小部分文理学院亦颁授硕士及博士学位。这类学院在美国的高等教育学府中是最先建立的一种,至今仍然盛行,有部分文理学院由于不断发展扩充,已升格为综合性大学(university),在课程上不单只是文理科,还包括了人文学科(humanities)、数理科(pure sciences)以及专门职业教育(professional school)的研究院等,如著名的哈佛大学、耶鲁大学及哥伦比亚大学,其前身皆为文理学院。

### C. 综合性大学 (Comprehensive University, 简称 University)

综合性大学必须附设研究院,进行深入的学术研究。颁授高级学位,如硕士及博士学位,藉以培训各种专业人才,这是大学与学院最显著不同的地方。一所综合性大学往往划分为几个学院,各学院再划分为若干科系。随着教育经费来源的不同,综合性大学又分为公立大学及私立大学两种。

私立大学的名气整体上略胜公立大学,著名的常青藤盟校(lvy League Schools,如哈佛、耶鲁

等大学,在美国大学排行榜上经常名列前茅),都是历史悠久的私立大学。

公立大学中州立系统的(由州政府拨款作为经费) 比较完善,例如加州大学及加州州立大学(University of California 与 California State University,前者比较注重学术研究)、密歇根大学(University of Michigan)、纽约州立大学(State University of New York)以及一些市立大学,如纽约市立大学(University of New York)等。还有一种公立大学(Land-Grant University),原来由联邦政府给予土地作为收益补助,后改为拨款补助,其特色主要是注重农业及家事教育,以推行农村推广教育及训练中学的家事与农科教师。

### D. 研究院 (Graduate Schools)

美国的教育制度,以研究院及高等专科学院为最高的阶梯及顶点。顾名思义,研究院的重点是在研究方面,研究生攻读的课程均为高级教育学位,如哲学博士(Ph.D.,涵盖很多科系而不单只是哲学)及硕士(M.A.或 M.S.)。有一些著名的研究院从事高深的学识及尖端科学的训练,甚至网罗曾经获得诺贝尔奖的学者坐镇,名气斐然。

总部设在纽约的卡耐基基金会(Carnegie Foundation)曾出版一调查报告,名为《美国高等院校的分类》(A Classification of Institutions of Higher Education),更将有研究院设立的大学分类为研究大学(Research Universities)及颁发博士学位的大学(Doctor-Granting Universities),根据每年所颁授的博士学位数目来决定其类别。

### E. 高等专科学院 (Advanced Professional Schools, 或简称 Professional Schools)

专科学院是以培训医科、法律、神学、艺术、师训等各类专门人才为目标的高等教育机构。在美国的历史传统上,这等学科并未被列入大学的课程。

专科学院,或为大学的一部分,或单独设立,其教育活动均限于一种单独的专业。依规定, 凡拟投考某种专科学院的学生,通常要先接受二年、三年甚至四年的专业预备性的文理科教育。 各类专科学校,如医学博士(M.D.)及法学博士(J.D.)必须接受三至五年的专科训练,始具备领 受此类学位的资格。有些学院更限制非美国居民或公民入学,为的是不想为其他国家培训专门 人才。

### F. 技术学院 (Technical Colleges) (又被称为工艺学院或技职专科学院)

所谓技术学院,根据美国国防教育法案的解释,即为招收高中毕业生,提供为期两年的高等教育,旨在培养工程、数学、物理或生物科学等各方面的技术人员的专上学府。此等专业人员是熟悉工程、科学或其他与技术有关部门的基本知识并擅长学以致用的专业人员。

技术学院为初级学院的另一类型,其特色在于较注重技术和半专业性的工艺训练。技术学院多以公立为主,亦有私立、地方性、区域性及全州性等不同区分。

### G. 军事学校 (Military Academies)

由联邦政府出资办理的高等学府有各种军事学校,如在纽约州西点(West Point, New York)的陆军学校(Military Academy)于 1802 创校,在马里兰州安那波里斯(Annapolis, Maryland)的海军

学校 (Naval Academy) 于 1845 年创校,在科罗拉多州科罗拉多泉 (Colorado Springs, Colorado ) 的 空军学校 (Air Force Academy) 于 1955 年创校。此等军事学校以培育军事人才为目的。

H. 成人大学(或称大学校外课程 "University External Program",或成人教育 "Adult Education"、远程教育 "Distance Education"、持续教育 "Continuing Education"等不同类型)

随着社会的进步、科技的发展及职业的需要,从20世纪60年代开始,大学教育已不只限于年轻人及在校园内上课的传统模式。事实上,成人教育的发展已是日益需要,为了满足一些希望继续进修的人士,或为兴趣、或为职业上的需要,又或为一圆大学梦。

成人大学或为附设于一所大学之内,名为成人教育部或大学伸展部(Extension),例如匹次堡大学有"University External Studies Program",普林斯顿大学亦有"Program in Continuing Education",这已成为一种风尚和需要。

此外,还有一些单独注册为大学的远程教育机构和学府,通过函授、计算机联网或电话及录音与录像带教学,学生累积足够的学分,便可毕业取得学位。这是一种公开式及没有门墙的大学,由于上课时间及地点没有限制,因此十分适合在职人士,也越来越流行。

## 附录二、关于美国的课程设置

美国学校的科目除了一般的数学、历史、语文外,还有缝纫、打字、无线电与汽车修理等科目。学生可依自己的兴趣、个人未来的计划和才能,从许多科目中自行选修。 美国教育的主要目的在于发展每个孩子的才能,不管它高或低到什么程度,同时给每个孩子灌输公民意识。每个学科皆有不同的特色,以下就个别科目进行介绍。

### A. 英语 (Language)

英语相当于国内的语文。美国有一项极具特色的教学内容——说话课(Speech)。为了治疗口吃、结巴等语言问题,语言治疗师会对学生的演说进行矫正。或许从我们的耳朵中听不出学生说话有什么问题,可是专家用耳朵一听,就能察觉有什么不一样了。

### B. 数学 (Mathematics)

心算是美国人最不在行的,虽然也有例外。卖东西时的找钱方式也很独特,虽然使用电脑 化的收银机减少了很多这方面的问题,但还是比不上中国人从算盘锻炼出来的心算能力。

美国的教育很重视数学。比如小学生每天都要完成"百题加法计算"的作业练习等。除此之外,美国教育也倾向于让学生自己思考,从中发挥想象力。

### C. 社会(Social Studies)

由于美国的历史较短,所以教学内容集中在近代史。社会课特别重视建国的历史,关于国 父以及接下来的历任总统。所学习的范围不仅仅限于其公众层面,还包括其私人层面。透过对 名人轶事的阅读,学生对每位总统都有较全面的了解。

### D. 自然科学 (Science)

学生要全面学习化学、物理、生物、地理等,其中特别关心太空科学。美国上个世纪的成功 登陆月球与卫星升空,从这里即可了解一二。

教学并非只是进行概念的说明,也通过实验获得知识。

### E. 体育 (Physical Education)

美国的体育课程目标在于让所有孩子快乐地玩。因为校外的体育活动太丰富,学生对学校的体育课就不是很重视。春天打棒球、秋天踢足球、冬天打篮球,随着季节的变化而有不同的竞赛性体育活动,进行方式主要是以社区为单位,每周有一至三次的练习,在周末也会有比赛。喜欢运动的孩子都可以参加学校的棒球、足球、游泳队等。

### F. 音乐 (Music)

唱歌是最基本的教学内容,但因学校而异,也有乐器的吹奏,不过也取决于老师的音乐能力 而有所不同。

### G. 外语 (Foreign Language)

外语课程也是因学校而异,至今并未发现公立学校将外语列为必修课,但有些私立学校却 很早就将外语列入课程了。

在美国,所谓的外语几乎都是西班牙语,另外也有在中小学教授日语和中文的学校。

### H. 电脑 (Computers)

美国果然是IT王国,很早就积极从事电脑资讯教育。然而,并非在既有的科目中使用电脑,而是另立科目学习电脑的操作使用。学校有电脑教室设备,每间教室也配置一台电脑,使用时间,则由教师与学生共同决定。

### 1. 教学旅行 (Field Trip)

教学旅行相当于我们所说的"远足"。可是,在现实的学校生活中,美国人基本不用 excursion 这个词,而是用 field trip。比如去水族馆、图书馆或者坐巴士去集市等。高年级时还有所谓的 science camp (自然科学营),学生要在外面住宿好几天,相当于毕业旅行。

以上为一般课程。另外,有的学校开设一些只有通过能力测验的学生才能参加的特别 课程。

### J. 特别课程(Special Education)

特别课程虽然因学区或各州而有所差异,但是有的地方会统一实施联合测验。以加州为例,这项考试称为 STAR Test。这项考试为期三天,测验学生的基本学力等级,其实也是一种智力测验。达到某个既定标准的学生,就有资格参加所谓的 Gates Program特别课程。有资格参加的学生,将会收到一份课程概要一览表,选择自己喜好的课程。

每所中学所举办的考试都不太一样,而且因课程不同而有不同的方式。但一般而言,不同于亚洲和欧洲学校,美国中学老师给成绩不会只依据一场考试或测验,老师通常会依据学生整个学期的报告、作业、课堂表现、随堂小测验、期中期末考试来给成绩。在美国,学生的义务教育是到16岁,学生通常必须通过(pass)所有的必修课程才能毕业。学生会在每学期结束后得知每堂课的成绩,老师给学生的成绩评量方法如下:

A = Excellent (优)

B = Above Average (平均以上)

C = Average (普通)

D = Below Average (平均以下)

F=Failure (不及格。必修科目如果不及格,学生必须重修。)

中学毕业后,申请就读美国大专院校。虽然每所大专院校的入学条件不同,但一般大专院校都会看学生中学所修的课程、中学 GPA 成绩、SAT 成绩、写作,或者安排与学生面谈。学生在中学的 GPA 成绩 (High-school Grade Point Average GPA) 代表学生的学年总成绩平均表现。美国一般采用的计分方法如下:

A = 4 点 90  $\sim 100$ 

B = 3 点  $80 \sim 89$ 

C = 2点  $70 \sim 79$ 

D = 1点  $60 \sim 69$ 

F = 0点 $0 \sim 59$ 

全美统一的考试是大专院校入学的 SAT 考试,主要是测验学生的英文程度、数学推理能力以及在某一学科的专业知识,作为学生进入大学后成绩的参考资料。

# 绿色地球,低碳生活

关于人性化的阅读,我们的编辑团队所作的努力:

关键词:绿色环保——轻型纸是纯木浆纸,在生产过程中不添加荧白增加剂,造纸时对纸浆的漂白、蒸馏处理会减少,更多的是打浆处理,因而废液排出会相应减少,在使用过程中挥发出的有害人体的化学因子也会大幅减少。从环保与健康的角度考虑,我们更愿意采用轻型纸。

关键词:保护眼睛的原色调——国际上常用纸张的白度不高于84度,色泽为原色调,本书使用的纸张白度在80度左右,这样可以使因长期阅读导致眼睛疲劳、酸胀的读者在阅读时有舒适感,不刺眼、不疲劳,即使长时间阅读也不会造成视力损伤。

关键词: 科学设置的字体字号——我们所使用的字体、字号和行距是基于读者需要来设置的、每页设计的字数可以在阅读疲劳周期的低谷到来之前,使您稍作停顿、减轻阅读疲劳、舒适的阅读感油然而生。

关键词: 舒适的手感——轻型纸成书后,切口有毛边,正是这些小毛边提供了柔软的手感,而铜版纸和胶版纸有像小刀一样锋利的纸边,容易划伤手。

关键词: 昂贵的轻型纸——我们使用了近年来在欧美流行的轻型纸来印刷图书内文, 用其印刷的图书比用普通胶版纸或铜版纸印刷的图书重量轻1/3~1/2, 方便您随身携带、随时阅读, 减轻您的学习负担。

一切为了您的成功和阅读体验……

Document generated by Anna's Archive around 2023-2024 as part of the DuXiu collection (https://annas-blog.org/duxiu-exclusive.html).

Images have been losslessly embedded. Information about the original file can be found in PDF attachments. Some stats (more in the PDF attachments): "filename": "MTI4MjM0OTAuemlw", "filename_decoded": "12823490.zip", "filesize": 77946907, "md5": "faefb164284302524b6ee29fc72752c5", "header md5": "d5db645c1782330666933ce704e665a3", "sha1": "2fc45e6e8f9552a26ec0ba4ae02900889df0d56b", "sha256": "f01624fcaf8198f54c63cbc216d47437b15f822239d5ac3f0bd847a836a50fa9", "crc32": 2691323639, "zip_password": "52gv", "uncompressed_size": 83761828, "pdg_dir_name": "\u2556\u03a6\u2510\u00b1\u2559\u00f3\u2559\u2229\u00fa\u2551\u2555\u00b7\u251c\u2514\u2563\u00b7\u256 4\u00ba\u2554\u00b7\u2565\u2557\u255e\u2261\u2564\u00ba\u2559\u00f3\u2559\u2229\u00ed\u00f1\u2555\u2580\u255d\u2562\u2 591\u00b5_12823490", "pdg_main_pages_found": 316, "pdg_main_pages_max": 316, "total_pages": 325, "total_pixels": 1741163768, "pdf_generation_missing_pages": false